CHAPTER 1 [CE]
SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION

User note:

About this chapter: *Chapter 1 establishes the limits of applicability of the code and describes how the code is to be applied and enforced. Chapter 1 is in two parts: Part 1—Scope and Application and Part 2—Administration and Enforcement. Section C101 identifies what buildings, systems, appliances and equipment fall under its purview and references other I-Codes as applicable. Standards and codes are scoped to the extent referenced.*

The code is intended to be adopted as a legally enforceable document and it cannot be effective without adequate provisions for its administration and enforcement. The provisions of Chapter 1 establish the authority and duties of the code official appointed by the authority having jurisdiction and also establish the rights and privileges of the design professional, contractor and property owner.

PART 1—SCOPE AND APPLICATION

SECTION C101
SCOPE AND GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

C101.1 Title. This code shall be known as the *Energy Conservation Code* of the City of Aspen, Colorado, and shall be cited as such. It is referred to herein as "this code."

C101.2 Scope. This code applies to *commercial buildings* and the buildings' sites and associated systems and equipment.

C101.3 Intent. This code shall regulate the design, ~~and~~ construction, repair, alteration, change of occupancy, and additions of new and existing *buildings* for the ~~effective use and conservation~~ reduction of greenhouse gas emissions and for the efficient production, use and storage of energy over the useful life of each building. This code is intended to provide flexibility to permit the use of innovative approaches and techniques to achieve this objective. This code is not intended to abridge safety, health or environmental requirements contained in other applicable codes or ordinances.

C101.4 Applicability. Where, in any specific case, different sections of this code specify different materials, methods of construction or other requirements, the most restrictive shall govern. Where there is a conflict between a general requirement and a specific requirement, the specific requirement shall govern.

C101.4.1 Mixed residential and commercial buildings. Where a building includes both *residential building* and *commercial building* portions, each portion shall be separately considered and meet the applicable provisions of IECC—Commercial Provisions or IECC—Residential Provisions.

C101.5 Compliance. *Residential buildings* shall meet the provisions of IECC—Residential Provisions. *Commercial buildings* shall meet the provisions of IECC—Commercial Provisions.

C101.5.1 Compliance materials. The *code official* shall be permitted to approve specific computer software, worksheets, compliance manuals and other similar materials that meet the intent of this code.

SECTION C102
ALTERNATIVE MATERIALS, DESIGN AND METHODS OF CONSTRUCTION AND EQUIPMENT

C102.1 General. The provisions of this code are not intended to prevent the installation of any material or to prohibit any design or method of construction not specifically prescribed by this code, provided that any such alternative has been *approved*. The code official shall have the authority to approve an alternative material, design or method of construction upon the written application of the owner or the owner's authorized agent. The *code official* shall first find that the proposed design is satisfactory and complies with the intent of the provisions of this code, and that the material, method or work offered is, for the purpose intended, not less than the equivalent of that prescribed in this code in quality, strength, effectiveness, *fire resistance*, durability, energy conservation and safety. The *code official* shall respond to the applicant, in writing, stating the reasons why the alternative was approved or was not *approved*.

C102.1.1 Above code programs. The *code official* ~~or other authority having jurisdiction~~ shall be permitted to deem a national, state or local energy efficiency program as exceeding the energy efficiency required by this code. Buildings *approved* in writing by such an energy efficiency program shall be considered to be in compliance with this code. The requirements identified in Table C407.2 shall be met.

PART 2—ADMINISTRATION AND ENFORCEMENT

SECTION C103
CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS

C103.1 General. Construction documents and other supporting data shall be submitted in one or more sets, or in a digital format where allowed by the building official, with each application for a permit. The construction documents shall be prepared by a registered design professional where required by the statutes of the jurisdiction in which the project is to be constructed. Where special conditions exist, the *code official* is authorized to require necessary construction documents to be prepared by a registered design professional.

Exception: The *code official* is authorized to waive the requirements for construction documents or other supporting data if the *code official* determines they are not necessary to confirm compliance with this code.

C103.2 Information on construction documents. Construction documents shall be drawn to scale on suitable material. Electronic media documents are permitted to be submitted where *approved* by the *code official*. Construction documents shall be of sufficient clarity to indicate the location, nature and extent of the work proposed, and show in sufficient detail pertinent data and features of the building, systems and equipment as herein governed. Details shall include, but are not limited to, the following as applicable:

1. Energy compliance path.
2. Insulation materials and their *R*-values.
3. Fenestration *U*-factors and solar heat gain coefficients (SHGCs).
4. Area-weighted *U*-factor and solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC) calculations.
5. Mechanical system design criteria.
6. Mechanical and service water-heating systems and equipment types, sizes and efficiencies.
7. Economizer description.
8. Equipment and system controls.
9. Fan motor horsepower (hp) and controls.
10. Duct sealing, duct and pipe insulation and location.
11. Lighting fixture schedule with wattage and control narrative.
12. Location of *daylight* zones on floor plans.
13. Air barrier and air sealing details, including the location of the air barrier.
14. Location of pathways for routing of raceways, cable, or piping from the *solar ready zone* to the electrical distribution equipment or service hot water system.
15. Thermal bridges as identified in Section C402.6.
16. Location reserved for inverters, metering equipment, *ESS*, and a pathway reserved for routing of raceways or conduit from the renewable energy system to the point of interconnection with the electrical service and the *ESS*.
17. Location and layout of a designated area for *ESS*.
18. Rated energy capacity and rated power capacity of the installed or planned *ESS*.
19. Location of and electrical system sizing for designated *EVSE* spaces, *EV Ready* spaces, and *EV Capable* spaces in parking facilities.

C103.2.1 Building thermal envelope depiction. The *building thermal envelope* shall be represented on the construction drawings.

C103.2.2 Electrification system. The construction documents shall provide details for additional electric infrastructure, including branch circuits, conduit, pre-wiring, panel capacity, and electrical service capacity, as well as interior and exterior spaces designated for future electric equipment, in compliance with the provisions of this code.

C103.3 Examination of documents. The *code official* shall examine or cause to be examined the accompanying construction documents and shall ascertain whether the construction indicated and described is in accordance with the requirements of this code and other pertinent laws or ordinances. The *code official* is authorized to utilize a registered design professional, or other *approved* entity not affiliated with the building design or construction, in conducting the review of the plans and specifications for compliance with the code.

C103.3.1 Approval of construction documents. When the *code official* issues a permit where construction documents are required, the construction documents shall be endorsed in writing and stamped "Reviewed for Code Compliance." Such *approved* construction documents shall not be changed, modified or altered without authorization from the *code official*. Work shall be done in accordance with the *approved* construction documents.

One set of the reviewed and approved construction documents shall be retained by the *code official*. The other set shall be returned to the applicant, kept at the site of work and shall be open to inspection by the *code official* or a duly authorized representative.

C103.3.2 Previous approvals. This code shall not require changes in the construction documents, construction or designated occupancy of a structure for which a lawful permit has been heretofore issued or otherwise lawfully authorized, and the construction of which has been pursued in good faith within 180 days after the effective date of this code and has not been abandoned.

C103.3.3 Phased approval. The *code official* shall have the authority to issue a permit for the construction of part of an energy conservation system before the construction documents for the entire system have been submitted or *approved*, provided that adequate information and detailed statements have been filed complying with all pertinent requirements of this code. The holders of such permit shall proceed at their own risk without assurance that the permit for the entire energy conservation system will be granted.

C103.4 Amended construction documents. Changes made during construction that are not in compliance with the *approved* construction documents shall be resubmitted for approval as an amended set of construction documents.

C103.5 Retention of construction documents. One set of *approved* construction documents shall be retained by the *code official* for a period of not less than 180 days from date of completion of the permitted work, or as required by state or local laws.

C103.6 Building documentation and closeout submittal requirements. The construction documents shall specify that the documents described in this section be provided to the building owner or owner's authorized agent within 90 days of the date of receipt of the certificate of occupancy.

C103.6.1 Record documents. Construction documents shall be updated to convey a record of the completed work. Such updates shall include mechanical, electrical and control drawings that indicate all changes to size, type and location of components, equipment and assemblies.

C103.6.2 Compliance documentation. Energy code compliance documentation and supporting calculations shall be delivered in one document to the building owner as part of the project record documents or manuals, or as a standalone document. This document shall include the specific energy code edition utilized for compliance determination for each system, documentation demonstrating compliance with Section C303.1.3 for each fenestration product installed, and the interior lighting power compliance path, building area or space-by-space, used to calculate the lighting power allowance.

For projects complying with Item 2 of Section C401.2, the documentation shall include:

1. The envelope insulation compliance path.
2. All compliance calculations including those required by Sections C402.1.5, C403.8.1, C405.3 and C405.5.

For projects complying with Section C407, the documentation shall include that required by Sections C407.3.1 and C407.3.2.

C103.6.3 Systems operation control. Training shall be provided to those responsible for maintaining and operating equipment included in the manuals required by Section C103.6.2.

The training shall include:

1. Review of manuals and permanent certificate.

2. Hands-on demonstration of all normal maintenance procedures, normal operating modes, and all emergency shutdown and startup procedures.
3. Training completion report.

SECTION C104 FEES

C104.1 Fees. A permit shall not be valid until the fees prescribed by Section 2.12.100 of the Aspen Municipal Code are paid in full. ~~A permit shall not be issued until the fees prescribed in Section C104.2 have been paid, nor shall an amendment to a permit be released until the additional fee, if any, has been paid.~~

~~**C104.2 Schedule of permit fees.** A fee for each permit shall be paid as required, in accordance with the schedule as established by the applicable governing authority.~~

C104.~~3~~4 Work commencing before permit issuance. Any person who commences any work before obtaining the necessary permits shall be subject to an additional fee established by the *code official* that shall be in addition to the required permit fees.

C104.4~~5~~ Related fees. The payment of the fee for the construction, *alteration*, removal or demolition of work done in connection to or concurrently with the work or activity authorized by a permit shall not relieve the applicant or holder of the permit from the payment of other fees that are prescribed by law.

C104.~~5~~6 Refunds. The *code official* is authorized to establish a refund policy.

SECTION C105 INSPECTIONS

C105.1 General. Construction or work for which a permit is required shall be subject to inspection by the code official, his or her designated agent or an *approved agency*, and such construction or work shall remain visible and able to be accessed for inspection purposes until *approved*. Approval as a result of an inspection shall not be construed to be an approval of a violation of the provisions of this code or of other ordinances of the jurisdiction. Inspections presuming to give authority to violate or cancel the provisions of this code or of other ordinances of the jurisdiction shall not be valid. It shall be the duty of the permit applicant to cause the work to remain visible and able to be accessed for inspection purposes. Neither the code official nor the jurisdiction shall be liable for expense entailed in the removal or replacement of any material, product, system or building component required to allow inspection to validate compliance with this code.

C105.2 Required inspections. The *code official*, his or her designated agent or an *approved agency*, upon notification, shall make the inspections set forth in Sections C105.2.1 through C105.2.6.

C105.2.1 Footing and foundation insulation. Inspections shall verify the footing and foundation insulation *R*-value, location, thickness, depth of burial and protection of insulation as required by the code, *approved* plans and specifications.

C105.2.2 Thermal envelope. Inspections shall verify the correct type of insulation, *R*-values, location of insulation, fenestration, *U*-factor, SHGC and VT, and that air leakage controls are properly installed, as required by the code, *approved* plans and specifications.

C105.2.3 Plumbing system. Inspections shall verify the type of insulation, *R*-values, protection required, controls and heat traps as required by the code, *approved* plans and specifications.

C105.2.4 Mechanical system. Inspections shall verify the installed HVAC equipment for the correct type and size, controls, insulation, *R*-values, system and damper air leakage, minimum fan efficiency, energy recovery and economizer as required by the code, *approved* plans and specifications.

C105.2.5 Electrical system. Inspections shall verify lighting system controls, components, ~~and~~ meters, and additional electric infrastructure as required by the code, *approved* plans and specifications. Inspections shall verify space availability and pathways to electrical service for future or installed energy storage systems. Inspections shall verify solar-ready zone and conduit or pre-wiring from the solar-ready zone to the electrical panel and proper panel space and capacity necessary for future installation of a solar photovoltaic system.

C105.2.6 Final inspection. The final inspection shall include verification of the installation and proper operation of all required building controls, and documentation verifying activities associated with required *building commissioning* have been conducted in accordance with Section C408.

C105.3 Reinspection. A building shall be reinspected where determined necessary by the *code official*.

C105.4 Approved inspection agencies. The *code official* is authorized to accept reports of third-party inspection

agencies not affiliated with the building design or construction, provided that such agencies are *approved* as to qualifications and reliability relevant to the building components and systems that they are inspecting.

C105.5 Inspection requests. It shall be the duty of the holder of the permit or their duly authorized agent to notify the *code official* when work is ready for inspection. It shall be the duty of the permit holder to provide access to and means for inspections of such work that are required by this code.

C105.6 Reinspection and testing. Where any work or installation does not pass an initial test or inspection, the necessary corrections shall be made to achieve compliance with this code. The work or installation shall then be resubmitted to the *code official* for inspection and testing.

SECTION C106 NOTICE OF APPROVAL

C106.1 Approval. After the prescribed tests and inspections indicate that the work complies in all respects with this code, a notice of approval shall be issued by the code *official*.

C106.2 Revocation. The *code official* is authorized to suspend or revoke, in writing, a notice of approval issued under the provisions of this code wherever the certificate is issued in error, or on the basis of incorrect information supplied, or where it is determined that the *building* or structure, premise, or portion thereof is in violation of any ordinance or regulation or any of the provisions of this code.

SECTION C107 VALIDITY

C107.1 General. If a portion of this code is held to be illegal or void, such a decision shall not affect the validity of the remainder of this code.

SECTION C108 REFERENCED STANDARDS

C108.1 Referenced codes and standards. The codes and standards referenced in this code shall be those listed in Chapter 6, and such codes and standards shall be considered as part of the requirements of this code to the prescribed extent of each such reference and as further regulated in Sections C108.1.1 and C108.1.2.

C108.1.1 Conflicts. Where conflicts occur between provisions of this code and referenced codes and standards, the provisions of this code shall apply.

C108.1.2 Provisions in referenced codes and standards. Where the extent of the reference to a referenced code or standard includes subject matter that is within the scope of this code, the provisions of this code, as applicable, shall take precedence over the provisions in the referenced code or standard.

C108.2 Applications of references. References to chapter or section numbers, or to provisions not specifically identified by number, shall be construed to refer to such chapter, section or provision of this code.

C108.3 Other laws. The provisions of this code shall not be deemed to nullify any provisions of local, state or federal law.

SECTION C109 STOP WORK ORDER

C109.1 Authority. Where the *code official* finds any work regulated by this code being performed in a manner contrary to the provisions of this code or in a dangerous or unsafe

manner, the *code official* is authorized to issue a stop work order.

C109.2 Issuance. The stop work order shall be in writing and shall be given to the owner of the property, the owner's authorized agent or the person performing the work. Upon issuance of a stop work order, the cited work shall immediately cease. The stop work order shall state the reason for the order and the conditions under which the cited work is authorized to resume.

C109.3 Emergencies. Where an emergency exists, the *code official* shall not be required to give a written notice prior to stopping the work.

C109.4 Failure to comply. Any person who shall continue any work after having been served with a stop work order, except such work as that person is directed to perform to remove a violation or unsafe condition, shall be subject to fines established by the authority having jurisdiction.

SECTION C110 BOARD OF APPEALS

C110.1 General. In order to hear and decide appeals of orders, decisions or determinations made by the *code official* relative to the application and interpretation of this code, there shall be and is hereby created a board of appeals. The *code official* shall be an ex officio member of said board but shall not have a vote on any matter before the board. The board of appeals shall be appointed by the governing body and shall hold office at its pleasure. The board shall adopt rules of procedure for conducting its business, and shall render all decisions and findings in writing to the appellant with a duplicate copy to the *code official*.

C110.2 Limitations on authority. An application for appeal shall be based on a claim that the true intent of this code or the rules legally adopted thereunder have been incorrectly interpreted, the provisions of this code do not fully apply or an equally good or better form of construction is proposed. The board shall not have authority to waive requirements of this code.

C110.3 Qualifications. The board of appeals shall consist of members who are qualified by experience and training and are not employees of the jurisdiction.

CHAPTER 2 [CE]
DEFINITIONS

User note:

About this chapter: *Codes, by their very nature, are technical documents. Every word, term and punctuation mark can add to or change the meaning of a technical requirement. It is necessary to maintain a consensus on the specific meaning of each term contained in the code. Chapter 2 performs this function by stating clearly what specific terms mean for the purposes of the code.*

SECTION C201 GENERAL

C201.1 Scope. Unless stated otherwise, the following words and terms in this code shall have the meanings indicated in this chapter.

C201.2 Interchangeability. Words used in the present tense include the future; words in the masculine gender include the feminine and neuter; the singular number includes the plural, and the plural includes the singular.

C201.3 Terms defined in other codes. Terms that are not defined in this code but are defined in the *International Building Code*, *International Fire Code*, *International Fuel Gas Code*, *International Mechanical Code*, or the *International Plumbing Code* ~~or the *International Residential Code*~~ shall have the meanings ascribed to them in those codes.

C201.4 Terms not defined. Terms not defined by this chapter shall have ordinarily accepted meanings such as the context implies.

SECTION C202 GENERAL DEFINITIONS

ABOVE-GRADE WALL. See "*Wall, above-grade*."

ACCESS (TO). That which enables a device, appliance or equipment to be reached by *ready access* or by a means that first requires the removal or movement of a panel or similar obstruction.

ADDITION. An extension or increase in the *conditioned space* floor area, number of stories or height of a building or structure.

AIR BARRIER. One or more materials joined together in a continuous manner to restrict or prevent the passage of air through the *building thermal envelope* and its assemblies.

AIR CURTAIN. A device, installed at the *building entrance*, that generates and discharges a laminar air stream intended to prevent the infiltration of external, unconditioned air into the conditioned spaces, or the loss of interior, conditioned air to the outside.

ALL-ELECTRIC BUILDING. A building that contains no combustion equipment, or plumbing for combustion equipment, installed within the building or building site.

ALTERATION. Any construction, retrofit or renovation to an existing structure other than repair or addition. Also, a change in a building, electrical, gas, mechanical or plumbing system that involves an extension, addition or change to the arrangement, type or purpose of the original installation.

APPLIANCE. A device or apparatus that is manufactured and designed to utilize energy and for which this code provides specific requirements.

APPROVED. Acceptable to the code official.

APPROVED AGENCY. An established and recognized agency that is regularly engaged in conducting tests or furnishing inspection services, or furnishing product certification, where such agency has been approved by the *code official*.

APPROVED SOURCE. An independent person, firm or corporation, approved by the code official, who is competent and experienced in the application of engineering principles to materials, methods or systems analyses.

AUTOMATIC. Self-acting, operating by its own mechanism when actuated by some impersonal influence, as, for example, a change in current strength, pressure, temperature or mechanical configuration (see "*Manual*").

AUTOMOBILE PARKING SPACE. A space within a building or private or public parking lot, exclusive of

driveways, ramps, columns, office and work areas, for the parking of an automobile.

BELOW-GRADE WALL. See "*Wall, below-grade*."

BIOGAS. A mixture of hydrocarbons that is a gas at 60°F (15.5°C) and 1 atmosphere of pressure that is produced through the anaerobic digestion of organic matter.

BIOMASS. Non-fossilized and biodegradable organic material originating from plants, animals and/or microorganisms, including products, by-products, residues and waste from agriculture, forestry and related industries as well as the non-fossilized and biodegradable organic fractions of industrial and municipal wastes, including gases and liquids recovered from the decomposition of non-fossilized and biodegradable organic material.

BOILER, MODULATING. A boiler that is capable of more than a single firing rate in response to a varying temperature or heating load.

BOILER SYSTEM. One or more boilers, their piping and controls that work together to supply steam or hot water to heat output devices remote from the boiler.

BUBBLE POINT. The refrigerant liquid saturation temperature at a specified pressure.

BUILDING. Any structure used or intended for supporting or sheltering any use or occupancy, including any mechanical systems, service water-heating systems and electric power and lighting systems located on the building site and supporting the building.

BUILDING COMMISSIONING. A process that verifies and documents that the selected building systems have been designed, installed and function according to the owner's project requirements and construction documents, and to minimum code requirements.

BUILDING ENTRANCE. Any door, setof doors, doorway or other form of portal that is used to gain access to the building from the outside by the public.

BUILDING SITE. A contiguous area of land that is under the ownership or control of one entity.

BUILDING THERMAL ENVELOPE. The basement

walls, exterior walls, floors, ceilings, roofs and any other building element assemblies that enclose *conditioned space* or provide a boundary between *conditioned space* and exempt or unconditioned space.

CAPTIVE KEY OVERRIDE. A lighting control that will not release the key that activates the override when the lighting is on.

CAVITY INSULATION. Insulating material located between framing members.

C-FACTOR (THERMAL CONDUCTANCE). The coefficient of heat transmission (surface to surface) through a building component or assembly, equal to the time rate of heat flow per unit area and the unit temperature difference between the warm side and cold side surfaces (Btu/h × ft^2 ×

°F) [W/(m^2 × K)].

CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY. A change in the use of a building or a portion of a building that results in any of the following:

1. A *change of occupancy* classification.
2. A change from one group to another group within an occupancy classification.
3. Any change in use within a group for which there is a change in the application of the requirements of this code.

CIRCULATING HOT WATER SYSTEM. A specifically designed water distribution system where one or more pumps are operated in the service hot water piping to circulate heated water from the water-heating equipment to the fixture supply and back to the water-heating equipment.

CLIMATE ZONE. A geographical region based on climatic criteria as specified in this code.

CODE OFFICIAL. The officer or other designated authority charged with the administration and enforcement of this code, or a duly authorized representative.

COEFFICIENT OF PERFORMANCE (COP) − COOLING. The ratio of the rate of heat removal to the rate of energy input, in consistent units, for a complete refrigerating system or some specific portion of that system under designated operating conditions.

COEFFICIENT OF PERFORMANCE (COP) − HEATING. The ratio of the rate of heat delivered to the rate of energy input, in consistent units, for a complete heat pump system, including the compressor and, if applicable, auxiliary heat, under designated operating conditions.

COMBUSTION EQUIPMENT. Any equipment or appliance used for space heating, service water heating, cooking, clothes drying and/or lighting that uses fuel gas or fuel oil.

COMMERCIAL BUILDING. For this code, all buildings that are not included in the definition of "*Residential building.*"

COMMERCIAL COOKING APPLIANCES. Appliances used in a commercial food service establishment for heating or cooking food and which produce grease vapors, steam, fumes, smoke or odors that are required to be removed through a local exhaust ventilation system. Such appliances include deep fat fryers, upright broilers, griddles, broilers, steam-jacketed kettles, hot-top ranges, under-fired broilers (charbroilers), ovens, barbecues, rotisseries, and similar appliances. For the purpose of this definition, a food service establishment shall include any building or a portion thereof used for the preparation and serving of food.

COMPUTER ROOM. A room whose primary function is to house equipment for the processing and storage of electronic data which has a design total information technology equipment (ITE) equipment power density less than or equal to 20 watts per square foot (20 watts per 0.092 m^2) of conditioned area or a design total ITE equipment load less than or equal to 10 kW.

CONDENSING UNIT. A factory-made assembly of refrigeration components designed to compress and liquefy a specific refrigerant. The unit consists of one or more refrigerant compressors, refrigerant condensers (air-cooled, evaporatively cooled or water-cooled), condenser fans and motors (where used) and factory-supplied accessories.

CONDITIONED FLOOR AREA. The horizontal projection of the floors associated with the *conditioned space*.

CONDITIONED SPACE. An area, room or space that is enclosed within the *building thermal envelope* and is directly or indirectly heated or cooled. Spaces are indirectly heated or cooled where they communicate through openings with conditioned spaces, where they are separated from conditioned spaces by uninsulated walls, floors or ceilings, or where they contain uninsulated ducts, piping or other sources of heating or cooling.

CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS. Written, graphic and pictorial documents prepared or assembled for describing the design, location and physical characteristics of the elements of a project necessary for obtaining a building permit.

CONTINUOUS INSULATION (ci). Insulating material that is continuous across all structural members without thermal bridges other than fasteners and service openings. It is installed on the interior or exterior or is integral to any opaque surface of the building envelope.

CRAWL SPACE WALL. The opaque portion of a wall that encloses a crawl space and is partially or totally below grade.

CURTAIN WALL. Fenestration products used to create an external non load-bearing wall that is designed to separate the exterior and interior environments.

DATA CENTER. A room or series of rooms that share data center systems, whose primary function is to house equipment for the processing and storage of electronic data and that has a design total ITE equipment power density exceeding 20 watts per square foot (20 watts per 0.092 m^2) of conditioned area and a total design ITE equipment load greater than 10 kW.

DATA CENTER SYSTEMS. HVAC systems and equipment, or portions thereof, used to provide cooling or ventilation in a data center.

DAYLIGHT RESPONSIVE CONTROL. A device or system that provides automatic control of electric light levels based on the amount of daylight in a space.

DAYLIGHT ZONE. That portion of a building's interior floor area that is illuminated by natural light.

DIRECT CURRENT FAST CHARGING (DCFC) EVSE: (fast/rapid charging) Capable of fast charging on a 100A or higher 480VAC three-phase branch circuit. AC power is converted into a controlled DC voltage and current within the EVSE that will then directly charge the electric vehicle.

DEDICATED OUTDOOR AIR SYSTEM (DOAS). A ventilation system that supplies 100 percent outdoor air primarily for the purpose of ventilation and that is a separate system from the zone space-conditioning system.

DEMAND CONTROL KITCHEN VENTILATION (DCKV). A system that provides automatic, continuous control over exhaust hood and, where provided, makeup air flows speed in response to one or more sensors that monitor cooking activity or through direct communication with cooking appliances.

DEMAND CONTROL VENTILATION (DCV). A ventilation system capability that provides for the automatic reduction of outdoor air intake below design rates when the actual occupancy of spaces served by the system is less than design occupancy.

DEMAND RECIRCULATION WATER SYSTEM. A water distribution system where one or more pumps prime the service hot water piping with heated water upon a demand for hot water.

DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL (DDC). A type of control where controlled and monitored analog or binary data, such as temperature and contact closures, are converted to digital format for manipulation and calculations by a digital computer or microprocessor, then converted back to analog or binary form to control physical devices.

DUCT. A tube or conduit utilized for conveying air. The air passages of self-contained systems are not to be construed as air ducts.

DUCT SYSTEM. A continuous passageway for the transmission of air that, in addition to ducts, includes duct fittings, dampers, plenums, fans and accessory air-handling equipment and appliances.

DWELLING UNIT. A single unit providing complete independent living facilities for one or more persons, including permanent provisions for living, sleeping, eating, cooking and sanitation.

DYNAMIC GLAZING. Any fenestration product that has the fully reversible ability to change its performance properties, including *U*-factor, solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC) or visible transmittance (VT).

DX-DEDICATED OUTDOOR AIR SYSTEM UNITS (DX-DOAS UNITS). A type of air-cooled, water-cooled or water source factory assembled product that dehumidifies 100 percent outdoor air to a low dew point and includes reheat that is capable of controlling the supply dry-bulb temperature of the dehumidified air to the designated supply air temperature. This conditioned outdoor air is then delivered directly or indirectly to the conditioned spaces. It may precondition outdoor air by containing an enthalpy wheel, sensible wheel, desiccant wheel, plate heat exchanger, heat pipes, or other heat or mass transfer apparatus. with an energy recovery ventilation system.

ECONOMIZER, AIR. A duct and damper arrangement and automatic control system that allows a cooling system to supply outside air to reduce or eliminate the need for mechanical cooling during mild or cold weather.

ECONOMIZER, WATER. A system where the supply air of a cooling system is cooled indirectly with water that is itself cooled by heat or mass transfer to the environment without the use of mechanical cooling.

ELECTRIC VEHICLE (EV). An automotive-type vehicle for on-road use, such as passenger automobiles, buses, trucks, vans, neighborhood electric vehicles, electric motorcycles, and the like, primarily powered by an electric motor that draws current from a rechargeable storage battery, a fuel cell, a photovoltaic array, or another source of electric current. Plug-in hybrid electric vehicles are electric vehicles having a second source of motive power. Off-road, self-propelled electric mobile equipment, such as industrial trucks, hoists, lifts, transports, golf carts, airline ground support equipment, tractors, boats and the like, are not considered electric vehicles.

ELECTRIC VEHICLE CAPABLE SPACE (EV CAPABLE SPACE). A designated automobile parking space that is provided with electrical infrastructure, such as, but not limited to, raceways, cables, electrical capacity, and panelboard or other electrical distribution equipment space, necessary for the future installation of an EVSE.

ELECTRIC VEHICLE READY SPACE (EV READY SPACE). An automobile parking space that is provided with a branch circuit and a receptacle outlet that will support an installed EVSE.

ELECTRIC VEHICLE SUPPLY EQUIPMENT (EVSE). Equipment for plug-in power transfer including the ungrounded, grounded and equipment grounding conductors, and the electric vehicle connectors, attachment plugs, personal protection system and all other fittings, devices, power outlets or apparatus installed specifically for the purpose of transferring energy between the premises wiring and the electric vehicle.

ELECTRIC VEHICLE SUPPLY EQUIPMENT INSTALLED SPACE (EVSE SPACE). An automobile parking space that is provided with a dedicated EVSE connection.

ENCLOSED SPACE. A volume surrounded by solid surfaces such as walls, floors, roofs and openable devices, such as doors and operable windows.

ENERGY ANALYSIS. A method for estimating the annual energy use of the *proposed design* and *standard reference design* based on estimates of energy use.

ENERGY COST. The total estimated annual cost for purchased energy for the building functions regulated by this code, including applicable demand charges.

ENERGY RECOVERY VENTILATION SYSTEM. Systems that employ air-to-air heat exchangers to recover energy from exhaust air for the purpose of preheating, precooling, humidifying or dehumidifying outdoor ventilation air prior to supplying the air to a space, either directly or as part of an HVAC system.

ENERGY SIMULATION TOOL. An *approved* software program or calculation-based methodology that projects

the annual energy use of a building.

ENERGY STORAGE SYSTEM (ESS). One or more devices, assembled together, capable of storing energy in order to supply electrical energy at a future time.

ENTHALPY RECOVERY RATIO. Change in the enthalpy of the *outdoor air* supply divided by the difference between the *outdoor air* and entering exhaust air enthalpy, expressed as a percentage.

ENTRANCE DOOR. A vertical fenestration product used for occupant ingress, egress and access in nonresidential buildings, including, but not limited to, exterior entrances utilizing latching hardware and automatic closers and containing over 50 percent glazing specifically designed to withstand heavy-duty usage.

EQUIPMENT ROOM. A space that contains either electrical equipment, mechanical equipment, machinery, water pumps or hydraulic pumps that are a function of the building's services.

EXTERIOR WALL. Walls including both above-grade walls and basement walls.

FAN, EMBEDDED. A fan that is part of a manufactured assembly where the assembly includes functions other than air movement.

FAN ARRAY. Multiple fans in parallel between two plenum sections in an air distribution system.

FAN BRAKE HORSEPOWER (BHP). The horsepower delivered to the fan's shaft. Brake horsepower does not include the mechanical drive losses, such as that from belts and gears.

FAN ENERGY INDEX (FEI). The ratio of the electric input power of a reference fan to the electric input power of the actual fan as calculated in accordance with AMCA 208.

FAN NAMEPLATE ELECTRICAL INPUT POWER. The nominal electrical input power rating stamped on a fan assembly nameplate.

FAN SYSTEM BHP. The sum of the fan brake horsepower of all fans that are required to operate at fan system design conditions to supply air from the heating or cooling source to the *conditioned spaces* and return it to the source or exhaust it to the outdoors.

FAN SYSTEM DESIGN CONDITIONS. Operating conditions that can be expected to occur during normal system operation that result in the highest supply fan airflow rate to conditioned spaces served by the system, other than during air economizer operation.

FAN SYSTEM ELECTRICAL INPUT POWER. The sum of the fan electrical power of all fans that are required to operate at fan system design conditions to supply air from the heating or cooling source to the conditioned spaces and/or return it to the source or exhaust it to the outdoors.

FAN SYSTEM MOTOR NAMEPLATE HP. The sum of the motor nameplate horsepower of all fans that are required to operate at design conditions to supply air from the heating or cooling source to the *conditioned spaces* and return it to the source or exhaust it to the outdoors.

FAULT DETECTION AND DIAGNOSTICS (FDD) SYSTEM. A software platform that utilizes building analytic algorithms to convert data provided by sensors and devices to automatically identify faults in building systems and provide a prioritized list of actionable resolutions to those faults based on cost or energy avoidance, comfort and maintenance impact.

FENESTRATION. Products classified as either skylights or vertical fenestration.

Skylights. Glass or other transparent or translucent glazing material installed at a slope of less than 60 degrees (1.05 rad) from horizontal, including unit skylights, tubular daylighting devices and glazing materials in solariums, sunrooms, roofs, greenhouses and sloped walls.

Vertical fenestration. Windows that are fixed or operable, opaque doors, glazed doors, glazed block and combination opaque and glazed doors composed of glass or other transparent or translucent glazing materials and installed at a slope of not less than 60 degrees (1.05 rad) from horizontal.

FENESTRATION PRODUCT, FIELD-FABRICATED. A fenestration product whose frame is made at the construction site of standard dimensional lumber or other materials that were not previously cut or otherwise formed with the specific intention of being used to fabricate a fenestration product or exterior door. Field-fabricated does not include site-built fenestration.

FENESTRATION PRODUCT, SITE-BUILT. A fenestration designed to be made up of field-glazed or field-assembled units using specific factory cut or otherwise factory-formed framing and glazing units. Examples of site-built fenestration include storefront systems, curtain walls and atrium roof systems.

F-FACTOR. The perimeter heat loss factor for slab-on-grade floors (Btu/h × ft × °F) [W/(m × K)].

FLOOR AREA, NET. The actual occupied area not including unoccupied accessory areas such as corridors, stairways, toilet rooms, mechanical rooms and closets.

FUEL GAS. A natural gas, manufactured gas, liquified petroleum gas or a mixture of these.

FUEL OIL. Kerosene or any hydrocarbon oil having a flash point not less than 100°F (38°C).

GENERAL LIGHTING. Interior lighting that provides a substantially uniform level of illumination throughout a space.

GREENHOUSE. A structure or a thermally isolated area of a building that maintains a specialized sunlit environment exclusively used for, and essential to, the cultivation, protection or maintenance of plants. *Greenhouses* are those that are erected for a period of 180 days or more.

GROUP R. Buildings or portions of buildings that contain any of the following occupancies as established in the *International Building Code*:

1. *Group R*-1.
2. *Group R*-2 where located more than three stories in height above grade plane.
3. *Group R*-4 where located more than three stories in height above grade plane.

HEAT TRAP. An arrangement of piping and fittings, such as elbows, or a commercially available heat trap that prevents thermos-syphoning of hot water during standby periods.

HEATED SLAB. Slab-on-grade construction in which the heating elements, hydronic tubing or hot air distribution system is in contact with, or placed within or under, the slab.

HIGH SPEED DOOR. A non-swinging door used primarily to facilitate vehicular access or material transportation, with a minimum opening rate of 32 inches (813 mm) per second, a minimum closing rate of 24 inches (610 mm) per second and that includes an automatic-closing device.

HISTORIC BUILDING. Any building or structure that is one or more of the following:

1. Listed, or certified as eligible for listing, by the State Historic Preservation Officer or the Keeper of the National Register of Historic Places, in the National Register of Historic Places.
2. Designated as historic under an applicable state or local law.
3. Certified as a contributing resource within a National Register-listed, state-designated or locally designated historic district.

IEC DESIGN H MOTOR. An electric motor that meets all of the following:

1. It is an induction motor designed for use with three-phase power.
2. It contains a cage rotor.
3. It is capable of direct-on-line starting.
4. It has four, six or eight poles.
5. It is rated from 0.4 kW to 1600 kW at a frequency of 60 hertz.

IEC DESIGN N MOTOR. An electric motor that meets all of the following:

1. It is an induction motor designed for use with three-phase power.
2. It contains a cage rotor.
3. It is capable of direct-on-line starting.
4. It has two, four, six or eight poles.
5. It is rated from 0.4 kW to 1600 kW at a frequency of 60 hertz.

INFILTRATION. The uncontrolled inward air leakage into a building caused by the pressure effects of wind or the effect of differences in the indoor and outdoor air density or both.

INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY EQUIPMENT (ITE). Items including computers, data storage devices, servers and network and communication equipment.

INTEGRATED PART LOAD VALUE (IPLV). A single-number figure of merit based on part-load EER, COP or kW/ton expressing part-load efficiency for air-conditioning and heat pump equipment on the basis of weighted operation at various load capacities for equipment.

INTERNAL CURTAIN SYSTEM. A system consisting of movable panels of fabric or plastic film used to cover and uncover the space enclosed in a *greenhouse* on a daily basis.

ISOLATION DEVICES. Devices that isolate HVAC zones so that they can be operated independently of one another. *Isolation devices* include separate systems, isolation dampers and controls providing shutoff at terminal boxes.

LABELED. Equipment, materials or products to which have been affixed a label, seal, symbol or other identifying mark of a nationally recognized testing laboratory, *approved agency* or other organization concerned with product evaluation that maintains periodic inspection of the production of the labeled items and whose labeling indicates either that the equipment, material or product meets identified standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose.

LARGE-DIAMETER CEILING FAN. A ceiling fan that is greater than 7 feet (2134 mm) in diameter. These fans are sometimes referred to as High-Volume, Low-Speed (HVLS) fans.

LINER SYSTEM (Ls). A system that includes the following:

1. A continuous vapor barrier liner membrane that is installed below the purlins and that is uninterrupted by framing members.
2. An uncompressed, unfaced insulation resting on top of the liner membrane and located between the purlins.

For multilayer installations, the last rated *R*-value of insulation is for unfaced insulation draped over purlins and then compressed when the metal roof panels are attached.

LISTED. Equipment, materials, products or services included in a list published by an organization acceptable to the *code official* and concerned with evaluation of products or services that maintains periodic inspection of production of *listed* equipment or materials or periodic evaluation of services and whose listing states either that the equipment, material, product or service meets identified standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose.

LOW-SLOPED ROOF. A roof having a slope less than 2 units vertical in 12 units horizontal.

LOW-VOLTAGE DRY-TYPE DISTRIBUTION TRANSFORMER. A transformer that is air-cooled, does not use oil as a coolant, has an input voltage less than or equal to 600 volts and is rated for operation at a frequency of 60 hertz.

LUMINAIRE-LEVEL LIGHTING CONTROLS. A lighting system consisting of one or more luminaires with embedded lighting control logic, occupancy and ambient light sensors, wireless networking capabilities and local override switching capability, where required.

MANUAL. Capable of being operated by personal intervention (see "*Automatic*").

NAMEPLATE HORSEPOWER. The nominal motor output power rating stamped on the motor nameplate.

NEMA DESIGN A MOTOR. A squirrel-cage motor that meets all of the following:

1. It is designed to withstand full-voltage starting and develop locked-rotor torque as shown in paragraph 12.38.1 of NEMA MG 1.
2. It has pull-up torque not less than the values shown in paragraph 12.40.1 of NEMA MG 1.
3. It has breakdown torque not less than the values shown in paragraph 12.39.1 of NEMA MG 1.
4. It has a locked-rotor current higher than the values shown in paragraph 12.35.1 of NEMA MG 1 for 60 hertz and paragraph 12.35.2 of NEMA MG 1 for 50 hertz.
5. It has a slip at rated load of less than 5 percent for motors with fewer than 10 poles.

NEMA DESIGN B MOTOR. A squirrel-cage motor that meets all of the following:

1. It is designed to withstand full-voltage starting.
2. It develops locked-rotor, breakdown and pull-up torques adequate for general application as specified in Sections 12.38, 12.39 and 12.40 of NEMA MG1.
3. It draws locked-rotor current not to exceed the values shown in Section 12.35.1 for 60 hertz and Section 12.35.2 for 50 hertz of NEMA MG1.
4. It has a slip at rated load of less than 5 percent for motors with fewer than 10 poles.

NEMA DESIGN C MOTOR. A squirrel-cage motor that meets all of the following:

1. Designed to withstand full-voltage starting and develop locked-rotor torque for high-torque applications up to the values shown in paragraph 12.38.2 of NEMA MG1 (incorporated by reference, see A§431.15).

2. It has pull-up torque not less than the values shown in paragraph 12.40.2 of NEMA MG1.
3. It has breakdown torque not less than the values shown in paragraph 12.39.2 of NEMA MG1.
4. It has a locked-rotor current not to exceed the values shown in paragraph 12.35.1 of NEMA MG1 for 60 hertz and paragraph 12.35.2 for 50 hertz.
5. It has a slip at rated load of less than 5 percent.

NETWORKED GUESTROOM CONTROL SYSTEM. A control system, with access from the front desk or other central location associated with a *Group R*-1 building, that is capable of identifying the rented and unrented status of each guestroom according to a timed schedule, and is capable of controlling HVAC in each hotel and motel guestroom separately.

NONSTANDARD PART LOAD VALUE (NPLV). A single-number part-load efficiency figure of merit calculated and referenced to conditions other than IPLV conditions, for units that are not designed to operate at AHRI standard rating conditions.

OCCUPANT SENSOR CONTROL. An automatic control device or system that detects the presence or absence of people within an area and causes lighting, equipment or appliances to be regulated accordingly.

ON-SITE RENEWABLE ENERGY. Energy from renewable energy resources harvested at the building project site.

OPAQUE DOOR. A door that is not less than 50-percent opaque in surface area.

POWERED ROOF/WALL VENTILATORS. A fan consisting of a centrifugal or axial impeller with an integral driver in a weather-resistant housing and with a base designed to fit, usually by means of a curb, over a wall or roof opening.

PROPOSED DESIGN. A description of the proposed building used to estimate annual energy use for determining compliance based on total building performance.

RADIANT HEATING SYSTEM. A heating system that transfers heat to objects and surfaces within a conditioned space, primarily by infrared radiation.

READY ACCESS (TO). That which enables a device, appliance or equipment to be directly reached without requiring the removal or movement of any panel or similar obstruction.

REFRIGERANT DEW POINT. The refrigerant vapor saturation temperature at a specified pressure.

REFRIGERATED WAREHOUSE COOLER. An enclosed storage space capable of being refrigerated to temperatures above 32°F (0°C) that can be walked into and has a total chilled storage area of not less than 3,000 square feet (279 m^2).

REFRIGERATED WAREHOUSE FREEZER. An enclosed storage space capable of being refrigerated to temperatures at or below 32°F (0°C) that can be walked into and has a total chilled storage area of not less than 3,000 square feet (279 m^2).

REFRIGERATION SYSTEM, LOW TEMPERATURE. Systems for maintaining food product in a frozen state in refrigeration applications.

REFRIGERATION SYSTEM, MEDIUM TEMPERATURE. Systems for maintaining food product above freezing in refrigeration applications.

REGISTERED DESIGN PROFESSIONAL. An individual who is registered or licensed to practice their respective design profession as defined by the statutory requirements of the professional registration laws of the state or jurisdiction in which the project is to be constructed.

RENEWABLE ENERGY RESOURCES. Energy derived from solar radiation, wind, waves, tides, landfill gas, biogas, biomass or extracted from hot fluid or steam heated within the earth.

REPAIR. The reconstruction or renewal of any part of an existing building for the purpose of its maintenance or to correct damage.

REROOFING. The process of recovering or replacing an existing roof covering. See "*Roof recover*" and "*Roof replacement*."

RESIDENTIAL BUILDING. For this code, includes detached one- and two-family dwellings and multiple single-family dwellings (townhouses) and *Group R*-2, R-3 and R-4 buildings three stories or less in height above grade plane.

ROOF ASSEMBLY. A system designed to provide weather protection and resistance to design loads. The system consists of a roof covering and roof deck or a single component serving as both the roof covering and the roof deck.

A roof assembly includes the roof covering, underlayment, roof deck, insulation, vapor retarder and interior finish.

ROOF RECOVER. The process of installing an additional roof covering over an existing roof covering without removing the existing roof covering.

ROOF REPAIR. Reconstruction or renewal of any part of an existing roof for the purpose of its maintenance.

ROOF REPLACEMENT. ~~The process of removing the existing roof covering, repairing any damaged substrate and installing a new roof covering.~~ An alteration that includes the removal of all existing layers of roof assembly materials down to the roof deck and installing replacement materials above the existing roof deck.

ROOFTOP MONITOR. A raised section of a roof containing vertical fenestration along one or more sides.

***R*-VALUE (THERMAL RESISTANCE).** The inverse of

the time rate of heat flow through a body from one of its bounding surfaces to the other surface for a unit temperature difference between the two surfaces, under steady state conditions, per unit area ($h \times ft^2 \times °F/Btu$) [$(m^2 \times K)/W$].

SATURATED CONDENSING TEMPERATURE. The saturation temperature corresponding to the measured refrigerant pressure at the condenser inlet for single component and azeotropic refrigerants, and the arithmetic average of the dew point and *bubble point* temperatures corresponding to the refrigerant pressure at the condenser entrance for zeotropic refrigerants.

SERVICE WATER HEATING. Supply of hot water for purposes other than comfort heating.

SLEEPING UNIT. A room or space in which people sleep that can include permanent provisions for living, eating, and either sanitation or kitchen facilities but not both. Such rooms and spaces that are part of a dwelling unit are not *sleeping units*.

SMALL ELECTRIC MOTOR. A general purpose alternating-current single-speed induction motor.

SOLAR HEAT GAIN COEFFICIENT (SHGC). The ratio of the solar heat gain entering the space through the fenestration assembly to the incident solar radiation. Solar heat gain includes directly transmitted solar heat and absorbed solar radiation that is then reradiated, conducted or convected into the space.

SOLAR-READY ZONE. A section or sections of the roof or building overhang designated and reserved for the future installation of a solar photovoltaic or solar thermal system.

STANDARD REFERENCE DESIGN. A version of the *proposed design* that meets the minimum requirements of this code and is used to determine the maximum annual energy use requirement for compliance based on total building performance.

STOREFRONT. A system of doors and windows mulled as a composite fenestration structure that has been designed to resist heavy use. *Storefront* systems include, but are not limited to, exterior fenestration systems that span from the floor level or above to the ceiling of the same story on commercial buildings, with or without mulled windows and doors.

TESTING UNIT ENCLOSURE AREA. The area sum of all the boundary surfaces that define the *dwelling unit, sleeping unit* or occupiable *conditioned space* including top/ceiling, bottom/floor and all side walls. This does not include interior partition walls within the *dwelling unit, sleeping unit,* or occupiable *conditioned space*. Wall height shall be measured from the finished floor of the *conditioned space* to the finished floor or roof/ceiling air barrier above.

THERMAL BRIDGE. An element or interface of elements that has a higher thermal conductivity than the surrounding building thermal envelope, which creates a path of least resistance for heat transfer.

THERMAL DISTRIBUTION EFFICIENCY (TDE). The resistance to changes in air heat as air is conveyed through a distance of air duct. TDE is a heat loss calculation evaluating the difference in the heat of the air between the air duct inlet and outlet caused by differences in temperatures between the air in the duct and the duct material. TDE is expressed as a percent difference between the inlet and outlet heat in the duct.

THERMOSTAT. An automatic control device used to maintain temperature at a fixed or adjustable setpoint.

TIME SWITCH CONTROL. An automatic control device or system that controls lighting or other loads, including switching off, based on time schedules.

***U*-FACTOR (THERMAL TRANSMITTANCE).** The coefficient of heat transmission (air to air) through a building component or assembly, equal to the time rate of heat flow per unit area and unit temperature difference between the warm side and cold side air films ($Btu/h \times ft^2 \times °F$) [$W/(m^2 \times K)$].

VARIABLE REFRIGERANT FLOW SYSTEM. An engineered direct-expansion (DX) refrigerant system that incorporates a common condensing unit, at least one variable-capacity compressor, a distributed refrigerant piping

network to multiple indoor fan heating and cooling units each capable of individual zone temperature control, through integral zone temperature control devices and a common communications network. Variable refrigerant flow utilizes three or more steps of control on common interconnecting piping.

VEGETATIVE ROOF. An assembly of interacting components designed to waterproof a building's top surface that includes, by design, vegetation and related landscape elements.

VENTILATION. The natural or mechanical process of supplying conditioned or unconditioned air to, or removing such air from, any space.

VENTILATION AIR. That portion of supply air that comes from outside (outdoors) plus any recirculated air that has been treated to maintain the desired quality of air within a designated space.

VISIBLE TRANSMITTANCE (VT). The ratio of visible light entering the space through the fenestration product assembly to the incident visible light. Visible transmittance includes the effects of glazing material and frame and is expressed as a number between 0 and 1.

VISIBLE TRANSMITTANCE, ANNUAL (VT_{annual}). The ratio of visible light entering the space through the fenestration product assembly to the incident visible light during the course of a year, which includes the effects of glazing material, frame, and light well or tubular conduit, and is expressed as a number between 0 and 1.

VOLTAGE DROP. A decrease in voltage caused by losses in the wiring systems that connect the power source to the load.

WALK-IN COOLER. An enclosed storage space capable of being refrigerated to temperatures above 32°F (0°C) and less than 55°F (12.8°C) that can be walked into, has a ceiling height of not less than 7 feet (2134 mm) and has a total chilled storage area of less than 3,000 square feet (279 m^2).

WALK-IN FREEZER. An enclosed storage space capable of being refrigerated to temperatures at or below 32°F (0°C) that can be walked into, has a ceiling height of not less than 7 feet (2134 mm) and has a total chilled storage area of less than 3,000 square feet (279 m^2).

WALL, ABOVE-GRADE. A wall associated with the *building thermal envelope* that is more than 15 percent above grade and is on the exterior of the building or any wall that is associated with the *building thermal envelope* that is not on the exterior of the building. This includes, but is not limited to, between-floor spandrels, peripheral edges of floors, roof knee walls, dormer walls, gable end walls, walls enclosing a mansard roof and skylight shafts.

WALL, BELOW-GRADE. A wall associated with the basement or first story of the building that is part of the *building thermal envelope*, is not less than 85 percent below grade and is on the exterior of the building.

WATER HEATER. Any heating appliance or equipment that heats potable water and supplies such water to the potable hot water distribution system.

WORK AREA. That portion or portions of a building consisting of all reconfigured spaces as indicated on the construction documents. Work area excludes other portions of the building where incidental work entailed by the intended work must be performed and portions of the building where work not initially intended by the owner is specifically required by this code.

ZONE. A space or group of spaces within a building with heating or cooling requirements that are sufficiently similar so that desired conditions can be maintained throughout using a single controlling device.

CHAPTER 3 [CE]
GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

User note:

About this chapter: *Chapter 3 addresses broadly applicable requirements that would not be at home in other chapters having more specific coverage of subject matter. This chapter establishes climate zone by US counties and territories and includes methodology for determining climate zones elsewhere. It also contains product rating, marking and installation requirements for materials such as insulation, windows, doors and siding.*

SECTION C301 CLIMATE ZONES

Section C301 Climate zones is deleted in its entirety and shall read as follows: The City of Aspen, Colorado, shall use Climate Zone 7.

SECTION C302 DESIGN CONDITIONS

C302.1 Interior design conditions. The interior design temperatures used for heating and cooling load calculations shall be a maximum of 72°F (22°C) for heating and minimum of 75°F (24°C) for cooling.

SECTION C303
MATERIALS, SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT

C303.1 Identification. Materials, systems and equipment shall be identified in a manner that will allow a determination of compliance with the applicable provisions of this code.

C303.1.1 Building thermal envelope insulation. An *R*-value identification mark shall be applied by the manufacturer to each piece of *building thermal envelope* insulation 12 inches (305 mm) or greater in width. Alternatively, the insulation installers shall provide a certification listing the type, manufacturer and *R*-value of insulation installed in each element of the *building thermal envelope*. For blown-in or sprayed fiberglass and cellulose insulation, the initial installed thickness, settled thickness, settled *R*-value, installed density, coverage area and number of bags installed shall be indicated on the certification. For sprayed polyurethane foam (SPF) insulation, the installed thickness of the areas covered and *R*-value of installed thickness shall be indicated on the certification. For insulated siding, the *R*-value shall be labeled on the product's package and shall be indicated on the certification. The insulation installer shall sign, date and post the certification in a conspicuous location on the job site.

Exception: For roof insulation installed above the deck, the *R*-value shall be labeled as required by the material standards specified in Table 1508.2 of the *International Building Code*.

C303.1.1.1 Blown-in or sprayed roof/ceiling insulation. The thickness of blown-in or sprayed fiberglass and cellulose roof/ceiling insulation shall be written in inches (mm) on markers and one or more of such markers shall be installed for every 300 square feet (28 m^2) of attic area throughout the attic space. The markers shall be affixed to the trusses or joists and marked with the minimum initial installed thickness with numbers not less than 1 inch (25 mm) in height. Each marker shall face the attic *access* opening. Spray polyurethane foam thickness and installed *R*-value shall be indicated on certification provided by the insulation installer.

C303.1.2 Insulation mark installation. Insulating materials shall be installed such that the manufacturer's *R*-value mark is readily observable upon inspection. For insulation materials that are installed without an observable manufacturer's *R*-value mark, such as blown or draped products, an insulation certificate complying with Section C303.1.1 shall be left immediately after installation by the installer, in a conspicuous location within the building, to certify the installed *R*-value of the insulation material.

C303.1.3 Fenestration product rating. *U*-factors of fenestration products shall be determined as follows:

1. For windows, doors and skylights, *U*-factor ratings shall be determined in accordance with NFRC 100.
2. Where required for garage doors and rolling doors, *U*-factor ratings shall be determined in accordance with either NFRC 100 or ANSI/DASMA 105.

   U-factors shall be determined by an accredited, independent laboratory, and *labeled* and certified by the manufacturer.

   Products lacking such a *labeled U*-factor shall be assigned a default *U*-factor from Table C303.1.3(1) or Table C303.1.3(2). The *solar heat gain coefficient* (SHGC) and *visible transmittance* (VT) of glazed fenestration products (windows, glazed doors and skylights) shall be determined in accordance with NFRC 200 by an accredited, independent laboratory, and *labeled* and certified by the manufacturer. Products lacking

such a *labeled* SHGC or VT shall be assigned a default SHGC or VT from Table C303.1.3(3). For Tubular Daylighting Devices, VTannual shall be measured and rated in accordance with NFRC 203.

TABLE C303.1.3(1)
DEFAULT GLAZED WINDOW, GLASS DOOR AND SKYLIGHT *U*-FACTORS

FRAME TYPE	WINDOW AND GLASS DOOR		SKYLIGHT	
	Single	Double	Single	Double
Metal	1.20	0.80	2.00	1.30
Metal with Thermal Break	1.10	0.65	1.90	1.10
Nonmetal or Metal Clad	0.95	0.55	1.75	1.05
Glazed Block	0.60			

TABLE C303.1.3(2)
DEFAULT OPAQUE DOOR *U*-FACTORS

DOOR TYPE	OPAQUE *U*-FACTOR
Uninsulated Metal	1.20
Insulated Metal (Rolling)	0.90
Insulated Metal (Other)	0.60
Wood	0.50
Insulated, nonmetal edge, max 45% glazing, any glazing double pane	0.35

TABLE C303.1.3(3)
DEFAULT GLAZED FENESTRATION SHGC AND VT

	SINGLE GLAZED		DOUBLE GLAZED		GLAZED BLOCK
	Clear	Tinted	Clear	Tinted	
SHGC	0.8	0.7	0.7	0.6	0.6
VT	0.6	0.3	0.6	0.3	0.6

C303.1.4 Insulation product rating. The thermal resistance (*R*-value) of insulation shall be determined in accordance with the US Federal Trade Commission *R*-value rule (CFR Title 16, Part 460) in units of h × ft^2 × °F/Btu at a mean temperature of 75°F (24°C).

C303.1.4.1 Insulated siding. The thermal resistance (*R*-value) of insulated siding shall be determined in accordance with ASTM C1363. Installation for testing shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

C303.2 Installation. Materials, systems and equipment shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and the *International Building Code*.

C303.2.1 Protection of exposed foundation insulation. Insulation applied to the exterior of basement walls, crawl space walls and the perimeter of slab-on-grade floors shall have a rigid, opaque and weather-resistant protective covering to prevent the degradation of the insulation's thermal performance. The protective covering shall cover the exposed exterior insulation and extend not less than 6 inches (153 mm) below grade.

C303.2.2 Multiple layers of continuous insulation board. Where two or more layers of continuous insulation board are used in a construction assembly, the continuous insulation boards shall be installed in accordance with Section C303.2. Where the continuous insulation board manufacturer's instructions do not address installation of two or more layers, the edge joints between each layer of continuous insulation boards shall be staggered.

CHAPTER 4 [CE]
COMMERCIAL ENERGY EFFICIENCY

User note:

About this chapter: *Chapter 4 presents the paths and options for compliance with the energy efficiency provisions. Chapter 4 contains energy efficiency provisions for the building envelope, mechanical and water heating systems, lighting and additional efficiency requirements. A performance alternative is also provided to allow for energy code compliance other than by the prescriptive method.*

SECTION C401 GENERAL

C401.1 Scope. The provisions in this chapter are applicable to commercial *buildings* and their *building sites*.

C401.2 Application. Commercial buildings shall comply with Section C401.2.1 or C401.2.2. Commercial buildings shall also comply with C401.3 and C401.4.

C401.2.1 International Energy Conservation Code Prescriptive Path of Compliance. Commercial buildings shall comply ~~with one of the following:~~

1. ~~Prescriptive Compliance. The Prescriptive Compliance option requires compliance~~ with Sections C402 through C406 and Section C408. Dwelling units and sleeping units in Group R-2 buildings ~~without systems serving multiple units~~ shall be deemed to be in compliance with this chapter, provided that they comply with IECC – Residential Provisions, Section R406.
2. ~~Total Simulated Building Performance. The Total Simulated Building Performance option requires compliance with Section C407.~~

Exception: Additions, alterations, repairs and changes of occupancy to existing buildings complying with Chapter 5.

C401.2.2 ASHRAE 90.1 Performance Path of Compliance. Commercial buildings shall comply with the requirements of ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-~~2016~~ Appendix G.

C402.2.2.1 Mandatory Requirements. Compliance based on Appendix G requires a proposed design that meets all of the following:

1. Annual energy cost that is less than or equal to 70 percent of the annual energy cost of the standard reference design. Energy prices shall be taken from a source approved by the code official, such as the Department of Energy, Energy Information Administration's State Energy Data System Prices and Expenditures reports. The reduction in energy cost of the proposed design associated with on-site renewable energy shall not be more than 5 percent of the total energy cost. The amount of renewable energy purchased from off-site sources shall be the same in the standard reference design and the proposed design. Site energy (1 kWh = 3413 Btu) rather than energy cost may be used as the metric of comparison.
2. The requirements of Sections C402.6, C403.13 and Sections C405.12 through C405.17 of this code.

C401.3 Thermal envelope certificate. A permanent thermal envelope certificate shall be completed by an *approved* party. Such certificate shall be posted on a wall in the space where the space conditioning equipment is located, a utility room or other *approved* location. If located on an electrical panel, the certificate shall not cover or obstruct the visibility of the circuit directory label, service disconnect label or other required labels. A copy of the certificate shall also be included in the construction files for the project. The certificate shall include the following:

1. *R*-values of insulation installed in or on ceilings, roofs, walls, foundations and slabs, *basement walls*, crawl space walls and floors and ducts outside *conditioned spaces*.
2. *U*-factors and *solar heat gain coefficients* (SHGC) of fenestrations.
3. Results from any *building* envelope air leakage testing performed on the *building*.

Where there is more than one value for any component of the building envelope, the certificate shall indicate the area-weighted average value where available. If the area- weighted average is not available, the certificate shall list each value that applies to 10 percent or more of the total component area.

C401.4 Metering. Each dwelling unit shall have separate electric and water meters. Where gas is installed to the building, each dwelling unit shall have a separate gas meter.

SECTION C402
BUILDING ENVELOPE REQUIREMENTS

C402.1 General. *Building thermal envelope* assemblies for buildings that are intended to comply with the code on a prescriptive basis in accordance with the compliance path described in Item 1 of Section C401.2.1 shall comply with the following:

1. The opaque portions of the *building thermal envelope* shall comply with the specific insulation requirements of Section C402.2 and the thermal requirements of either the *R*-value-based method of Section C402.1.3; the *U*-, *C*- and *F*-factor-based method of Section C402.1.4; or the component performance alternative of Section C402.1.5.
2. Roof solar reflectance and thermal emittance shall comply with Section C402.3.
3. Fenestration in building envelope assemblies shall comply with Section C402.4.
4. Air leakage of building envelope assemblies shall comply with Section C402.5.
5. Thermal bridges in above-grade walls shall comply with Section C402.6.

Alternatively, where buildings have a vertical fenestration area or skylight area exceeding that allowed in Section C402.4, the building and *building thermal envelope* shall comply with Item 2 of Section C401.2.1 or Section C401.2.2.

Walk-in coolers, walk-in freezers, refrigerated warehouse coolers and refrigerated warehouse freezers shall comply with Section C403.11.

C402.1.1 Low-energy buildings and greenhouses. The following low-energy buildings, or portions thereof separated from the remainder of the building by *building thermal envelope* assemblies complying with this section, shall be exempt from the *building thermal envelope* provisions of Section C402.

1. Those with a peak design rate of energy usage less than 3.4 Btu/h × ft^2 (10.7 W/m^2) or 1.0 watt per square foot (10.7 W/m^2) of floor area for space conditioning purposes.
2. Those that do not contain *conditioned space*.

C402.1.1.1 Greenhouses. Greenhouse structures or areas that are mechanically heated or cooled and that comply with all of the following shall be exempt from the building envelope requirements of this code:

1. Exterior opaque envelope assemblies comply with Sections C402.2 and C402.4.5.

   Exception: Low energy greenhouses that comply with Section C402.1.1.

2. Interior partition *building thermal envelope* assemblies that separate the greenhouse from *conditioned space* comply with Sections C402.2, C402.4.3 and C402.4.5.
3. Fenestration assemblies that comply with the thermal envelope requirements in Table C402.1.1.1. The *U*-factor for a roof shall be for the roof assembly or a roof that includes the assembly and an internal curtain system.

   Exception: Unconditioned greenhouses.

TABLE C402.1.1.1 FENESTRATION THERMAL ENVELOPE MAXIMUM REQUIREMENTS

COMPONENT	*U*-FACTOR (BTU/h × ft^2 × °F)
Skylight	0.5
Vertical fenestration	0.7

C402.1.2 Equipment buildings. Buildings that comply with the following shall be exempt from the *building thermal envelope* provisions of this code:

1. Are separate buildings with floor area not more than 1,200 square feet (110 m^2).
2. Are intended to house electric equipment with installed equipment power totaling not less than 7 watts per square foot (75 W/m^2) and not intended for human occupancy.
3. Have a heating system capacity not greater than (17,000 Btu/hr) (5 kW) and a heating thermostat setpoint that is restricted to not more than 50°F (10°C).

4. Have an average wall and roof *U*-factor less ~~than 0.200 in *Climate Zones* 1 through 5 and less~~ than 0.120 ~~in *Climate Zones* 6 through 8.~~

~~5. Comply with the roof solar reflectance and thermal emittance provisions for *Climate Zone* 1.~~

C402.1.3 Insulation component *R*-value-based method. *Building thermal envelope* opaque assemblies shall comply with the requirements of Sections C402.2 and C402.4 based on the *climate zone* specified in Chapter 3. For opaque portions of the *building thermal envelope* intended to comply on an insulation component *R*-value basis, the *R*-values for cavity insulation and continuous insulation shall be not less than that specified in Table C402.1.3. Where cavity insulation is installed in multiple layers, the cavity insulation *R*-values shall be summed to determine compliance with the cavity insulation *R*-value requirements. Where continuous insulation is installed in multiple layers, the continuous insulation *R*-values shall be summed to determine compliance with the continuous insulation *R*-value requirements. Cavity insulation *R*-values shall not be used to determine compliance with the continuous insulation *R*-value requirements in Table C402.1.3. Commercial buildings or portions of commercial buildings enclosing *Group R* occupancies shall use the *R*-values from the "*Group R*" column of Table C402.1.3. Commercial buildings or portions of commercial buildings enclosing occupancies other than *Group R* shall use the *R*-values from the "All other" column of Table C402.1.3.

C402.1.4 Assembly *U*-factor, *C*-factor or *F*-factor- based method. *Building thermal envelope* opaque assemblies shall meet the requirements of Sections C402.2 and C402.4 based on the climate zone specified in Chapter 3. *Building thermal envelope* opaque assemblies intended to comply on an assembly *U*-, *C*- or *F*-factor basis shall have a *U*-, *C*- or *F*-factor not greater than that specified in Table C402.1.4. Commercial buildings or portions of commercial buildings enclosing *Group R* occupancies shall use the *U*-, *C*- or *F*-factor from the "*Group R*" column of Table C402.1.4. Commercial buildings or portions of commercial buildings enclosing occupancies other than *Group R* shall use the *U*-, *C*- or *F*-factor from the "All other" column of Table C402.1.4

C402.1.4.1 Roof/ceiling assembly. The maximum roof/ceiling assembly *U*-factor shall not exceed that specified in Table C402.1.4 based on construction materials used in the roof/ceiling assembly.

C402.1.4.1.1 Tapered, above-deck insulation based on thickness. Where used as a component of a maximum roof/ceiling assembly *U*-factor calculation, the sloped roof insulation *R*-value contribution to that calculation shall use the average thickness in inches (mm) along with the material *R*-value-per- inch (per-mm) solely for *U*-factor compliance as prescribed in Section C402.1.4.

C402.1.4.1.2 Suspended ceilings. Insulation installed on suspended ceilings having removable ceiling tiles shall not be considered part of the assembly *U*-factor of the roof/ceiling construction.

C402.1.4.1.3 Joints staggered. Continuous insulation board shall be installed in not less than two layers, and the edge joints between each layer of insulation shall be staggered, except where insulation tapers to the roof deck at a gutter edge, roof drain or scupper.

TABLE C402.1.3

OPAQUE THERMAL ENVELOPE INSULATION COMPONENT MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS, *R*-VALUE METHOD[a]

CLIMATE ZONE	7	
	All other	**Group R**
Roofs		
Insulation entirely above roof deck	~~R-35ci~~ R-40	~~R-35ci~~ R-40
Metal buildings[b]	R-30 + R-11 LS	R-30 + R-11 LS
Attic and other	R-60	R-60
Walls, above grade		
Mass[f]	~~R-15.2ci~~ R-30ci	~~R-15.2ci~~ R-30ci
Metal building	~~R-13 + R-17ci~~ R-19 + R-25ci or R-35ci	~~R-13 + R-19.5ci~~ R-19 + R-25ci or R-35ci
Metal framed	~~R-13 + R-12.5ci~~ R-19 + R-25ci or R-35ci	~~R-13 + R-15.6ci~~ R-19 + R-25ci or R-35ci
Wood framed and other	~~R-13 + R-7.5ci or R-20 + R-3.8ci~~ R-25+R-12ci or R-20 + R-15ci or R-13 + R-20ci	~~R-13 + R-7.5ci or R-20 + R-3.8ci~~ R-32+R-12ci or R-20 + R-20ci or R-13 + R-25ci
Walls, below grade		
Below-grade wall[d]	~~R-15ci~~ R-20ci	~~R-15ci~~ R-20ci
Floors		
Mass[e]	~~R-20.9ci~~ R-25ci	~~R-20.9ci~~ R-25ci
Joist/framing	R-38	R-38
Slab-on-grade floors		
Unheated slabs	R-20 for ~~48~~″24” below	R-20 for 48″ below
Heated slabs[g]	R-20 for 48″ below+ ~~R-5~~ R-10 full slab	R-20 for 48″ below+ ~~R-5~~ R-10 full slab

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 4.88 kg/m^2, 1 pound per cubic foot = 16 kg/m^3. ci = Continuous Insulation, NR = No Requirement, LS = Liner System.

a. Assembly descriptions can be found in ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 Appendix A.

b. Where using *R*-value compliance method, a thermal spacer block shall be provided, otherwise use the *U*-factor compliance method in Table C402.1.4.

c. R-5.7ci is allowed to be substituted with concrete block walls complying with ASTM C90, ungrouted or partially grouted at 32 inches or less on center vertically and 48 inches or less on center horizontally, with ungrouted cores filled with materials having a maximum thermal conductivity of 0.44 Btu-in/h-f^2°F.

d. Where heated slabs are below grade, below-grade walls shall comply with the exterior insulation requirements for heated slabs.

e. “Mass floors” shall be in accordance with Section C402.2.3.

f. “Mass walls” shall be in accordance with Section C402.2.2.

g. The first value is for perimeter insulation and the second value is for full, under-slab insulation. Perimeter insulation is not required to extend below the bottom of the slab.

TABLE C402.1.4

OPAQUE THERMAL ENVELOPE ASSEMBLY MAXIMUM REQUIREMENTS, *U*-FACTOR METHOD[a, b]

CLIMATE ZONE	7	
	All other	Group R
Roofs		
Insulation entirely above roof deck	~~U-0.028~~ U-0.025	~~U-0.028~~ U-0.025
Metal buildings	~~U-0.029~~ U-0.026	~~U-0.029~~ U-0.026
Attic and other	U-0.017	U-0.017
Walls, above grade		
Mass[g]	~~U-0.071~~ 0.031	~~U-0.071~~ 0.031
Metal building	~~U-0.044~~ U 0.031	~~U-0.039~~ U 0.031
Metal framed	~~U-0.049~~ U 0.031	~~U-0.042~~ U 0.031
Wood framed and other[c]	U-0.051 U 0.031	U-0.051 U 0.028
Walls, below grade		
Below-grade wall[c]	~~C-0.063~~ C-0.047	~~C-0.063~~ C-0.047
Floors		
Mass[d]	~~U-0.042~~ U-0.036	~~U-0.042~~ U-0.036
Joist/framing	U-0.027	U-0.027
Slab-on-grade floors		
Unheated slabs	F-0.51	F-0.434
Heated slabs[f]	F-0.602	F-0.602
Opaque doors		
Nonswinging door	U-0.31	U-0.31
Swinging door[h]	U-0.37	U-0.37
Garage door < 14% glazing[i]	U-0.31	U-0.31

For SI: 1 pound per square foot = 4.88 kg/m^2, 1 pound per cubic foot = 16 kg/m^3. ci = Continuous Insulation, NR = No Requirement, LS = Liner System.

a. Where assembly *U*-factors, *C*-factors and *F*-factors are established in ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 Appendix A, such opaque assemblies shall be a compliance alternative where those values meet the criteria of this table, and provided that the construction, excluding the cladding system on walls, complies with the appropriate construction details from ANSI/ASHRAE/ISNEA 90.1 Appendix A.

b. Where *U*-factors have been established by testing in accordance with ASTM C1363, such opaque assemblies shall be a compliance alternative where those values meet the criteria of this table. The *R*-value of continuous insulation shall be permitted to be added to or subtracted from the original tested design.

c. Where heated slabs are below grade, below-grade walls shall comply with the *U*-factor requirements for above-grade mass walls.

d. “Mass floors” shall be in accordance with Section C402.2.3.

e. These *C*-, *F*- and *U*-factors are based on assemblies that are not required to contain insulation.

f. "Mass walls" shall be in accordance with Section C402.2.2.

g. Swinging door *U*-factors shall be determined in accordance with NFRC-10

h. Garage doors having a single row of fenestration shall have an assembly *U*-factor less than or equal to 0.44 in Climate Zones 0 through 6 and less than or equal to 0.36 in Climate Zones 7 and 8, provided that the fenestration area is not less than 14 percent and not more than 25 percent of the total door area.

C402.1.4.2 Thermal resistance of cold-formed steel walls. *U*-factors of walls with cold-formed steel studs shall be permitted to be determined in accordance with Equation 4-1.

$$U = 1/[R_s + (ER)] \qquad \textbf{(Equation 4-1)}$$

where:

R_s = The cumulative *R*-value of the wall components along the path of heat transfer, excluding the *cavity insulation* and steel studs.

ER = The effective R-value of the cavity *insulation* with steel studs as specified in Table C402.1.4.2.

TABLE C402.1.4.2

EFFECTIVE *R*-VALUES FOR STEEL STUD WALL ASSEMBLIES

NOMINAL STUD DEPTH (inches)	SPACING OF FRAMING (inches)	CAVITY *R*-VALUE (insulation)	CORRECTION FACTOR (F_c)	EFFECTIVE *R*-VALUE (ER) (Cavity *R*-Value × F_c)
$3^1/_2$	16	13	0.46	5.98
		15	0.43	6.45
$3^1/_2$	24	13	0.55	7.15
		15	0.52	7.80
6	16	19	0.37	7.03
		21	0.35	7.35
6	24	19	0.45	8.55
		21	0.43	9.03
8	16	25	0.31	7.75
	24	25	0.38	9.50

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

C402.1.5 Component performance alternative. Building envelope values and fenestration areas determined in accordance with Equation 4-2 shall be an alternative to compliance with the *U*-, *F*- and *C*-factors in Tables C402.1.4 and C402.4 and the maximum allowable fenestration areas in Section C402.4.1. *Fenestration* shall meet the applicable SHGC requirements of Section C402.4.3. <u>The thermal bridging requirements of C402.6 shall be met.</u>

$$A + B + C + D + E \leq \text{Zero}$$

(Equation 4-2)

where:

A = Sum of the (UA Dif) values for each distinct assembly type of the *building thermal envelope*, other than slabs on grade and below-grade walls.

UA Dif = UA Proposed – UA Table. UA Proposed = Proposed *U*-value × Area.

UA Table = (*U*-factor from Table C402.1.3, C402.1.4 or C402.4) × Area.

B = Sum of the (FL Dif) values for each distinct slab-on-grade perimeter condition of the *building thermal envelope*.

FL Dif = FL Proposed – FL Table.

FL Proposed = Proposed *F*-value × Perimeter length.

FL Table = (*F*-factor specified in Table C402.1.4) × Perimeter length.

C = Sum of the (CA Dif) values for each distinct *below-grade wall* assembly type of the *building thermal envelope*.

CA Dif = CA Proposed – CA Table. CA Proposed = Proposed *C*-value × Area.

CA Table = (Maximum allowable *C*-factor specified in Table C402.1.4) × Area.

Where the proposed vertical glazing area is less than or equal to the maximum vertical glazing area allowed by Section C402.4.1, the value of D (Excess Vertical Glazing Value) shall be zero. Otherwise:

D = (DA × UV) – (DA × U Wall), but not less than zero.

DA = (Proposed Vertical Glazing Area) – (Vertical Glazing Area allowed by Section C402.4.1).

UA Wall = Sum of the (UA Proposed) values for each opaque assembly of the exterior wall.

U Wall = Area-weighted average *U*-value of all above-grade wall assemblies.

UAV = Sum of the (UA Proposed) values for each vertical glazing assembly.

UV = UAV/total vertical glazing area.

Where the proposed skylight area is less than or equal to the skylight area allowed by Section C402.4.1, the value of E (Excess Skylight Value) shall be zero. Otherwise:

E = (EA × US) – (EA × U Roof), but not less than zero.

EA = (Proposed Skylight Area) – (Allowable Skylight Area as specified in Section C402.4.1).

U Roof = Area-weighted average *U*-value of all roof assemblies.

UAS = Sum of the (UA Proposed) values for each skylight assembly.

US = UAS/total skylight area.

C402.2 Specific building thermal envelope insulation requirements. Insulation in *building thermal envelope* opaque assemblies shall comply with Sections C402.2.1 through C402.2.7 and Table C402.1.3.

C402.2.1 Roof assembly. The minimum thermal resistance (*R*-value) of the insulating material installed either between the roof framing or continuously on the roof assembly shall be as specified in Table C402.1.3, based on construction materials used in the roof assembly.

C402.2.1.1 Tapered, above-deck insulation based on thickness. Where used as a component of a roof/ceiling assembly *R*-value calculation, the sloped roof insulation *R*-value contribution to that calculation shall use the average thickness in inches (mm) along with the material *R*-value-per-inch (per-mm) solely for *R*-value compliance as prescribed in Section 402.1.3.

C402.2.1.2 Minimum thickness, lowest point. The minimum thickness of above-deck roof insulation at its lowest point, gutter edge, roof drain or scupper, shall be not less than 1 inch (25 mm).

C402.2.1.3 Suspended ceilings. Insulation installed on suspended ceilings having removable ceiling tiles shall not be considered part of the minimum thermal resistance (*R*-value) of roof insulation in roof/ceiling construction.

C402.2.1.4 Joints staggered. Continuous insulation board shall be installed in not less than two layers and the edge joints between each layer of insulation shall be staggered, except where insulation tapers to the roof deck at a gutter edge, roof drain or scupper.

C402.2.1.5 Skylight curbs. Skylight curbs shall be insulated to the level of roofs with insulation entirely above the deck or R-5, whichever is less.

Exception: Unit skylight curbs included as a component of a skylight listed and labeled in accordance with NFRC 100 shall not be required to be insulated.

C402.2.2 Above-grade walls. The minimum thermal resistance (*R*-value) of materials installed in the wall cavity between framing members and continuously on the walls shall be as specified in Table C402.1.3, based on framing type and construction materials used in the wall assembly. The *R*-value of integral insulation installed in concrete masonry units shall not be used in determining compliance with Table C402.1.3 except as otherwise noted in the table. In determining compliance with Table C402.1.4, the use of the *U*-factor of concrete masonry units with integral insulation shall be permitted.

"Mass walls" where used as a component in the thermal envelope of a building shall comply with one of the following:

1. Weigh not less than 35 pounds per square foot (171 kg/m^2) of wall surface area.
2. Weigh not less than 25 pounds per square foot (122 kg/m^2) of wall surface area where the mate- rial weight is not more

than 120 pcf (1900 kg/m^3).

3. Have a heat capacity exceeding 7 Btu/ft^2 × °F (144 kJ/m^2 × K).
4. Have a heat capacity exceeding 5 Btu/ft^2 × °F (103 kJ/m^2 × K), where the material weight is not more than 120 pcf (1900 kg/m^3).

C402.2.3 Floors. The thermal properties (component *R*-values or assembly *U*-, *C*- or *F*-factors) of floor assemblies over outdoor air or unconditioned space shall be as specified in Table C402.1.3 or C402.1.4 based on the construction materials used in the floor assembly. Floor framing *cavity insulation* or structural slab insulation shall be installed to maintain permanent contact with the underside of the subfloor decking or structural slabs.

"Mass floors" where used as a component of the thermal envelope of a building shall provide one of the following weights:

1. 35 pounds per square foot (171 kg/m^2) of floor surface area.
2. 25 pounds per square foot (122 kg/m^2) of floor surface area where the material weight is not more than 120 pounds per cubic foot (1923 kg/m^3).

Exceptions:

1. The floor framing *cavity insulation* or structural slab insulation shall be permitted to be in contact with the top side of sheathing or continuous insulation installed on the bottom side of floor assemblies where combined with insulation that meets or exceeds the minimum *R*-value in Table C402.1.3 for "Metal framed" or "Wood framed and other" values for "Walls, above grade" and extends from the bottom to the top of all perimeter floor framing or floor assembly members.
2. Insulation applied to the underside of concrete floor slabs shall be permitted an airspace of not more than 1 inch (25 mm) where it turns up and is in contact with the underside of the floor under walls associated with the *building thermal envelope*.

C402.2.4 Slabs-on-grade. The minimum thermal resistance (*R*-value) of the insulation for unheated or heated slab-on-grade floors designed in accordance with the *R*-value method of Section C402.1.3 shall be as specified in Table C402.1.3.

C402.2.4.1 Insulation installation. Where installed, the perimeter insulation shall be placed on the outside of the foundation or on the inside of the foundation wall. The perimeter insulation shall extend downward from the top of the slab for the minimum distance shown in the table or to the top of the footing, which- ever is less, or downward to not less than the bottom of the slab and then horizontally to the interior or exterior for the total distance shown in the table. Insulation extending away from the building shall be protected by pavement or by not less than 10 inches (254 mm) of soil. Where installed, full slab insulation shall be continuous under the entire area of the slab-on-grade floor, except at structural column locations and service penetrations. Insulation required at the heated slab perimeter shall not be required to extend below the bottom of the heated slab and shall be continuous with the full slab insulation.

Exception: Where the slab-on-grade floor is greater than 24 inches (61 mm) below the finished exterior grade, perimeter insulation is not required.

C402.2.5 Below-grade walls. The *C*-factor for the below-grade exterior walls shall be in accordance with Table C402.1.4. The *R*-value of the insulating material installed continuously within or on the below-grade exterior walls of the building envelope shall be in accordance with Table C402.1.3. The *C*-factor or *R*-value required shall extend to a depth of not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) below the outside finished ground level, or to the level of the lowest floor of the conditioned space enclosed by the below-grade wall, whichever is less.

C402.2.6 Insulation of radiant heating systems. *Radiant heating system* panels, and their associated components that are installed in interior or exterior assemblies, shall be insulated to an *R*-value of not less than R-3.5 on all surfaces not facing the space being heated. *Radiant heating system* panels that are installed in the *building thermal envelope* shall be separated from the exterior of the building or unconditioned or exempt spaces by not less than the *R*-value of insulation installed in the opaque assembly in which they are installed or the assembly shall comply with Section C402.1.4.

Exception: Heated slabs on grade insulated in accordance with Section C402.2.4.

C402.2.7 Airspaces. Where the *R*-value of an airspace is used for compliance in accordance with Section C402.1, the airspace shall be enclosed in an unventilated cavity constructed to minimize airflow into and out of the enclosed airspace. Airflow shall be deemed minimized where the enclosed airspace is located on the interior side of the continuous air barrier and is bounded on all sides by building components.

Exception: The thermal resistance of airspaces located on the exterior side of the continuous air barrier and adjacent to and behind the exterior wall-covering material shall be determined in accordance with ASTM C1363 modified with an airflow entering the bottom and exiting the top of the airspace at an air

~~**C402.3 Roof solar reflectance and thermal emittance. Shall be deleted**~~

C402.4 Fenestration. Fenestration shall comply with Sections C402.4.1 through C402.4.5 and Table C402.4. Daylight responsive

controls shall comply with this section and Section C405.2.4.

TABLE C402.4

BUILDING ENVELOPE FENESTRATION MAXIMUM *U*-FACTOR AND SHGC REQUIREMENTS

CLIMATE ZONE	7		8	
Vertical Fenestration				
U-factor				
	All Other	Group R		
Fixed fenestration	~~0.29~~ 0.27	0.26	0.26	
Operable fenestration	~~0.36~~ 0.33	0.26	0.32	
Entrance doors	~~0.63~~ ~~0.35~~ 0.50	0.28	0.63	
SHGC				
	Fixed	Operable	Fixed	Operable
PF < 0.2	0.40	~~0.36~~ 0.35	0.40	0.36
0.2 ≤ PF < 0.5	0.48	0.43	0.48	0.43
PF ≥ 0.5	0.64	0.58	0.64	0.58
Skylights				
U-factor	0.44		0.41	
SHGC	NR		NR	

NR = No Requirement, PF = Projection Factor.

C402.4.1 Maximum area. The vertical fenestration area, not including opaque doors and opaque spandrel panels, shall be not greater than 30 percent of the gross above-grade wall area. The skylight area shall be not greater than 3 percent of the gross roof area.

C402.4.1.1 Increased vertical fenestration area with daylight responsive controls. In *Climate Zones* 0 through 6, not more than 40 percent of the gross above-grade wall area shall be vertical fenestration, provided that all of the following requirements are met:

1. In buildings not greater than two stories above grade, not less than 50 percent of the net floor area is within a *daylight zone*.
2. In buildings three or more stories above grade, not less than 25 percent of the net floor area is within a *daylight zone*.
3. *Daylight responsive controls* are installed in *daylight zones.*
4. Visible transmittance (VT) of vertical fenestration is not less than 1.1 times solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC).

Exception: Fenestration that is outside the scope of NFRC 200 is not required to comply with Item 4.

C402.4.1.2 Increased skylight area with daylight responsive controls. The skylight area shall be not more than 6 percent of the roof area provided that *daylight responsive controls* are installed in *toplit daylight zones*.

C402.4.2 Minimum skylight fenestration area. Skylights shall be provided in enclosed spaces greater than 2,500 square feet (232 m^2) in floor area, directly under a roof with not less than 75 percent of the ceiling area with a ceiling height greater than 15 feet (4572 mm), and used as an office, lobby, atrium, concourse, corridor, storage space, gymnasium/exercise center, convention center, automotive service area, space where manufacturing occurs, nonrefrigerated warehouse, retail store, distribution/sorting area, transportation depot or work- shop. The total *toplit daylight zone* shall be not less than half the floor area and shall comply with one of the following:

1. A minimum skylight area to *toplit daylight zone* of not less than 3 percent where all skylights have a VT of not less than 0.40, or VT_{annual} of not less than 0.26, as determined in accordance with

   Section C303.1.3.

2. A minimum skylight effective aperture, determined in accordance with Equation 4-4, of:

   2.1. Not less than 1 percent using a skylight's VT rating; or

   2.2. Not less than 0.66 percent using a Tubular Daylight Device's VT_{annual} rating.

Skylight Effective Aperture =

$$\frac{0.85 \times \text{Skylight Area} \times \text{Skylight VT} \times \text{WF}}{\text{Toplit Zone}}$$

(Equation 4-4)

where:

Skylight area = Total fenestration area of skylights.

Skylight VT = Area weighted average visible transmittance of skylights.

WF = Area weighted average well factor, where well factor is 0.9 if light well depth is less than 2 feet (610 mm), or 0.7 if light well depth is 2 feet (610 mm) or greater, or 1.0 for Tubular Daylighting Devices with VT_{annual} ratings.

Light well depth = Measure vertically from the underside of the lowest point of the skylight glazing to the ceiling plane under the skylight.

Exception: Skylights above *daylight zones* of enclosed spaces are not required in:

~~1. Buildings in *Climate Zones* 6 through 8.~~

2. Spaces where the designed *general lighting* power densities are less than 0.5 W/ft^2 (5.4 W/m^2).
3. Areas where it is documented that existing structures or natural objects block direct beam sunlight on not less than half of the roof over the enclosed area for more than 1,500 daytime hours per year between 8 a.m. and 4 p.m.
4. Spaces where the *daylight zone* under roof-top monitors is greater than 50 percent of the enclosed space floor area.
5. Spaces where the total area minus the area of *sidelit daylight zones* is less than 2,500 square feet (232 m^2), and where the lighting is controlled in accordance with Section C405.2.3.
6. Spaces designed as storm shelters complying with ICC 500.

C402.4.2.1 Lighting controls in toplit daylight zones. *Daylight responsive controls* shall be provided in toplit daylight zones.

C402.4.2.2 Haze factor. Skylights in office, storage, automotive service, manufacturing, nonrefrigerated warehouse, retail store and distribution/sorting area spaces shall have a glazing material or diffuser with a haze factor greater than 90 percent when tested in accordance with ASTM D1003.

Exception: Skylights and tubular daylighting devices designed and installed to exclude direct sunlight entering the occupied space by the use of fixed or automated baffles, the geometry of skylight and light well or the use of optical diffuser components.

C402.4.3 Maximum *U*-factor and SHGC. The maximum *U*-factor and solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC) for fenestration shall be as specified in Table C402.4.

The window projection factor shall be determined in accordance with Equation 4-5.

$$PF = A/B \quad \textbf{(Equation 4-5)}$$

where:

PF = Projection factor (decimal).

A = Distance measured horizontally from the farthest continuous extremity of any overhang, eave or permanently attached shading device to the vertical surface of the glazing.

B = Distance measured vertically from the bottom of the glazing to the underside of the overhang, eave or permanently attached shading device.

Where different windows or glass doors have different *PF* values, they shall each be evaluated separately.

~~**C402.4.3.1 Increased skylight SHGC.** In *Climate Zones* 0 through 6, skylights shall be permitted a maximum SHGC of 0.60 where located above *daylight zones* provided with *daylight responsive controls*.~~

C402.4.3.2 Increased skylight *U*-factor. Where skylights are installed above *daylight zones* provided with *daylight responsive controls*, ~~a maximum *U*-factor of 0.9 shall be permitted in *Climate Zones* 0 through 3 and~~ a maximum *U*-factor of 0.75 shall be permitted ~~in *Climate Zones* 4 through 8.~~

C402.4.3.3 Dynamic glazing. Where dynamic glazing is intended to satisfy the SHGC and VT requirements of Table C402.4, the ratio of the higher to lower labeled SHGC shall be greater than or equal to 2.4, and the *dynamic glazing* shall be automatically controlled to modulate the amount of solar gain into the space in multiple steps. Dynamic glazing shall be considered separately from other fenestration, and area-weighted averaging with other fenestration that is not dynamic glazing shall not be permitted.

Exception: Dynamic glazing is not required to comply with this section where both the lower and higher labeled SHGC already comply with the requirements of Table C402.4.

C402.4.3.4 Area-weighted *U*-factor. An area-weighted average shall be permitted to satisfy the *U*-factor requirements for each fenestration product category listed in Table C402.4. Individual fenestration products from different fenestration product categories listed in Table C402.4 shall not be combined in calculating area- weighted average *U*-factor.

C402.4.4 Daylight zones. Daylight zones referenced in Sections C402.4.1.1 through C402.4.3.2 shall comply with Sections C405.2.4.2 and C405.2.4.3, as applicable. Daylight zones shall include *toplit daylight zones* and sidelit daylight zones.

C402.4.5 Doors. Opaque swinging doors shall comply with Table C402.1.4. Opaque nonswinging doors shall comply with Table C402.1.4. Opaque doors shall be considered as part of the gross area of above-grade walls that are part of the *building thermal envelope*. Opaque doors shall comply with Section C402.4.5.1 or C402.4.5.2. Other doors shall comply with the provisions of Section C402.4.3 for vertical fenestration.

C402.4.5.1 Opaque swinging doors. Opaque swinging doors shall comply with Table C402.1.4.

C402.4.5.2 Nonswinging doors. Opaque nonswinging doors that are horizontally hinged sectional doors with a single row of fenestration shall have an assembly *U*-factor less than or equal to 0.440 in Climate Zones 0 through 6 and less than or equal to 0.360 in Climate Zones 7 and 8, provided that the fenestration area is not less than 14 percent and not more than 25 percent of the total door area.

Exception: Other doors shall comply with the provisions of Section C402.4.3 for vertical fenestration.

C402.5 Air leakage—thermal envelope. The *building thermal envelope* shall comply with Sections C402.5.1 through Section C402.5.11.1, ~~or~~ and the building *thermal envelope* shall be tested in accordance with Section C402.5.2 or C402.5.3. Where compliance is based on such testing, the building shall also comply with Sections C402.5.7, C402.5.8 and C402.5.9.

C402.5.1 Air barriers. A continuous air barrier shall be provided throughout the *building thermal envelope*. The continuous air barriers shall be located on the inside or outside of the building thermal envelope, located within the assemblies composing the building thermal envelope, or any combination thereof. The air barrier shall comply with Sections C402.5.1.1, and C402.5.1.2. The air leakage performance of the air barrier shall be verified in accordance with Section C402.5.2.

~~**Exception:** Air barriers are not required in buildings located in *Climate Zone* 2B.~~

C402.5.1.1 Air barrier design and documentation requirements. Design of the continuous air barrier shall be documented in the following manner:

1. Components comprising the continuous air barrier and their position within each building thermal envelope assembly shall be identified.
2. Joints, interconnections, and penetrations of the continuous air barrier components shall be detailed.
3. The continuity of the air barrier building element assemblies that enclose conditioned space or provide a boundary between conditioned space and unconditioned space shall be identified.
4. Documentation of the continuous air barrier shall detail methods of sealing the air barrier such as wrapping, caulking, gasketing, taping or other approved methods at the following locations:
    - 4.1. Joints around fenestration and door frames.
    - 4.2. Joints between walls and floors, between walls at building corners, between walls and roofs including parapets and copings, where above-grade walls meet foundations, and similar intersections.
    - 4.3. Penetrations or attachments through the continuous air barrier in building envelope roofs, walls, and floors.
    - 4.4. Building assemblies used as ducts or plenums.
    - 4.5. Changes in continuous air barrier materials and assemblies.
5. Identify where testing will or will not be performed in accordance with Section C402.5.2 Where testing will not be performed, a plan for field inspections required by C402.5.2.3 shall be provided that includes the following:
    - 5.1. Schedule for periodic inspection,

5.2. Continuous air barrier scope of work,

5.3. List of critical inspection items,

5.4. Inspection documentation requirements, and

5.5. Provisions for corrective actions where needed.

C402.5.1.1 Air barrier construction. The *continuous air barrier* shall be constructed to comply with the following:

1. The air barrier shall be continuous for all assemblies that are the thermal envelope of the building and across the joints and assemblies.
2. Air barrier joints and seams shall be sealed, including sealing transitions in places and changes in materials. The joints and seals shall be securely installed in or on the joint for its entire length so as not to dislodge, loosen or otherwise impair its ability to resist positive and negative pressure from wind, stack effect and mechanical ventilation.
3. Penetrations of the air barrier shall be caulked, gasketed or otherwise sealed in a manner compatible with the construction materials and location. Sealing shall allow for expansion, contraction and mechanical vibration. Joints and seams associated with penetrations shall be sealed in the same manner or taped. Sealing materials shall be securely installed around the penetration so as not to dislodge, loosen or otherwise impair the penetrations' ability to resist positive and negative pressure from wind, stack effect and mechanical ventilation. Sealing of concealed fire sprinklers, where required, shall be in a manner that is recommended by the manufacturer. Caulking or other adhesive sealants shall not be used to fill voids between fire sprinkler cover plates and walls or ceilings.
4. Recessed lighting fixtures shall comply with Section C402.5.10. Where similar objects are installed that penetrate the air barrier, provisions shall be made to maintain the integrity of the air barrier.

C402.5.1.2 Air barrier compliance. A continuous air barrier for the opaque building envelope shall comply with the following:

1. Buildings or portions of buildings, including Group R and I occupancies, shall meet the provisions of Section C402.5.2.

   ~~**Exception:** Buildings in Climate Zones 2B, 3C and 5C.~~
2. Buildings or portions of buildings other than Group R and I occupancies shall meet the provisions of Section C402.5.3.

   ~~**Exceptions:**~~
   ~~1. Buildings in Climate Zones 2B, 3B, 3C and 5C.~~
   ~~2. Buildings larger than 5,000 square feet (464.5 m^2) floor area in Climate Zones 0B, 1, 2A, 4B and 4C.~~
   ~~3. Buildings between 5,000 square feet (464.5 m^2) and 50,000 square feet (4645 m^2) floor area in Climate Zones 0A, 3A and 5B.~~
3. Buildings or portions of buildings that do not complete air barrier testing shall meet the provisions of Section C402.5.1.3 or C402.5.1.4 in addition to Section C402.5.1.5.

C402.5.1.3 Materials. Materials with an air permeability not greater than 0.004 cfm/ft^2 (0.02 L/s × m^2) under a pressure differential of 0.3 inch water gauge (75 Pa) when tested in accordance with ASTM E2178 shall comply with this section. Materials in Items 1 through 16 shall be deemed to comply with this section, provided that joints are sealed and materials are installed as air barriers in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1. Plywood with a thickness of not less than ¾ inch (10 mm). Oriented strand board having a thickness of not less than $^3/_8$ inch (10 mm).
2. Extruded polystyrene insulation board having a thickness of not less than $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm).
3. Foil-back polyisocyanurate insulation board having a thickness of not less than $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm).
4. Closed-cell spray foam having a minimum density of 1.5 pcf (2.4 kg/m^3) and having a thickness of not less than $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm).
5. Open-cell spray foam with a density between
6. 0.4 and 1.5 pcf (0.6 and 2.4 kg/m^3) and having a thickness of not less than 4.5 inches (113 mm).
7. Exterior or interior gypsum board having a thickness of not less than $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm).
8. Cement board having a thickness of not less than $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm).
9. Built-up roofing membrane.
10. Modified bituminous roof membrane.
11. Single-ply roof membrane.

12. A Portland cement/sand parge, or gypsum plaster having a thickness of not less than $^5/_8$ inch (15.9 mm).
13. Cast-in-place and precast concrete.
14. Fully grouted concrete block masonry.
15. Sheet steel or aluminum.
16. Solid or hollow masonry constructed of clay or shale masonry units.

C402.5.1.4 Assemblies. Assemblies of materials and components with an average air leakage not greater than 0.04 cfm/ft^2 (0.2 L/s × m^2) under a pressure differential of 0.3 inch of water gauge (w.g.)(75 Pa) when tested in accordance with ASTM E2357, ASTM E1677, ASTM D8052 or ASTM E283 shall comply with this section. Assemblies listed in Items 1 through 3 shall be deemed to comply, provided that joints are sealed and the requirements of Section C402.5.1.1 are met.

1. Concrete masonry walls coated with either one application of block filler or two applications of a paint or sealer coating.
2. Masonry walls constructed of clay or shale masonry units with a nominal width of 4 inches (102 mm) or more.
3. A Portland cement/sand parge, stucco or plaster not less than $^1/_2$ inch (12.7 mm) in thickness.

C402.5.1.5 Building envelope performance verification. The installation of the continuous air barrier shall be verified by the *code official*, a *registered design professional* or *approved* agency in accordance with the following:

1. A review of the construction documents and other supporting data shall be conducted to assess compliance with the requirements in Section C402.5.1.
2. Inspection of continuous air barrier components and assemblies shall be conducted during construction while the air barrier is still accessible for inspection and repair to verify compliance with the requirements of Sections C402.5.1.3 and C402.5.1.4.
3. A final commissioning report shall be provided for inspections completed by the *registered design professional* or *approved* agency. The commissioning report shall be provided to the building owner or owner's authorized agent and the *code official*. The report shall identify deficiencies found during the review of the construction documents and inspection and details of corrective measures taken.

C402.5.2 Dwelling and sleeping unit enclosure testing. The *building thermal envelope* shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E779, ANSI/RESNET/ICC 380, ASTM E1827 or an equivalent method approved by the *code official*. The measured air leakage shall not exceed 0.30 cfm/ft^2 (1.5 L/s m^2) of the testing unit enclosure area at a pressure differential of 0.2 inch water gauge (50 Pa). Where multiple dwelling units or sleeping units or other occupiable conditioned spaces are contained within one *building thermal envelope*, each unit shall be considered an individual testing unit, and the building air leakage shall be the weighted average of all testing unit results, weighted by each testing unit's enclosure area. Units shall be tested separately with an unguarded blower door test as follows:

1. Where buildings have fewer than eight testing units, each testing unit shall be tested.
2. For buildings with eight or more testing units, the greater of seven units or 20 percent of the testing units in the building shall be tested, including a top floor unit, a ground floor unit and a unit with the largest testing unit enclosure area. For each tested unit that exceeds the maximum air leakage rate, an additional two units shall be tested, including a mixture of testing unit types and locations.

C402.5.3 Building thermal envelope testing. The *building thermal envelope* shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E779, ANSI/RESNET/ICC 380, ASTM E3158 or ASTM E1827 or an equivalent method approved by the code official. The measured air leakage shall not exceed 0.40 ~~0.25~~ cfm/ft^2 (2.0 L/s × m^2) of the *building thermal envelope* area at a pressure differential of 0.3 inch water gauge (75 Pa). Alternatively, portions of the building shall be tested and the measured air leakages shall be area weighted by the surface areas of the building envelope in each portion. The weighted average test results shall not exceed the whole building leakage limit. In the alternative approach, the following portions of the building shall be tested:

1. The entire envelope area of all stories that have any spaces directly under a roof.
2. The entire envelope area of all stories that have a building entrance, exposed floor, or loading dock, or are below grade.
3. Representative above-grade sections of the building totaling at least 25 percent of the wall area enclosing the remaining conditioned space.

Exception: Where the measured air leakage rate exceeds 0.40 cfm/ft^2 (2.0 L/s × m^2) but does not exceed 0.60 cfm/ft^2 (3.0 L/s × m^2), a diagnostic evaluation using smoke tracer or infrared imaging shall be conducted while the building is pressurized along with a visual inspection of the air barrier. Any leaks noted shall be sealed where such sealing can be made without destruction of existing building components. An additional report identifying the corrective actions taken to seal leaks shall be submitted to the code official and the building owner, and shall be deemed to comply with the requirements of this section.

C402.5.4 Air leakage of fenestration. The air leakage of fenestration assemblies shall meet the provisions of Table C402.5.4. Testing shall be in accordance with the applicable reference test standard in Table C402.5.4 by an accredited, independent testing laboratory and *labeled* by the manufacturer.

Exceptions:

1. Field-fabricated fenestration assemblies that are sealed in accordance with Section C402.5.1.
2. Fenestration in buildings that comply with the testing alternative of Section C402.5 are not required to meet the air leakage requirements in Table C402.5.4.

TABLE C402.5.4

MAXIMUM AIR LEAKAGE RATE FOR FENESTRATION ASSEMBLIES

FENESTRATION ASSEMBLY	MAXIMUM RATE (CFM/FT$_2$)	TEST PROCEDURE
Windows	0.20[a]	AAMA/WDMA/CSA101/I.S.2/A440 or NFRC 400
Sliding doors	0.20[a]	
Swinging doors	0.20[a]	
Skylights—with condensation weepage openings	0.30	
Skylights—all other	0.20[a]	
Curtain walls	0.06	NFRC 400 or ASTM E283 at 1.57 psf (75 Pa)
Storefront glazing	0.06	
Commercial glazed swinging entrance doors	1.00	
Power-operated sliding doors and power operated folding doors	1.00	
Revolving doors	1.00	
Garage doors	0.40	ANSI/DASMA 105, NFRC 400, or ASTM E283 at 1.57 psf (75 Pa)
Rolling doors	1.00	
High-speed doors	1.30	

For SI: 1 cubic foot per minute = 0.47 L/s, 1 square foot = 0.093 m$_2$.

a. The maximum rate for windows, sliding and swinging doors, and skylights is permitted to be 0.3 cfm per square foot of fenestration or door area when tested in accordance with AAMA/WDMA/CSA101/I.S.2/A440 at 6.24 psf (300 Pa).

C402.5.5 Rooms containing fuel-burning appliances. ~~In *Climate Zones* 3 through 8,~~ where combustion air is supplied through openings in an exterior wall to a room or space containing a space-conditioning fuel-burning appliance, one of the following shall apply:

1. The room or space containing the appliance shall be located outside of the *building thermal envelope*.
2. The room or space containing the appliance shall be enclosed and isolated from conditioned spaces inside the *building thermal envelope*. Such rooms shall comply with all of the following:
   - 2.1. The walls, floors and ceilings that separate the enclosed room or space from conditioned spaces shall be insulated to be not less than equivalent to the insulation requirement of below-grade walls as specified in Table C402.1.3 or Table C402.1.4.
   - 2.2. The walls, floors and ceilings that separate the enclosed room or space from conditioned spaces shall be sealed in accordance with Section C402.5.1.1.
   - 2.3. The doors into the enclosed room or space shall be fully gasketed.
   - 2.4. Water lines and ducts in the enclosed room or space shall be insulated in accordance with Section C403.
   - 2.5. Where an air duct supplying combustion air to the enclosed room or space passes through *conditioned space*, the duct shall be insulated to an *R*-value of not less than R-8.

C402.5.6 Doors and access openings to shafts, chutes, stairways and elevator lobbies. Doors and *access* openings from conditioned space to shafts, chutes stairways and elevator lobbies not within the scope of the fenestration assemblies covered by Section C402.5.4 shall be gasketed, weather-stripped or sealed.

Exceptions:

1. Door openings required to comply with Section 716 of the *International Building Code*.
2. Doors and door openings required to comply with UL 1784 by the *International Building Code*.

C402.5.7 Air intakes, exhaust openings, stairways and shafts. Stairway enclosures, elevator shaft vents and other outdoor air intakes and exhaust openings integral to the building envelope shall be provided with dampers in accordance with Section C403.7.7.

C402.5.8 Loading dock weather seals. Cargo door openings and loading door openings shall be equipped with weather seals that restrict infiltration and provide direct contact along the top and sides of vehicles that are parked in the doorway.

C402.5.9 Vestibules. Building entrances shall be protected with an enclosed vestibule, with all doors opening into and out of the vestibule equipped with self-closing devices. Vestibules shall be designed so that in passing through the vestibule it is not necessary for the interior and exterior doors to open at the same time. The installation of one or more revolving doors in the *building entrance* shall not eliminate the requirement that a vestibule be provided on any doors adjacent to revolving doors.

Exceptions: Vestibules are not required for the following:

1. Buildings in *Climate Zones* 0 through 2.
2. Doors not intended to be used by the public, such as doors to mechanical or electrical equipment rooms, or intended solely for employee use.
3. Doors opening directly from a *sleeping unit* or dwelling unit.
4. Doors that open directly from a space less than ~~3,000~~ 1,500 square feet (298 m^2) in area.
5. Revolving doors.
6. Doors used primarily to facilitate vehicular movement or material handling and adjacent personnel doors.
7. Doors that have an air curtain with a velocity of not less than 6.56 feet per second (2 m/s) at the floor that have been tested in accordance with ANSI/AMCA 220 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. ~~Manual or~~ Automatic controls shall be provided that will operate the air curtain with the opening and closing of the door when the outdoor air temperature is greater than 45°F and less than 80°F. Air curtains and their controls shall comply with Section C408.2.3.

C402.5.10 Recessed lighting. Recessed luminaires installed in the *building thermal envelope* shall be all of the following:

1. IC-rated.
2. Labeled as having an air leakage rate of not more

   2.0 cfm (0.944 L/s) when tested in accordance with ASTM E283 at a 1.57 psf (75 Pa) pressure differential.
3. Sealed with a gasket or caulk between the housing and interior wall or ceiling covering.

C402.5.11 Operable openings interlocking. Where occupancies utilize operable openings to the outdoors that are larger than 40 square feet (3.7 m^2) in area, such openings shall be interlocked with the heating and cooling system so as to raise the cooling setpoint to 90°F (32°C) and lower the heating setpoint to 55°F (13°C) whenever the operable opening is open. The change in heating and cooling setpoints shall occur within 10 minutes of opening the operable opening.

Exceptions:

1. Separately zoned areas associated with the preparation of food that contain appliances that contribute to the HVAC loads of a restaurant or similar type of occupancy.
2. Warehouses that utilize overhead doors for the function of the occupancy, where approved by the code official.
3. The first entrance doors where located in the exterior wall and are part of a vestibule system.

C402.5.11.1 Operable controls. Controls shall comply with Section C403.14.

C402.6 Thermal bridges in above-grade walls. Thermal bridges in above-grade walls shall comply with this section or an approved design.

Exceptions:

1. Any thermal bridge with a material thermal conductivity not greater than 3.0 Btu/h-ft-°F.
2. Blocking, coping, flashing, and other similar materials for attachment of roof coverings.
3. Thermal bridges accounted for in the U-factor or C-factor for a building thermal envelope.

C402.6.1 Balconies and floor decks. Balconies and concrete floor decks shall not penetrate the *building thermal envelope*.

Such assemblies shall be separately supported or shall be supported by approved structural attachments or elements that minimize thermal bridging through the building thermal envelope.

Exceptions: Balconies and concrete floor decks shall be permitted to penetrate the building thermal envelope where:

1. An area-weighted U-factor is used for above-grade wall compliance which includes a U-factor of 0.8 Btu/h-°F-ft2 for the area of the above-grade wall penetrated by the concrete floor deck, or
2. An approved thermal break device of not less than R-10 is installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

C402.6.2 Cladding supports. Linear elements supporting opaque cladding shall be off-set from the structure with attachments that allow the continuous insulation, where present, to pass behind the cladding support element.

Exceptions:

1. An approved design where the above-grade wall U-factor used for compliance accounts for the cladding support element thermal bridge.
2. Anchoring for curtain wall and window wall systems.

C402.6.3 Structural beams and columns. Structural steel and concrete beams and columns that project through the building thermal envelope shall be covered with not less than R-5 insulation for not less than 2-feet (610 mm) beyond the interior or exterior surface of an insulation component within the building thermal envelope.

Exceptions:

1. Where an approved thermal break device is installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
2. An approved design where the above-grade wall U-factor used to demonstrate compliance accounts for the beam or column thermal bridge.

SECTION C403
BUILDING MECHANICAL SYSTEMS

C403.1 General. Mechanical systems and equipment serving the building heating, cooling, ventilating or refrigerating needs shall comply with this section.

Exception: Data center systems are exempt from the requirements of Sections C403.4 and C403.5.

C403.1.1 Calculation of heating and cooling loads. Design loads associated with heating, ventilating and air conditioning of the building shall be determined in accordance with ANSI/ASHRAE/ACCA Standard 183 or by an *approved* equivalent computational procedure using the design parameters specified in Chapter 3. Heating and cooling loads shall be adjusted to account for load reductions that are achieved where energy recovery systems are utilized in the HVAC system in accordance with the ASHRAE HVAC Systems and Equipment Handbook by an approved equivalent computational procedure.

C403.1.2 Data centers. Data center systems shall comply with Sections 6 and 8 of ASHRAE 90.4 with the following changes:

~~1.~~ The design mechanical load component (MLC) value shall be 0.20 ~~Replace design mechanical load component (MLC) values specified in Table 6.2.1.1 of the ASHRAE 90.4 with the values in Table C403.1.2(1) as applicable in each climate zone.~~

~~2.~~ The annualized MLC value shall be 0.16 ~~Replace annualized MLC values specified in Table 6.2.1.2 of the ASHRAE 90.4 with the values in Table C403.1.2(2) as applicable in each climate zone.~~

~~**TABLE C403.1.2(1)**~~
~~**MAXIMUM DESIGN MECHANICAL LOAD COMPONENT (DESIGN MLC)**~~

~~CLIMATE ZONE~~	~~DESIGN MLC AT 100% AND AT 50% ITE LOAD~~
~~0A~~	~~0.24~~
~~0B~~	~~0.26~~
~~1A~~	~~0.23~~
~~2A~~	~~0.24~~
~~3A~~	~~0.23~~
~~4A~~	~~0.23~~
~~5A~~	~~0.22~~
~~6A~~	~~0.22~~
~~1B~~	~~0.28~~

~~2B~~	~~0.27~~
~~3B~~	~~0.26~~
~~4B~~	~~0.23~~
~~5B~~	~~0.23~~
~~6B~~	~~0.21~~
~~3C~~	~~0.19~~
~~4C~~	~~0.21~~
~~5C~~	~~0.19~~
~~7~~	~~0.20~~
~~8~~	~~0.19~~

~~TABLE C403.1.2(2)~~
~~MAXIMUM ANNUALIZED MECHANICAL LOAD COMPONENT (ANNUALIZED MLC)~~

~~CLIMATE ZONE~~	~~HVAC MAXIMUM ANNUALIZED MLC AT 100% AND AT 50% ITE LOAD~~
~~0A~~	~~0.19~~
~~0B~~	~~0.20~~
~~1A~~	~~0.18~~
~~2A~~	~~0.19~~
~~3A~~	~~0.18~~
~~4A~~	~~0.17~~
~~5A~~	~~0.17~~
~~6A~~	~~0.17~~
~~1B~~	~~0.16~~
~~2B~~	~~0.18~~
~~3B~~	~~0.18~~
~~4B~~	~~0.18~~
~~5B~~	~~0.16~~
~~6B~~	~~0.17~~
~~3C~~	~~0.16~~
~~4C~~	~~0.16~~
~~5C~~	~~0.16~~
~~7~~	~~0.16~~
~~8~~	~~0.16~~

C403.2 System design. Mechanical systems shall be designed to comply with Sections C403.2.1 through C403.2.3. Where elements of a building's mechanical systems are addressed in Sections C403.3 through C403.14, such elements shall comply with the applicable provisions of those sections.

C403.2.1 Zone isolation required. HVAC systems serving *zones* that are over 25,000 square feet (2323 m^2) in floor area or that span more than one floor and are designed to operate or be occupied nonsimultaneously shall be divided into isolation areas. Each isolation area shall be equipped with *isolation devices* and controls configured to automatically shut off the supply of conditioned air and outdoor air to and exhaust air from the isolation area. Each isolation area shall be controlled independently by a device meeting the requirements of Section C403.4.2.2. Central systems and plants shall be provided with controls and devices that will allow system and equipment operation for any length of time while serving only the smallest isolation area served by the system or plant.

Exceptions:

1. Exhaust air and outdoor air connections to isolation areas where the fan system to which they connect is not greater than 5,000 cfm (2360 L/s).

2. Exhaust airflow from a single isolation area of less than 10 percent of the design airflow of the exhaust system to which it connects.
3. Isolation areas intended to operate continuously or intended to be inoperative only when all other isolation areas in a *zone* are inoperative.

C403.2.2 Ventilation. Ventilation, either natural or mechanical, shall be provided in accordance with Chapter 4 of the *International Mechanical Code*. Where mechanical ventilation is provided, the system shall provide the capability to reduce the outdoor air supply to the minimum required by Chapter 4 of the *International Mechanical Code*.

C403.2.3 Fault detection and diagnostics. New buildings with an HVAC system serving a gross conditioned floor area of 100,000 square feet (9290 m^2) or larger shall include a fault detection and diagnostics (FDD) system to monitor the HVAC system's performance and automatically identify faults. The FDD system shall:

1. Include permanently installed sensors and devices to monitor the HVAC system's performance.
2. Sample the HVAC system's performance at least once every 15 minutes.
3. Automatically identify and report HVAC system faults.
4. Automatically notify authorized personnel of identified HVAC system faults.
5. Automatically provide prioritized recommendations for repair of identified faults based on analysis of data collected from the sampling of HVAC system performance.
6. Be capable of transmitting the prioritized fault repair recommendations to remotely located authorized personnel.

Exception: R-1 and R-2 occupancies.

C403.3 Heating and cooling equipment efficiencies. Heating and cooling equipment installed in mechanical systems shall be sized in accordance with Section C403.3.1 and shall be not less efficient in the use of energy than as specified in Section C403.3.2.

C403.3.1 Equipment sizing. The output capacity of heating and cooling equipment shall be not greater than that of the smallest available equipment size that exceeds the loads calculated in accordance with Section C403.1.1. A single piece of equipment providing both heating and cooling shall satisfy this provision for one function with the capacity for the other function as small as possible, within available equipment options.

Exceptions:

1. Required standby equipment and systems provided with controls and devices that allow such systems or equipment to operate automatically only when the primary equipment is not operating.
2. Multiple units of the same equipment type with combined capacities exceeding the design load and provided with controls that are configured to sequence the operation of each unit based on load.

C403.3.2 HVAC equipment performance requirements. Equipment shall meet the minimum efficiency requirements of Tables C403.3.2(1) through C403.3.2(16) when tested and rated in accordance with the applicable test procedure. Plate-type liquid-to-liquid heat exchangers shall meet the minimum requirements of AHRI 400. The efficiency shall be verified through certification under an approved certification program or, where a certification program does not exist, the equipment efficiency ratings shall be supported by data furnished by the manufacturer. Where multiple rating conditions or performance requirements are provided, the equipment shall satisfy all stated requirements. Where components, such as indoor or outdoor coils, from different manufacturers are used, calculations and supporting data shall be furnished by the designer that demonstrates that the combined efficiency of the specified components meets the requirements herein.

C403.3.2.1 Water-cooled centrifugal chilling packages. Equipment not designed for operation at AHRI Standard 550/590 test conditions of 44.00°F leaving and 54.00°F entering chilled-fluid temperatures, and with 85.00°F entering and 94.30°F leaving condenser fluid temperatures, shall have maximum full-load kW/ton (FL) and part-load rating requirements adjusted using the following equations:

$$FL_{adj} = FL/K_{adj} \quad \textbf{(Equation 4-6)}$$

$$PLV_{adj} = IPLV.IP/K_{adj} \quad \textbf{(Equation 4-7)}$$

where:

K_{adj} = $A \times B$

FL = Full-load kW/ton value from Table C403.3.2(3).

FL_{adj} = Maximum full-load kW/ton rating, adjusted for nonstandard conditions.

$IPLV.IP$ = *IPLV.IP* value from Table C403.3.2(3).

PLV_{adj} = Maximum *NPLV* rating, adjusted for nonstandard conditions.

A = $0.00000014592 \times (LIFT)^4 -$

$$0.0000346496 \times (LIFT)^3 + 0.00314196 \times (LIFT)^2 - 0.147199 \times (LIFT) + 3.93073$$

$B = 0.0015 \times L_{vg}E_{vap} + 0.934$

$LIFT = L_{vg}Cond - L_{vg}E_{vap}$

$L_{vg}Cond$ = Full-load condenser leaving fluid temperature (°F).

$L_{vg}E_{vap}$ = Full-load evaporator leaving temperature (°F).

The FL_{adj} and PLV_{adj} values are applicable only for centrifugal chillers meeting all of the following full load design ranges:

- $36.00°F \leq L_{vg}E_{vap} \leq 60.00°F$
- $L_{vg}Cond \leq 115.00°F$
- $20.00°F \leq LIFT \leq 80.00°F$

Manufacturers shall calculate the FL_{adj} and PLV_{adj} before determining whether to label the chiller. Centrifugal chillers designed to operate outside of these ranges are not covered by this code.

C403.3.2.2 Positive displacement (air and water cooled) chilling packages. Equipment with a leaving fluid temperature higher than 32°F (0°C) and water-cooled positive displacement chilling packages with a condenser leaving fluid temperature below 115°F (46°C) shall meet the requirements of the tables in Section C403.3.2 when tested or certified with water at standard rating conditions, in accordance with the referenced test procedure.

C403.3.3 Hot gas bypass limitation. Cooling systems shall not use hot gas bypass or other evaporator pressure control systems unless the system is designed with multiple steps of unloading or continuous capacity modulation. The capacity of the hot gas bypass shall be limited as indicated in Table C403.3.3, as limited by Section C403.5.1.

TABLE C403.3.2(1)
ELECTRICALLY OPERATED UNITARY AIR CONDITIONERS AND CONDENSING UNITS—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[c,d]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY	HEADING SECTION TYPE	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Air conditioners, air cooled	< 65,000 Btu/h[b]	All	Split system, three phase and applications outside US single phase[b]	13.0 SEER before 1/1/2023 13.4 SEER2 after 1/1/2023	AHRI 210/240—2017 before 1/1/2023 AHRI 210/240—2023 after 1/1/2023
			Single-package, three phase and applications outside US single phase[b]	14.0 SEER before 1/1/2023 13.4 SEER2 after 1/1/2023	
Space constrained, air cooled	≤ 30,000 Btu/h[b]	All	Split system, three phase and applications outside US single phase[b]	12.0 SEER before 1/1/2023 11.7 SEER2 after 1/1/2023	AHRI 210/240—2017 before 1/1/2023 AHRI 210/240—2023 after 1/1/2023
			Single package, three phase and applications outside US single phase[b]	12.0 SEER before 1/1/2023 11.7 SEER2 after 1/1/2023	
Small duct, high velocity, air cooled	< 65,000 Btu/h[b]	All	Split system, three phase and applications outside US single phase[b]	12.0 SEER before 1/1/2023 12.1 SEER2 after 1/1/2023	AHRI 210/240—2017 before 1/1/2023 AHRI 210/240—2023 after 1/1/2023

Air conditioners, air cooled	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)	Split system and single package	11.2 EER 12.9 IEER before 1/1/2023 14.8 IEER after 1/1/2023	AHRI 340/360
		All other		11.0 EER 12.7 IEER before 1/1/2023 14.6 IEER after 1/1/2023	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)		11.0 EER 12.4 IEER before 1/1/2023 14.2 IEER after 1/1/2023	
		All other		10.8 EER 12.2 IEER before 1/1/2023 14.0 IEER after 1/1/2023	

(continued)

TABLE C403.3.2(1)—continued
ELECTRICALLY OPERATED UNITARY AIR CONDITIONERS AND CONDENSING UNITS—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[c, d]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY	HEADING SECTION TYPE	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Air conditioners, air cooled *(continued)*	≥ 240,000 Btu/h and < 760,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)	Split system and single package	10.0 EER 11.6 IEER before 1/1/2023 13.2 IEER after 1/1/2023	AHRI 340/360
		All other		9.8 EER 11.4 IEER before 1/1/2023 13.0 IEER after 1/1/2023	
	≥ 760,000	Electric resistance (or none)		9.7 EER 11.2IEER before 1/1/2023 12.5 IEER after 1/1/2023	

	Btu/h	All other		9.5 EER 11.0 IEER before 1/1/2023 12.3 IEER after 1/1/2023	
Air conditioners, water cooled	< 65,000 Btu/h	All	Split system and single package	12.1 EER 12.3 IEER	AHRI 210/240
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)		12.1 EER 13.9 IEER	AHRI 340/360
		All other		11.9 EER 13.7 IEER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)		12.5 EER 13.9 IEER	
		All other		12.3 EER 13.7 IEER	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h and < 760,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)		12.4 EER 13.6 IEER	
		All other		12.2 EER 13.4 IEER	
	≥ 760,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)		12.2 EER 13.5 IEER	
		All other		12.0 EER 13.3 IEER	

(continued)

TABLE C403.3.2(1)—continued
ELECTRICALLY OPERATED UNITARY AIR CONDITIONERS AND CONDENSING UNITS—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[c, d]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY	HEADING SECTION TYPE	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Air conditioners, evaporatively cooled	< 65,000 Btu/h[b]	All	Split system and single package	12.1 EER 12.3 IEER	AHRI 210/240
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)		12.1 EER 12.3 IEER	AHRI 340/360
		All other		11.9 EER 12.1 IEER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)		12.0 EER 12.2 IEER	
		All other		11.8 EER 12.0 IEER	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h and < 760,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)		11.9 EER 12.1 IEER	
		All other		11.7 EER 11.9 IEER	

	≥ 760,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)		11.7 EER 11.9 IEER	
		All other		11.5 EER 11.7 IEER	
Condensing units, air cooled	≥ 135,000 Btu/h	—	—	10.5 EER 11.8 IEER	AHRI 365
Condensing units, water cooled	≥ 135,000 Btu/h	—	—	13.5 EER 14.0 IEER	AHRI 365
Condensing units, evaporatively cooled	≥ 135,000 Btu/h	—	—	13.5 EER 14.0 IEER	AHRI 365

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced standards, which include test procedures, including the reference year version of the test procedure.

b. Single-phase, US air-cooled air conditioners less than 65,000 Btu/h are regulated as consumer products by the US Department of Energy Code of Federal Regulations DOE 10 CFR 430. SEER and SEER2 values for single-phase products are set by the US Department of Energy.

c. DOE 10 CFR 430 Subpart B Appendix M1 includes the test procedure updates effective 1/1/2023 that will be incorporated in AHRI210/240—2023.

d. This table is a replica of ASHRAE 90.1 Table 6.8.1-1 Electrically Operated Unitary Air Conditioners and Condensing Units—Minimum Efficiency Requirements.

TABLE C403.3.2(2)
ELECTRICALLY OPERATED AIR-COOLED UNITARY HEAT PUMPS—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[c, d]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY	HEADING SECTION TYPE	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Air cooled (cooling mode)	< 66,000 Btu/h	All	Split system, three phase and applications outside US single phase[b]	14.0 SEER before 1/1/2023 14.3 SEER2 after 1/1/2023	AHRI 210/240—2017 before 1/1/2023 AHRI 210/240—2023 after 1/1/2023
			Single package, three phase and applications outside US single phase[b]	14.0 SEER before 1/1/2023 13.4 SEER2 after 1/1/2023	
Space constrained, air cooled (cooling mode)	≤ 30,000 Btu/h	All	Split system, three phase and applications outside US single phase[b]	12.0 SEER before 1/1/2023 11.7 SEER2 after 1/1/2023	AHRI 210/240—2017 before 1/1/2023 AHRI 210/240—2023 after 1/1/2023
			Single package, three phase and applications outside US single phase[b]	12.0 SEER before 1/1/2023 11.7 SEER2 after 1/1/2023	

Single duct, high velocity, air cooled (cooling mode)	< 65,000	All	Split system, three phase and applications outside US single phase[b]	12.0 SEER before 1/1/2023 12.0 SEER2 after 1/1/2023	AHRI 210/240—2017 before 1/1/2023 AHRI 210/240—2023 after 1/1/2023
Air cooled (cooling mode)	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)	Split system and single package	11.0 EER 12.2 IEER before 1/1/2023 14.1 IEER after 1/1/2023	AHRI 340/360
		All other		10.8 EER 12.0 IEER before 1/1/2023 13.9 IEER after 1/1/2023	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)		10.6 EER 11.6 IEER before 1/1/2023 13.5 IEER after 1/1/2023	
		All other		10.4 EER 11.4 IEER before 1/1/2023 13.3 IEER after 1/1/2023	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)		9.5 EER 10.6 IEER before 1/1/2023 12.5 IEER after 1/1/2023	
		All other		9.3 EER 10.4 IEER before 1/1/2023 12.3 IEER after 1/1/2023	
Air cooled (heating mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h	All	Split system, three phase and applications outside US single phase[b]	8.2 HSPF before 1/1/2023 7.5 HSPF2 after 1/1/2023	AHRI 210/240—2017 before 1/1/2023 AHRI 210/240—2023 after 1/1/2023
			Single package, three phase and applications outside US single phase[b]	8.0 HSPF before 1/1/2023 6.7 HSPF2 after 1/1/2023	

(continued)

TABLE C403.3.2(2)—continued
ELECTRICALLY OPERATED AIR-COOLED UNITARY HEAT PUMPS—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[c, d]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY	HEADING SECTION TYPE	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Space constrained, air cooled (heating mode)	≤ 30,000 Btu/h	All	Split system, three phase and applications outside US single phase[b]	7.4 HSPF before 1/1/2023 6.3 HSPF2 after 1/1/2023	AHRI 210/240—2017 before 1/1/2023 AHRI 210/240—2023 after 1/1/2023
			Single package, three phase and applications outside US single phase[b]	7.4 HSPF before 1/1/2023 6.3 HSPF2 after 1/1/2023	
Small duct, high velocity, air cooled (heating mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h	All	Split system, three phase and applications outside US single phase[b]	7.2 HSPF before 1/1/2023 6.1 HSPF2 after 1/1/2023	AHRI 210/240—2017 before 1/1/2023 AHRI 210/240—2023 after 1/1/2023
Air cooled (heating mode)	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	All	47°F db/43°F wb outdoor air	3.30 COP_H before 1/1/2023 3.40 COP_H after 1/1/2023	AHRI 340/360
			17°F db/15°F wb outdoor air	2.25 COP_H	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)		47°F db/43°F wb outdoor air	3.20 COP_H before 1/1/2023 3.30 SOP_H after 1/1/2023	
			17°F db/15°F wb outdoor air	2.05 COP_H	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)		47°F db/43°F wb outdoor air	3.20 COP_H	
			17°F db/15°F wb outdoor air	2.05 COP_H	

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8, wb = wet bulb, db = dry bulb.

a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced standards, which include test procedures, including the reference year version of the test procedure.

b. Single-phase US air-cooled heat pumps less than 65,000 Btu/h are regulated as consumer products by the US Department of Energy Code of Federal Regulations DOE 10 CFR 430. SEER, SEER2 and HSPF values for single-phase products are set by the US Department of Energy

c. DOE 10 CFR 430 Subpart B Appendix M1 includes the test procedure updates effective 1/1/2023 that will be incorporated in AHRI 210/240—2023.

d. This table is a replica of ASHRAE 90.1 Table 6.8.1-2 Electrically Operated Air-Cooled Unitary Heat Pumps—Minimum Efficiency Requirements.

TABLE C403.3.2(3)
WATER-CHILLING PACKAGES—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[a, b, e, f]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY	UNITS	PATH A	PATH B	TEST PROCEDURE[c]
Air cooled chillers	< 150 tons	EER (Btu/Wh)	≥ 10.100 FL	≥ 9.700 FL	AHRI 550/590
			≥ 13.700 IPLV.IP	≥ 15.800 IPLV.IP	
	≥ 150 tons		≥ 10.100 FL	≥ 9.700FL	
			≥ 14.000	≥ 16.100 IPLV.IP	

			IPLV.IP		
Air cooled without condenser, electrically operated	All capacities	EER (Btu/Wh)	Air-cooled chillers without condenser must be rated with matching condensers and comply with air-cooled chiller efficiency requirements		AHRI 550/590
Water cooled, electrically operated positive displacement	< 75 tons	kW/ton	≤ 0.750 FL	≤ 0.780 FL	AHRI 550/590
			≤ 0.600 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.500 IPLV.IP	
	≥ 75 tons and < 150 tons		≤ 0.720 FL	≤ 0.750 FL	
			≤ 0.560 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.490 IPLV.IP	
	≥ 150 tons and < 300 tons		≤ 0.660 FL	≤ 0.680 FL	
			≤ 0.540 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.440 IPLV.IP	
	≥ 300 tons and < 600 tons		≤ 0.610 FL	≤ 0.625 FL	
			≤ 0.520 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.410 IPLV.IP	
	≥ 600 tons		≤ 0.560 FL	≤ 0.585 FL	
			≤ 0.500 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.380 IPLV.IP	
Water cooled, electrically operated centrifugal	< 150 tons	kW/ton	≤ 0.610 FL	≤ 0.695 FL	AHRI 550/590
			≤ 0.550 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.440 IPLV.IP	
			≤ 0.610 FL	≤ 0.635 FL	
			≤ 0.550 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.400 IPLV.IP	
	≥ 300 tons and < 400 tons		≤ 0.560 FL	≤ 0.595 FL	
			≤ 0.520 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.390 IPLV.IP	
	≥ 400 tons and < 600 tons		≤ 0.560 FL	≤ 0.585 FL	
			≤ 0.500 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.380 IPLV.IP	
	≥ 600 tons		≤ 0.560 FL	≤ 0.585 FL	
			≤ 0.500 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.380 IPLV.IP	
Air cooled absorption, single effect	All capacities	COP (W/W)	≥ 0.600 FL	NA[d]	AHRI 560
Water cooled absorption, single effect	All capacities	COP (W/W)	≥ 0.700 FL	NA[d]	AHRI 560
Absorption double effect, indirect fired	All capacities	COP (W/W)	≥ 1.000 FL	NA[d]	AHRI 560
			≥ 0.150 IPLV.IP		
Absorption double effect, direct fired	All capacities	COP (W/W)	≥ 1.000 FL	NA[d]	AHRI 560
			≥ 1.000 IPLV		

a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced standards, which include test procedures, including the reference year version of the test procedure.

b. The requirements for centrifugal chillers shall be adjusted for nonstandard rating conditions per Section C403.3.2.1 and are applicable only for the range of conditions listed there. The requirements for air-cooled, water-cooled positive displacement and absorption chillers are at standard rating conditions defined in the reference test procedure.

c. Both the full-load and IPLV.IP requirements must be met or exceeded to comply with this standard. When there is a Path B, compliance can be with either Path A or Path B for any application.

d. NA means the requirements are not applicable for Path B, and only Path A can be used for compliance.

e. FL is the full-load performance requirements, and IPLV.IP is for the part-load performance requirements.

f. This table is a replica of ASHRAE 90.1 Table 6.8.1-3 Water-Chilling Packages—Minimum Efficiency Requirements.

TABLE C403.3.2(4)
ELECTRICALLY OPERATED PACKAGED TERMINAL AIR CONDITIONERS, PACKAGED TERMINAL HEAT PUMPS,

SINGLE-PACKAGE VERTICAL AIR CONDITIONERS, SINGLE-PACKAGE VERTICAL HEAT PUMPS, ROOM AIR CONDITIONERS AND ROOM AIR-CONDITIONER HEAT PUMPS—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[e]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY (INPUT)	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY[d]	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
PTAC (cooling mode) standard size	< 7,000 Btu/h	95°F db/75°F wb outdoor air[c]	11.9 EER	AHRI 310/380
	≥ 7,000 Btu/h and ≤ 15,000 Btu/h		14.0 – (0.300 × Cap/1,000) EER[d]	
	> 15,000 Btu/h		9.5 EER	
PTAC (cooling mode) nonstandard size[a]	< 7,000 Btu/h	95°F db/75°F wb outdoor air[c]	9.4 EER	AHRI 310/380
	≥ 7,000 Btu/h and ≤ 15,000 Btu/h		10.9 – (0.213 × Cap/1,000) EER[d]	
	> 15,000 Btu/h		7.7 EER	
PTHP (cooling mode) standard size	< 7,000 Btu/h	95°F db/75°F wb outdoor air[c]	11.9 EER	AHRI 310/380
	≥ 7,000 Btu/h and ≤ 15,000 Btu/h		14.0 – (0.300 × Cap/1,000) EER[d]	
	> 15,000 Btu/h		9.5 EER	
PTHP (cooling mode) nonstandard size[b]	< 7,000 Btu/h	95°F db/75°F wb outdoor air[c]	9.3 EER	AHRI 310/380
	≥ 7,000 Btu/h and ≤ 15,000 Btu/h		10.8 – (0.213 × Cap/1,000) EER[d]	
	> 15,000 Btu/h		7.6 EER	
PTHP (heating mode) standard size	< 7,000 Btu/h	47°F db/43°F wb outdoor air	3.3 COP_H	AHRI 310/380
	≥ 7,000 Btu/h and ≤ 15,000 Btu/h		3.7 – (0.052 × Cap/1,000) COP_H[d]	
	> 15,000 Btu/h		2.90 COP_H	
PTHP (heating mode) nonstandard size[b]	< 7,000 Btu/h	47°F db/43°F wb outdoor air	2.7 COP_H	AHRI 310/380
	≥ 7,000 Btu/h and ≤ 15,000 Btu/h		2.9 – (0.026 × Cap/1000) COP_H[d]	
	> 15,000 Btu/h		2.5 COP_H	
SPVAC (cooling mode) single and three phase	< 65,000 Btu/h	95°F db/75°F wb outdoor air[c]	11.0 EER	AHRI 390
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and ≤ 135,000 Btu/h		10.0 EER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and ≤ 240,000 Btu/h		10.0 EER	
SPVHP (cooling mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h	95°F db/75°F wb outdoor air[c]	11.0 EER	AHRI 390
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and ≤ 135,000 Btu/h		10.0 EER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and ≤ 240,000 Btu/h		10.1 EER	
SPVHP (heating mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h	47°F db/43°F wb outdoor air	3.3 COP_H	AHRI 390
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and ≤ 135,000 Btu/h		3.0 COP_H	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and ≤ 240,000 Btu/h		3.0 COP_H	

(continued)

TABLE C403.3.2(4)—continued
ELECTRICALLY OPERATED PACKAGED TERMINAL AIR CONDITIONERS, PACKAGED TERMINAL HEAT PUMPS, SINGLE-PACKAGE VERTICAL AIR CONDITIONERS, SINGLE-PACKAGE VERTICAL HEAT PUMPS, ROOM AIR CONDITIONERS
AND ROOM AIR-CONDITIONER HEAT PUMPS—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[e]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY (INPUT)	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY[d]	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Room air conditioners without reverse cycle with louvered sides for applications outside US	< 6,000 Btu/h	—	11.0 CEER	ANSI/AHAM RAC-1
	≥ 6,000 Btu/h and < 8,000 Btu/h	—	11.0 CEER	
	≥ 8,000 Btu/h and < 14,000 Btu/h	—	10.9 CEER	
	≥ 14,000 Btu/h and < 20,000 Btu/h	—	10.7 CEER	
	≥ 20,000 Btu/h and < 28,000 Btu/h	—	9.4 CEER	
	≥ 28,000 Btu/h	—	9.0 CEER	
Room air conditioners without louvered sides	< 6,000 Btu/h	—	10.0 CEER	ANSI/AHAM RAC-1
	≥ 6,000 Btu/h and < 8,000 Btu/h	—	10.0 CEER	
	≥ 8,000 Btu/h and < 11,000 Btu/h	—	9.6 CEER	
	≥ 11,000 Btu/h and < 14,000 Btu/h	—	9.5 CEER	
	≥ 14,000 Btu/h and < 20,000 Btu/h	—	9.3 CEER	
	≥ 20,000 Btu/h	—	9.4 CEER	
Room air conditioners with reverse cycle, with louvered sides for applications outside US	< 20,000 Btu/h	—	9.8 CEER	ANSI/AHAM RAC-1
	≥ 20,000 Btu/h	—	9.3 CEER	
Room air conditioners with reverse cycle without louvered sides for applications outside US	< 14,000 Btu/h	—	9.3 CEER	ANSI/AHAM RAC-1
	≥ 14,000 Btu/h	—	8.7 CEER	
Room air conditioners, casement only for applications outside US	All	—	9.5 CEER	ANSI/AHAM RAC-1
Room air conditioners, casement slider for applications outside US	All	—	10.4 CEER	ANSI/AHAM RAC-1

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8, wb = wet bulb, db = dry bulb.

"Cap" = The rated cooling capacity of the project in Btu/h. Where the unit's capacity is less than 7,000 Btu/h, use 7,000 Btu/h in the calculation. Where the unit's capacity is greater than 15,000 Btu/h, use 15,000 Btu/h in the calculations.

a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced standards, which include test procedures, including the reference year version of the test procedure.

b. Nonstandard size units must be factory labeled as follows: "MANUFACTURED FOR NONSTANDARD SIZE APPLICATIONS ONLY; NOT TO BE

INSTALLED IN NEW STANDARD PROJECTS." Nonstandard size efficiencies apply only to units being installed in existing sleeves having an external wall opening of less than 16 inches (406 mm) high or less than 42 inches (1067 mm) wide and having a cross-sectional area less than 670 square inches (0.43 m^2).

c. The cooling-mode wet bulb temperature requirement only applies for units that reject condensate to the condenser coil.

d. "Cap" in EER and COPH equations for PTACs and PTHPs means cooling capacity in Btu/h at 95°F outdoor dry-bulb temperature.

e. This table is a replica of ASHRAE 90.1 Table 6.8.1-4 Electrically Operated Packaged Terminal Air Conditioners, Packaged Terminal Heat Pumps, SinglePackage Vertical Air Conditioners, Single-Package Vertical Heat Pumps, Room Air Conditioners, and Room Air-Conditioner Heat Pumps—Minimum Efficiency Requirements.

TABLE C403.3.2(5)
WARM-AIR FURNACES AND COMBINATION WARM-AIR FURNACES/AIR-CONDITIONING UNITS, WARM-AIR DUCT FURNACES AND UNIT HEATERS—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[g]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY (INPUT)	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Warm-air furnace, gas fired for application outside the US	< 225,000 Btu/h	Maximum capacity[c]	80% AFUE (nonweatherized) or 81% AFUE (weatherized) or 80% E_t[b, d]	DOE 10 CFR 430 Appendix N or Section 2.39, Thermal Efficiency, ANSI Z21.47
Warm-air furnace, gas fired	< 225,000 Btu/h	Maximum capacity[c]	80% E_t[b, d] before 1/1/2023 81% E_t[d] after 1/1/2023	Section 2.39, Thermal Efficiency, ANSI Z21.47
Warm-air furnace, oil fired for application outside the US	< 225,000 Btu/h	Maximum capacity[c]	83% AFUE (nonweatherized) or 78% AFUE (weatherized) or 80% E_t[b, d]	DOE 10 CFR 430 Appendix N or Section 42, Combustion, UL 727
Warm-air furnace, oil fired	< 225,000 Btu/h	Maximum capacity[c]	80% E_t before 1/1/2023 82% E_t[d] after 1/1/2023	Section 42, Combustion, UL 727
Electric furnaces for applications outside the US	< 225,000 Btu/h	All	96% AFUE	DOE 10 CFR 430 Appendix N
Warm-air duct furnaces, gas fired	All capacities	Maximum capacity[c]	80% E_c[e]	Section 2.10, Efficiency, ANSI Z83.8
Warm-air unit heaters, gas fired	All capacities	Maximum capacity[c]	80% E_c[e, f]	Section 2.10, Efficiency, ANSI Z83.8
Warm-air unit heaters, oil fired	All capacities	Maximum capacity[c]	80% E_c[e, f]	Section 40, Combustion, UL 731

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced standards, which include test procedures, including the reference year version of the test procedure.

b. Combination units (i.e., furnaces contained within the same cabinet as an air conditioner) not covered by DOE 10 CFR 430 (i.e., three-phase power or with cooling capacity greater than or equal to 65,000 Btu/h) may comply with either rating. All other units greater than 225,000 Btu/h sold in the US must meet the AFUE standards for consumer products and test using USDOE's AFUE test procedure at DOE 10 CFR 430, Subpart B, Appendix N.

c. Compliance of multiple firing rate units shall be at the maximum firing rate.

d. E_t = thermal efficiency. Units must also include an interrupted or intermittent ignition device (IID), have jacket losses not exceeding 0.75 percent of the input rating, and have either power venting or a flue damper. A vent damper is an acceptable alternative to a flue damper for those furnaces where combustion air is drawn from the conditioned space.

e. E_c = combustion efficiency (100 percent less flue losses). See test procedure for detailed discussion.

f. Units must also include an interrupted or intermittent ignition device (IID) and have either power venting or an automatic flue damper.

g. This table is a replica of ASHRAE 90.1 Table 6.8.1-5 Warm-Air Furnaces and Combination Warm-Air Furnaces/Air-Conditioning Units, Warm-Air Duct Furnaces, and Unit Heaters—Minimum Efficiency Requirements.

TABLE C403.3.2(6)
GASAND OIL-FIRED BOILERS—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[i]

EQUIPMENT TYPE[b]	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	SIZE CATEGORY (INPUT)	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	EFFICIENCY AS OF 3/2/2022	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Boilers, hot water	Gas fired	< 300,000 Btu/h[g, h] for applications outside US	82% AFUE	82% AFUE	DOE 10 CFR 430 Appendix N
		≥ 300,000 Btu/h and ≤ 2,500,000 Btu/h[e]	80% E_t[d]	80% E_t[d]	DOE 10 CFR 431.86
		> 2,500,000 Btu/h[b]	82% E_c[c]	82% E_c[c]	
	Oil fired[f]	< 300,000 Btu/h[g,h] for applications outside US	84% AFUE	84% AFUE	DOE 10 CFR 430 Appendix N
		≥ 300,000 Btu/h and ≤ 2,500,000 Btu/h[e]	82% E_t[d]	82% E_t[d]	DOE 10 CFR 431.86
		> 2,500,000 Btu/h[b]	84% E_c[c]	84% E_c[c]	
Boilers, steam	Gas fired	< 300,000 Btu/h[g] for applications outside US	80% AFUE	80% AFUE	DOE 10 CFR 430 Appendix N
	Gas fired—all, except natural draft	≥ 300,000 Btu/h and ≤ 2,500,000 Btu/h[e]	79% E_t[d]	79% E_t[d]	DOE 10 CFR 431.86
		> 2,500,000 Btu/h[b]	79% E_t[d]	79% E_t[d]	
	Gas fired—natural draft	≥ 300,000 Btu/h and ≤ 2,500,000 Btu/h[e]	77% E_t[d]	79% E_t[d]	
		> 2,500,000 Btu/h[b]	77% E_t[d]	79% E_t[d]	
	Oil fired[f]	< 300,000 Btu/h[g] for applications outside US	82% AFUE	82% AFUE	DOE 10 CFR 430 Appendix N
		≥ 300,000 Btu/h and ≤ 2,500,000 Btu/h[e]	81% E_t[d]	81% E_t[d]	DOE 10 CFR 431.86
		> 2,500,000 Btu/h[b]	81% E_t[d]	81% E_t[d]	

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced standards, which include test procedures, including the reference year version of the test procedure.

b. These requirements apply to boilers with rated input of 8,000,000 Btu/h or less that are not packaged boilers and to all packaged boilers. Minimum efficiency requirements for boilers cover all capacities of packaged boilers.

c. E_c = Combustion efficiency (100 percent less flue losses).

d. E_t = Thermal efficiency.

e. Maximum capacity—minimum and maximum ratings as provided for and allowed by the unit's controls.

f. Includes oil-fired (residual).
g. Boilers shall not be equipped with a constant burning pilot light.
h. A boiler not equipped with a tankless domestic water-heating coil shall be equipped with an automatic means for adjusting the temperature of the water such that an incremental change in inferred heat load produces a corresponding incremental change in the temperature of the water supplied.
i. This table is a replica of ASHRAE 90.1 Table 6.8.1-6 Gas and Oil-Fired Boilers—Minimum Efficiency Requirements.

TABLE C403.3.2(7)
PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS FOR HEAT REJECTION EQUIPMENT—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[i]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	TOTAL SYSTEM HEATREJECTION CAPACITY AT RATED CONDITIONS	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION[h]	PERFORMANCE REQUIRED[b, c, d, f, g]	TEST PROCEDURE[a, e]
Propeller or axial fan open-circuit cooling towers	All	95°F entering water 85°F leaving water 75°F entering wb	≥ 40.2 gpm/hp	CTI ATC-105 and CTI STD-201 RS
Centrifugal fan opencircuit cooling towers	All	95°F entering water 85°F leaving water 75°F entering wb	≥ 20.0 gpm/hp	CTI ATC-105 and CTI STD-201 RS
Propeller or axial fan closed-circuit cooling towers	All	102°F entering water 90°F leaving water 75°F entering wb	≥ 16.1 gpm/hp	CTI ATC-105S and CTI STD-201 RS
Centrifugal fan closedcircuit cooling towers	All	102°F entering water 90°F leaving water 75°F entering wb	≥ 7.0 gpm/hp	CTI ATC-105S and CTI STD-201 RS
Propeller or axial fan dry coolers (air-cooled fluid coolers)	All	115°F entering water 105°F leaving water 95°F entering wb	≥ 4.5 gpm/hp	CTI ATC-105DS
Propeller or axial fan evaporative condensers	All	R-448A test fluid 165°F entering gas temperature 105°F condensing temperature 75°F entering wb	≥ 160,000 Btu/h × hp	CTI ATC-106
Propeller or axial fan evaporative condensers	All	Ammonia test fluid 140°F entering gas temperature 96.3°F condensing temperature 75°F entering wb	≥ 134,000 Btu/h × hp	CTI ATC-106
Centrifugal fan evaporative condensers	All	R-448A test fluid 165°F entering gas temperature 105°F condensing temperature 75°F entering wb	≥ 137,000 Btu/h × hp	CTI ATC-106

Centrifugal fan evaporative condensers	All	Ammonia test fluid 140°F entering gas temperature 96.3°F condensing temperature 75°F entering wb	≥ 110,000 Btu/h × hp	CTI ATC-106
Air-cooled condensers	All	125°F condensing temperature 190°F entering gas temperature 15°F subcooling 95°F entering db	≥ 176,000 Btu/h × hp	AHRI 460

For SI: °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8, L/s × kW = (gpm/hp)/(11.83), COP = (Btu/h × hp)/(2550.7), db = dry bulb temperature, wb = wet bulb temperature.

a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced standards, which include test procedures, including the reference year version of the test procedure.

b. For purposes of this table, open-circuit cooling tower performance is defined as the water-flow rating of the tower at the thermal rating condition listed in the table divided by the fan motor nameplate power.

c. For purposes of this table, closed-circuit cooling tower performance is defined as the process water-flow rating of the tower at the thermal rating condition listed in the table divided by the sum of the fan motor nameplate power and the integral spray pump motor nameplate power.

d. For purposes of this table, dry-cooler performance is defined as the process water-flow rating of the unit at the thermal rating condition listed in the table divided by the total fan motor nameplate power of the unit, and air-cooled condenser performance is defined as the heat rejected from the refrigerant divided by the total fan motor nameplate power of the unit.

e. The efficiencies and test procedures for both open- and closed-circuit cooling towers are not applicable to hybrid cooling towers that contain a combination of separate wet and dry heat exchange sections. The certification requirements do not apply to field-erected cooling towers.

f. All cooling towers shall comply with the minimum efficiency listed in the table for that specific type of tower with the capacity effect of any project specific accessories and/or options included in the capacity of the cooling tower.

g. For purposes of this table, evaporative condenser performance is defined as the heat rejected at the specified rating condition in the table, divided by the sum of the fan motor nameplate power and the integral spray pump nameplate power.

h. Requirements for evaporative condensers are listed with ammonia (R-717) and R-448A as test fluids in the table. Evaporative condensers intended for use with halocarbon refrigerants other than R-448A must meet the minimum efficiency requirements listed with R-448A as the test fluid. For ammonia, the condensing temperature is defined as the saturation temperature corresponding to the refrigerant pressure at the condenser entrance. For R-448A, which is a zeotropic refrigerant, the condensing temperature is defined as the arithmetic average of the dew point and the bubble point temperatures corresponding to the refrigerant pressure at the condenser entrance.

i. This table is a replica of ASHRAE 90.1 Table 6.8.1-7 Performance Requirements for Heat Rejection Equipment—Minimum Efficiency Requirements.

TABLE C403.3.2(8)
ELECTRICALLY OPERATED VARIABLE-REFRIGERANT-FLOW AIR CONDITIONERS—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[b]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY	HEATING SECTION TYPE	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
VRF air conditioners, air cooled	< 65,000 Btu/h	All	VRF multisplit system	13.0 SEER	AHRI 1230
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)	VRF multisplit system	11.2 EER 13.1 IEER 15.5 IEER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)	VRF multisplit system	11.0 EER 12.9 IEER 14.9 IEER	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)	VRF multisplit system	10.0 EER 11.6 IEER 13.9 IEER	

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced standard, which include test procedures, including the reference year version of the test procedure.

b. This table is a replica of ASHRAE 90.1 Table 6.8.1-8 Electrically Operated Variable-Refrigerant-Flow Air Conditioners—Minimum Efficiency Requirements.

TABLE C403.3.2(9)
ELECTRICALLY OPERATED VARIABLE-REFRIGERANT-FLOW AND APPLIED HEAT PUMPS—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[b]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY	HEATING SECTION TYPE	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
VRF air cooled (cooling mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h	All	VRF multisplit system	13.0 SEER	AHRI 1230
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	Electric resistance (or none)	VRF multisplit system	11.0 EER 12.9 IEER 14.6 IEER	
			VRF multisplit system with heat recovery	10.8 EER 12.7 IEER 14.4 IEER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h		VRF multisplit system	10.6 EER 12.3 IEER 13.9 IEER	
			VRF multisplit system with heat recovery	10.4 EER 12.1 IEER 13.7 IEER	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h		VRF multisplit system	9.5 EER 11.0 IEER 12.7 IEER	
			VRF multisplit system with heat recovery	9.3 EER 10.8 IEER 12.5 IEER	
VRF water source (cooling mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h	All	VRF multisplit systems 86°F entering water	12.0 EER 16.0 IEER	AHRI 1230
			VRF multisplit systems with heat recovery 86°F entering water	11.8 EER 15.8 IEER	
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h		VRF multisplit system 86°F entering water	12.0 EER 16.0 IEER	
			VRF multisplit system with heat recovery 86°F entering water	11.8 EER 15.8 IEER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h		VRF multisplit system 86°F entering water	10.0 EER 14.0 IEER	
			VRF multisplit system with heat recovery 86°F entering water	9.8 EER 13.8 IEER	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h		VRF multisplit system 86°F entering water	10.0 EER 12.0 IEER	
			VRF multisplit system with heat recovery 86°F entering water	9.8 EER 11.8 IEER	

VRF groundwater source (cooling mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h	All	VRF multisplit system 59°F entering water	16.2 EER	AHRI 1230
			VRF multisplit system with heat recovery 59°F entering water	16.0 EER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h		VRF multisplit system 59°F entering water	13.8 EER	
			VRF multisplit system with heat recovery 59°F entering water	13.6 EER	

(continued)

TABLE C403.3.2(9)—continued
ELECTRICALLY OPERATED VARIABLE-REFRIGERANT-FLOW AND APPLIED HEAT PUMPS—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[b]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY	HEATING SECTION TYPE	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
VRF ground source (cooling mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h	All	VRF multisplit system 77°F entering water	13.4 EER	AHRI 1230
			VRF multisplit system with heat recovery 77°F entering water	13.2 EER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h		VRF multisplit system 77°F entering water	11.0 EER	
			VRF multisplit system with heat recovery 77°F entering water	10.8 EER	
VRF air cooled (heating mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)		VRF multisplit system	7.7 HSPF	AHRI 1230
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)		VRF multisplit system 47°F db/43°F wb outdoor air	3.3 COP_H	
			17°F db/15°F wb outdoor air	2.25 COP_H	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)		VRF multisplit system 47°F db/43°F wb outdoor air	3.2 COP_H	
			17°F db/15°F wb outdoor air	2.05 COP_H	
	< 65,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)		VRF multisplit system 68°F entering water	4.2 COP_H 4.3 COP_H	

VRF water source (heating mode)	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)		VRF multisplit system 68°F entering water	4.2 COP_H 4.3 COP_H	AHRI 1230
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)		VRF multisplit system 68°F entering water	3.9 COP_H 4.0 COP_H	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)		VRF multisplit system 68°F entering water	3.9 COP_H	
VRF groundwater source (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)		VRF multisplit system 50°F entering water	3.6 COP_H	AHRI 1230
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)		VRF multisplit system 50°F entering water	3.3 COP_H	
VRF ground source (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)		VRF multisplit system 32°F entering water	3.1 COP_H	AHRI 1230
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)		VRF multisplit system 32°F entering water	2.8 COP_H	

For SI: °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, db = dry bulb temperature, wb = wet bulb temperature.

a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced standards, which include test procedures, including the reference year version of the test procedure.

b. This table is a replica of ASHRAE 90.1 Table 6.8.1-9 Electrically Operated Variable-Refrigerant-Flow and Applied Heat Pumps—Minimum Efficiency Requirements.

TABLE C403.3.2(10)
FLOOR-MOUNTED AIR CONDITIONERS AND CONDENSING UNITS SERVING COMPUTER ROOMS—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[b]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	STANDARD MODEL	NET SENSIBLE COOLING CAPACITY	MINIMUM NET SENSIBLE COP	RATING CONDITIONS RETURN AIR (dry bulb/dew point)	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Air cooled	Downflow	< 80,000 Btu/h	2.70	85°F/52°F (Class 2)	AHRI 1360
		≥ 80,000 Btu/h and < 295,000 Btu/h	2.58		
		≥ 295,000 Btu/h	2.36		
	Upflow—ducted	< 80,000 Btu/h	2.67		
		≥ 80,000 Btu/h and < 295,000 Btu/h	2.55		
		≥ 295,000 Btu/h	2.33		
	Upflow—nonducted	< 65,000 Btu/h	2.16	75°F/52°F (Class 1)	
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	2.04		
		≥ 240,000 Btu/h	1.89		
	Horizontal	< 65,000 Btu/h	2.65	95°F/52°F (Class	
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h and	2.55		

		< 240,000 Btu/h		3)	
		≥ 240,000 Btu/h	2.47		
Air cooled with fluid economizer	Downflow	< 80,000 Btu/h	2.70	85°F/52°F (Class 1)	AHRI 1360
		≥ 80,000 Btu/h and < 295,000 Btu/h	2.58		
		≥ 295,000 Btu/h	2.36		
	Upflow—ducted	< 80,000 Btu/h	2.67		
		≥ 80,000 Btu/h and < 295,000 Btu/h	2.55		
		≥ 295,000 Btu/h	2.33		
	Upflow—nonducted	< 65,000 Btu/h	2.09	75°F/52°F (Class 1)	
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	1.99		
		≥ 240,000 Btu/h	1.81		
	Horizontal	< 65,000 Btu/h	2.65	95°F/52°F (Class 3)	
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	2.55		
		≥ 240,000 Btu/h	2.47		
Water cooled	Downflow	< 80,000 Btu/h	2.82	85°F/52°F (Class 1)	AHRI 1360
		≥ 80,000 Btu/h and < 295,000 Btu/h	2.73		
		≥ 295,000 Btu/h	2.67		
	Upflow—ducted	< 80,000 Btu/h	2.79		
		≥ 80,000 Btu/h and < 295,000 Btu/h	2.70		
		≥ 295,000 Btu/h	2.64		
	Upflow—nonducted	< 65,000 Btu/h	2.43	75°F/52°F (Class 1)	
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	2.32		
		≥ 240,000 Btu/h	2.20		
	Horizontal	< 65,000 Btu/h	2.79	95°F/52°F (Class 3)	
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	2.68		
		≥ 240,000 Btu/h	2.60		

(continued)

TABLE C403.3.2(10)—continued
FLOOR-MOUNTED AIR CONDITIONERS AND CONDENSING UNITS SERVING COMPUTER ROOMS—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[b]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	STANDARD MODEL	NET SENSIBLE COOLING CAPACITY	MINIMUM NET SENSIBLE COP	RATING CONDITIONS RETURN AIR (dry bulb/dew point)	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
	Downflow	< 80,000 Btu/h	2.77		
		≥ 80,000 Btu/h and < 295,000 Btu/h	2.68		
		≥ 295,000 Btu/h	2.61	85°F/52°F (Class	
		< 80,000 Btu/h	2.74		

Water cooled with fluid economizer	Upflow—ducted	≥ 80,000 Btu/h and < 295,000 Btu/h	2.65	1)	AHRI 1360
		≥ 295,000 Btu/h	2.58		
	Upflow—nonducted	< 65,000 Btu/h	2.35	75°F/52°F (Class 1)	
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	2.24		
		≥ 240,000 Btu/h	2.12		
	Horizontal	< 65,000 Btu/h	2.71	95°F/52°F (Class 3)	
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	2.60		
		≥ 240,000 Btu/h	2.54		
Glycol cooled	Downflow	< 80,000 Btu/h	2.56	85°F/52°F (Class 1)	AHRI 1360
		≥ 80,000 Btu/h and < 295,000 Btu/h	2.24		
		≥ 295,000 Btu/h	2.21		
	Upflow—ducted	< 80,000 Btu/h	2.53		
		≥ 80,000 Btu/h and < 295,000 Btu/h	2.21		
		≥ 295,000 Btu/h	2.18		
	Upflow, nonducted	< 65,000 Btu/h	2.08	75°F/52°F (Class 1)	
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	1.90		
		≥ 240,000 Btu/h	1.81		
	Horizontal	< 65,000 Btu/h	2.48	95°F/52°F (Class 3)	
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	2.18		
		≥ 240,000 Btu/h	2.18		
Glycol cooled with fluid economizer	Downflow	< 80,000 Btu/h	2.51	85°F/52°F (Class 1)	AHRI 1360
		≥ 80,000 Btu/h and < 295,000 Btu/h	2.19		
		≥ 295,000 Btu/h	2.15		
	Upflow—ducted	< 80,000 Btu/h	2.48		
		≥ 80,000 Btu/h and < 295,000 Btu/h	2.16		
		≥ 295,000 Btu/h	2.12		
	Upflow—nonducted	< 65,000 Btu/h	2.00	75°F/52°F (Class 1)	
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	1.82		
		≥ 240,000 Btu/h	1.73		
	Horizontal	< 65,000 Btu/h	2.44	95°F/52°F (Class 3)	
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	2.10		
		≥ 240,000 Btu/h	2.10		

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8, COP = (Btu/h × hp)/(2,550.7).

a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced standards, which include test procedures, including the reference year version of the test procedure.

b. This table is a replica of ASHRAE 90.1 Table 6.8.1-10 Floor-Mounted Air Conditioners and Condensing Units Serving Computer Rooms—Minimum Efficiency Requirements.

TABLE C403.3.2(11)
VAPOR-COMPRESSION-BASED INDOOR POOL DEHUMIDIFIERS—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[b]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Single package indoor (with or without economizer)	Rating Conditions: A or C	3.5 MRE	AHRI 910
Single package indoor water cooled (with or without economizer)	Rating Conditions: A, B or C	3.5 MRE	
Single package indoor air cooled (with or without economizer)	Rating Conditions: A, B or C	3.5 MRE	
Split system indoor air cooled (with or without economizer)	Rating Conditions: A, B or C	3.5 MRE	

a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced standards, which include test procedures, including the reference year version of the test procedure.
b. This table is a replica of ASHRAE 90.1 Table 6.8.1-12 Vapor-Compression-Based Indoor Pool Dehumidifiers—Minimum Efficiency Requirements.

TABLE C403.3.2(12)
ELECTRICALLY OPERATED DX-DOAS UNITS, SINGLE-PACKAGE AND REMOTE CONDENSER, WITHOUT ENERGY RECOVERY—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[b]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Air cooled (dehumidification mode)	—	4.0 ISMRE	AHRI 920
Air-source heat pumps (dehumidification mode)	—	4.0 ISMRE	AHRI 920
Water cooled (dehumidification mode)	Cooling tower condenser water	4.9 ISMRE	AHRI 920
	Chilled water	6.0 ISMRE	
Air-source heat pump (heating mode)	—	2.7 ISCOP	AHRI 920
Water-source heat pump (dehumidification mode)	Ground source, closed loop	4.8 ISMRE	AHRI 920
	Ground-water source	5.0 ISMRE	
	Water source	4.0 ISMRE	
Water-source heat pump (heating mode)	Ground source, closed loop	2.0 ISCOP	AHRI 920
	Ground-water source	3.2 ISCOP	
	Water source	3.5 ISCOP	

a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced standards, which include test procedures, including the reference year version of the test procedure.
b. This table is a replica of ASHRAE 90.1 Table 6.8.1-13 Electrically Operated DX-DOAS Units, Single-Package and Remote Condenser, without Energy Recovery—Minimum Efficiency Requirements.

TABLE C403.3.2(13)
ELECTRICALLY OPERATED DX-DOAS UNITS, SINGLE-PACKAGE AND REMOTE CONDENSER, WITH ENERGY RECOVERY—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[b]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Air cooled (dehumidification mode)	—	5.2 ISMRE	AHRI 920
Air-source heat pumps (dehumidification mode)	—	5.2 ISMRE	AHRI 920
Water cooled (dehumidification mode)	Cooling tower condenser water	5.3 ISMRE	AHRI 920
	Chilled water	6.6 ISMRE	
Air-source heat pump (heating mode)	—	3.3 ISCOP	AHRI 920
Water-source heat pump (dehumidification mode)	Ground source, closed loop	5.2 ISMRE	AHRI 920
	Ground-water source	5.8 ISMRE	
	Water source	4.8 ISMRE	
Water-source heat pump (heating mode)	Ground source, closed loop	3.8 ISCOP	AHRI 920
	Ground-water source	4.0 ISCOP	
	Water source	4.8 ISCOP	

a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced standards, which include test procedures, including the reference year version of the test procedure.

b. This table is a replica of ASHRAE 90.1 Table 6.8.1-14 Electrically Operated DX-DOAS Units, Single-Package and Remote Condenser, with Energy Recovery—Minimum Efficiency Requirements.

TABLE C403.3.2(14)
ELECTRICALLY OPERATED WATER-SOURCE HEAT PUMPS—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[c]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY[b]	HEATING SECTION TYPE	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Water-to-air, water loop (cooling mode)	< 17,000 Btu/h	All	86°F entering water	12.2 EER	ISO 13256-1
	≥ 17,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h			13.0 EER	
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h			13.0 EER	
Water-to-air, ground water (cooling mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h	All	59°F entering water	18.0 EER	ISO 13256-1
Brine-to-air, ground loop (cooling mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h	All	77°F entering water	14.1 EER	ISO 13256-1
Water-to-water, water loop (cooling mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h	All	86°F entering water	10.6 EER	ISO 13256-2
Water-to-water, ground water (cooling mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h	All	59°F entering water	16.3 EER	ISO 13256-2
Brine-to-water, ground loop (cooling mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h	All	77°F entering water	12.1 EER	ISO 13256-2
Water-to-water, water loop (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	68°F entering water	4.3 COP_H	ISO 13256-1
Water-to-air, ground water (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	50°F entering water	3.7 COP_H	ISO 13256-1
Brine-to-air, ground loop (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	32°F entering water	3.2 COP_H	ISO 13256-1
Water-to-water, water loop (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	68°F entering water	3.7 COP_H	ISO 13256-1
Water-to-water, ground water (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	50°F entering water	3.1 COP_H	ISO 13256-2
Brine-to-water, ground loop (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	32°F entering water	2.5 COP_H	ISO 13256-2

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8.

a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced standards, which include test procedures, including the reference year version of the test procedure.

b. Single-phase, US air-cooled heat pumps less than 19 kW are regulated as consumer products by DOE 10 CFR 430. SCOPC, SCOP2C, SCOPH and SCOP2H values for single-phase products are set by the USDOE.

c. This table is a replica of ASHRAE 90.1 Table 6.8.1-15 Electrically Operated Water-Source Heat Pumps—Minimum Efficiency Requirements.

TABLE C403.3.2(15)

HEAT-PUMP AND HEAT RECOVERY CHILLER PACKAGES—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[g]

HEATING OPERATION												
EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY, ton_R	COOLING-ONLY OPERATION COOLING EFFICIENCY[c] AIR-SOURCE EER (FL/IPLV), Btu/W × h WATER-SOURCE POWER INPUT PER CAPACITY (FL/IPLV), kW/ton_R		HEATING SOURCE CONDITIONS (entering/ leaving water) OR OAT (db/wb), °F	HEAT-PUMP HEATING FULL-LOAD EFFICIENCY (COP_H)[b], W/W				HEAT RECOVERY CHILLER FULLLOAD EFFICIENCY (COP_{HR})[c,d], W/W SIMULTANEOUS COOLING AND HEATING FULL-LOAD EFFICIENCY (COP_{SHC})[c], W/W			
					Leaving Heating Water Temperature				Leaving Heating Water Temperature			
					Low	Medium	High	Boost	Low	Medium	High	Boost
		Path A	Path B		105°F	120°F	140°F	140°F	105°F	120°F	140°F	140°F
Air source	All sizes	≥ 9.595 FL ≥ 13.02 IPLV.IP	≥ 9.215 FL ≥ 15.01 IPLV.IP	47 db 43 wb[e]	≥ 3.290	≥ 2.770	≥ 2.310	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
		≥ 9.595 FL ≥ 13.30 IPLV.IP	≥ 9.215 FL ≥ 15.30 IPLV.IP	17 db 15 wb[e]	≥ 2.230	≥ 1.950	≥ 1.630	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
Water-source electrically operated positive displacement	< 75	≤ 0.7885 FL ≤ 0.6316 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.7875 FL ≤ 0.5145 IPLV.IP	54/44[f]	≥ 4.640	≥ 3.680	≥ 2.680	NA	≥ 8.330	≥ 6.410	≥ 4.420	NA
				75/65[f]	NA	NA	NA	≥ 3.550	NA	NA	NA	6.150
	≥ 75 and < 150	≤ 0.7579 FL ≤ 0.5895 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.7140 FL ≤ 0.4620 IPLV.IP	54/44[f]	≥ 4.640	≥ 3.680	≥ 2.680	NA	≥ 8.330	≥ 6.410	≥ 4.420	NA
				75/65[f]	NA	NA	NA	≥ 3.550	NA	NA	NA	6.150
	≥ 150 and < 300	≤ 0.6947 FL ≤ 0.5684 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.7140 FL ≤ 0.4620 IPLV.IP	54/44[f]	≥ 4.640	≥ 3.680	≥ 2.680	NA	≥ 8.330	≥ 6.410	≥ 4.420	NA
				75/65[f]	NA	NA	NA	≥ 3.550	NA	NA	NA	6.150
	≥ 300 and < 600	≤ 0.6421 FL ≤ 0.5474 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.6563 FL ≤ 0.4305 IPLV.IP	54/44[f]	≥ 4.930	≥ 3.960	≥ 2.970	NA	≥ 8.900	≥ 6.980	≥ 5.000	NA
				75/65[f]	NA	NA	NA	≥ 3.900	NA	NA	NA	6.850
	≥ 600	≤ 0.5895 FL ≤ 0.5263 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.6143 FL ≤ 0.3990 IPLV.IP	54/44[f]	≥ 4.930	≥ 3.960	≥ 2.970	NA	≥ 8.900	≥ 6.980	≥ 5.000	NA
				75/65[f]	NA	NA	NA	≥ 3.900	NA	NA	NA	6.850
Water-source ctrically operated centrifugal	< 75	≤ 0.6421 FL ≤ 0.5789 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.7316 FL ≤ 0.4632 IPLV.IP	54/44[f]	≥ 4.640	≥ 3.680	≥ 2.680	NA	≥ 8.330	≥ 6.410	≥ 4.420	NA
				75/65[f]	NA	NA	NA	≥ 3.550	NA	NA	NA	≥ 6.150
	≥ 75 and < 150	≤ 0.5895 FL ≤ 0.5474 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.6684 FL ≤ 0.4211 IPLV.IP	54/44[f]	≥ 4.640	≥ 3.680	≥ 2.680	NA	≥ 8.330	≥ 6.410	≥ 4.420	NA
				75/65[f]	NA	NA	NA	≥ 3.550	NA	NA	NA	≥ 6.150
	≥ 150 and < 300	≤ 0.5895 FL ≤ 0.5263 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.6263 FL ≤ 0.4105 IPLV.IP	54/44[f]	≥ 4.640	≥ 3.680	≥ 2.680	NA	≥ 8.330	≥ 6.410	≥ 4.420	NA
				75/65[f]	NA	NA	NA	≥ 3.550	NA	NA	NA	≥ 6.150
	≥ 300 and < 600	≤ 0.5895 FL ≤ 0.5263 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.6158 FL ≤ 0.4000 IPLV.IP	54/44[f]	≥ 4.930	≥ 3.960	≥ 2.970	NA	≥ 8.900	≥ 6.980	≥ 5.000	NA
				75/65[f]	NA	NA	NA	≥ 3.900	NA	NA	NA	≥ 6.850
	≥ 600	≤ 0.5895 FL ≤ 0.5263 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.6158 FL ≤ 0.4000 IPLV.IP	54/44[f]	≥ 4.930	≥ 3.960	≥ 2.970	NA	≥ 8.900	≥ 6.980	≥ 5.000	NA
				75/65[f]	NA	NA	NA	≥ 3.900	NA	NA	NA	≥ 6.850

For SI: °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8.

a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced standards, which include test procedures, including the reference year version of the test procedure.

b. Cooling-only rating conditions are standard rating conditions defined in AHRI 550/590, Table 1.

c. Heating full-load rating conditions are at rating conditions defined in AHRI 550/590, Table 1.

d. For water-cooled heat recovery chillers that have capabilities for heat rejection to a heat recovery condenser and a tower condenser, the COP_{HR} applies to operation at full load with 100 percent heat recovery (no tower rejection). Units that only have capabilities for partial heat recovery shall meet the requirements of Table C403.3.2(3).

e. Outdoor air entering dry-bulb (db) temperature and wet-bulb (wb) temperature.

f. Source-water entering and leaving water temperature.

g. This table is a replica of ASHRAE 90.1 Table 6.8.1-16 Heat-Pump and Heat Recovery Chiller Packages—Minimum Efficiency Requirements.

TABLE C403.3.2(16)
CEILING-MOUNTED COMPUTER-ROOM AIR CONDITIONERS—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[b]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	STANDARD MODEL	NET SENSIBLE COOLING CAPACITY	MINIMUM NET SENSIBLE COP	RATING CONDITIONS RETURN AIR (dry bulb/dew point)	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Air cooled with free air discharge condenser	Ducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	2.05	75°F/52°F (Class 1)	AHRI 1360
		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	2.02		
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	1.92		
	Nonducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	2.08		
		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	2.05		
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	1.94		
Air cooled with free air discharge condenser with fluid economizer	Ducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	2.01	75°F/52°F (Class 1)	AHRI 1360
		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	1.97		
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	1.87		
	Nonducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	2.04		
		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	2.00		
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	1.89		
Air cooled with ducted condenser	Ducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	1.86	75°F/52°F (Class 1)	AHRI 1360
		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	1.83		
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	1.73		
	Nonducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	1.89		
		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	1.86		
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	1.75		
Air cooled with fluid economizer and ducted condenser	Ducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	1.82	75°F/52°F (Class 1)	AHRI 1360
		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	1.78		
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	1.68		
	Nonducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	1.85		
		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	1.81		
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	1.70		
Water cooled	Ducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	2.38	75°F/52°F (Class 1)	AHRI 1360
		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	2.28		
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	2.18		
	Nonducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	2.41		
		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	2.31		
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	2.20		

(continued)

TABLE C403.3.2(16)—continued

CEILING-MOUNTED COMPUTER-ROOM AIR CONDITIONERS—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[b]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	STANDARD MODEL	NET SENSIBLE COOLING CAPACITY	MINIMUM NET SENSIBLE COP	RATING CONDITIONS RETURN AIR (dry bulb/dew point)	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Water cooled with fluid economizer	Ducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	2.33	75°F/52°F (Class 1)	AHRI 1360
		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	2.23		
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	2.13		
	Nonducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	2.36		
		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	2.26		
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	2.16		
Glycol cooled	Ducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	1.97	75°F/52°F (Class 1)	AHRI 1360
		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	1.93		
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	1.78		
	Nonducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	2.00		
		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	1.98		
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	1.81		
Glycol cooled with fluid economizer	Ducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	1.92	75°F/52°F (Class 1)	AHRI 1360
		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	1.88		
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	1.73		
	Nonducted	< 29,000 Btu/h	1.95		
		≥ 29,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	1.93		
		≥ 65,000 Btu/h	1.76		

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8, COP = (Btu/h × hp)/(2,550.7).

a. Chapter 6 contains a complete specification of the referenced standards, which include test procedures, including the reference year version of the test procedure.

b. This is a replica of ASHRAE 90.1 Table 6.8.1-17 Ceiling-Mounted Computer-Room Air Conditioners—Minimum Efficiency Requirements

TABLE C403.3.3
MAXIMUM HOT GAS BYPASS CAPACITY

RATED CAPACITY	MAXIMUM HOT GAS BYPASS CAPACITY (% of total capacity)
≤ 240,000 Btu/h	50
> 240,000 Btu/h	25

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

C403.3.4 Boiler turndown. *Boiler systems* with design input of greater than 1,000,000 Btu/h (293 kW) shall comply with the turndown ratio specified in Table C403.3.4. The system turndown requirement shall be met through the use of multiple single-input boilers, one or more *modulating boilers* or a combination of single-input and *modulating boilers*.

TABLE C403.3.4 BOILER TURNDOWN

BOILER SYSTEM DESIGN INPUT (Btu/h)	MINIMUM TURNDOWN RATIO
≥ 1,000,000 and ≤ 5,000,000	3 to 1
> 5,000,000 and ≤ 10,000,000	4 to 1
> 10,000,000	5 to 1

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

C403.4 Heating and cooling system controls. Each heating and cooling system shall be provided with controls in accordance with Sections C403.4.1 through C403.4.5.

C403.4.1 Thermostatic controls. The supply of heating and cooling energy to each *zone* shall be controlled by individual thermostatic controls capable of responding to temperature within the *zone*. Where humidification or dehumidification or both is provided, not fewer than one humidity control device shall be provided for each humidity control system.

Exception: Independent perimeter systems that are designed to offset only building envelope heat losses, gains or both serving one or more perimeter *zones* also served by an interior system provided that both of the following conditions are met:

1. The perimeter system includes not fewer than one thermostatic control *zone* for each building exposure having exterior walls facing only one orientation (within ±45 degrees) (0.8 rad) for more than 50 contiguous feet (15 240 mm).
2. The perimeter system heating and cooling supply is controlled by thermostats located within the *zones* served by the system.

C403.4.1.1 Heat pump supplementary heat. Heat pumps having ~~supplementary electric resistance heat~~ combustion equipment or electric resistance equipment for supplementary space ~~or service water~~ heating shall have controls that~~, except during defrost,~~ are configured to prevent supplemental heat operation when the capacity of the heat pump compressor can meet the heating load~~.~~ and limit supplemental heat operation to only those times when one of the following applies:

1. For space heating systems, the vapor compression cycle cannot provide the necessary heating energy to satisfy the thermostat setting.

   Exception: For forced-air systems, the vapor compression cycle cannot provide a supply air temperature of 85°F or greater

2. The heat pump is operating in defrost mode.
3. The vapor compression cycle malfunctions.
4. For space heating systems, the thermostat malfunctions.

C403.4.1.2 Deadband. Where used to control both heating and cooling, *zone* thermostatic controls shall be configured to provide a temperature range or deadband of not less than 5°F (2.8°C) within which the supply of heating and cooling energy to the *zone* is shut off or reduced to a minimum.

Exceptions:

1. Thermostats requiring manual changeover between heating and cooling modes.
2. Occupancies or applications requiring precision in indoor temperature control as *approved* by the *code official*.

C403.4.1.3 Setpoint overlap restriction. Where a *zone* has a separate heating and a separate cooling thermostatic control located within the *zone*, a limit switch, mechanical stop or direct digital control system with software programming shall be configured to prevent the heating setpoint from exceeding the cooling setpoint and to maintain a deadband in accordance with Section C403.4.1.2.

C403.4.1.4 Heated or cooled vestibules. The heating system for heated vestibules and air curtains with integral heating shall be provided with controls configured to shut off the source of heating when the outdoor air temperature is greater than 45°F (7°C). Vestibule heating and cooling systems shall be controlled by a thermostat located in the vestibule configured to limit heating to a temperature not greater than 60°F (16°C) and cooling to a temperature not less than 85°F (29°C).

Exception: Control of heating or cooling provided by site-recovered energy or transfer air that would otherwise be exhausted.

C403.4.1.5 Hot water boiler outdoor temperature setback control. Hot water boilers that supply heat to the building through one- or two-pipe heating systems shall have an outdoor setback control that lowers the boiler water temperature based on the outdoor temperature.

C403.4.2 Off-hour controls. Each *zone* shall be provided with thermostatic setback controls that are controlled by either an automatic time clock or programmable control system.

Exceptions:

1. *Zones* that will be operated continuously.
2. *Zones* with a full HVAC load demand not exceeding 6,800 Btu/h (2 kW) and having a manual shutoff switch located with *ready access*.

C403.4.2.1 Thermostatic setback. Thermostatic setback controls shall be configured to set back or temporarily operate the

system to maintain zone temperatures down to 55°F (13°C) or up to 85°F (29°C).

C403.4.2.2 Automatic setback and shutdown. Automatic time clock or programmable controls shall be capable of starting and stopping the system for seven different daily schedules per week and retaining their programming and time setting during a loss of power for not fewer than 10 hours. Additionally, the controls shall have a manual override that allows temporary operation of the system for up to 2 hours; a manually operated timer configured to operate the system for up to 2 hours; or an occupancy sensor.

C403.4.2.3 Automatic start and stop. Automatic start and stop controls shall be provided for each HVAC system. The automatic start controls shall be configured to automatically adjust the daily start time of the HVAC system in order to bring each space to the desired occupied temperature immediately prior to scheduled occupancy. Automatic stop controls shall be provided for each HVAC system with direct digital control of individual *zones*. The automatic stop controls shall be configured to reduce the HVAC system's heating temperature setpoint and increase the cooling temperature setpoint by not less than 2°F (-16.6ºC) before scheduled unoccupied periods based on the thermal lag and acceptable drift in space temperature that is within comfort limits.

C403.4.3 Hydronic systems controls. The heating of fluids that have been previously mechanically cooled and the cooling of fluids that have been previously mechanically heated shall be limited in accordance with Sections C403.4.3.1 through C403.4.3.3. Hydronic heating systems comprised of multiple-packaged boilers and designed to deliver conditioned water or steam into a common distribution system shall include automatic controls configured to sequence operation of the boilers. Hydronic heating systems composed of a single boiler and greater than 500,000 Btu/h (146.5 kW) input design capacity shall include either a multistaged or modulating burner.

C403.4.3.1 Three-pipe system. Hydronic systems that use a common return system for both hot water and chilled water are prohibited.

C403.4.3.2 Two-pipe changeover system. Systems that use a common distribution system to supply both heated and chilled water shall be designed to allow a deadband between changeover from one mode to the other of not less than 15°F (8.3°C) outside air temperatures; be designed to and provided with controls that will allow operation in one mode for not less than 4 hours before changing over to the other mode; and be provided with controls that allow heating and cooling supply temperatures at the changeover point to be not more than 30°F (16.7°C) apart.

C403.4.3.3 Hydronic (water loop) heat pump systems. Hydronic heat pump systems shall comply with Sections C403.4.3.3.1 through C403.4.3.3.3.

C403.4.3.3.1 Temperature deadband. Hydronic heat pumps connected to a common heat pump water loop with central devices for heat rejection and heat addition shall have controls that are configured to provide a heat pump water supply temperature deadband of not less than 20°F (11°C) between initiation of heat rejection and heat addition by the central devices.

Exception: Where a system loop temperature optimization controller is installed and can determine the most efficient operating temperature based on real-time conditions of demand and capacity, deadbands of less than 20°F (11°C) shall be permitted.

C403.4.3.3.2 Heat rejection. The following shall apply to hydronic water loop heat pump systems ~~in Climate Zones 3 through 8~~:

1. Where a closed-circuit cooling tower is used directly in the heat pump loop, either an automatic valve shall be installed to bypass the flow of water around the closed-circuit cooling tower, except for any flow necessary for freeze protection, or low-leakage positive-closure dampers shall be provided.
2. Where an open-circuit cooling tower is used directly in the heat pump loop, an automatic valve shall be installed to bypass all heat pump water flow around the open circuit cooling tower.
3. Where an open-circuit or closed-circuit cooling tower is used in conjunction with a separate heat exchanger to isolate the open-circuit cooling tower from the heat pump loop, heat loss shall be controlled by shutting down the circulation pump on the cooling tower loop.

Exception: Where it can be demonstrated that a heat pump system will be required to reject heat throughout the year.

C403.4.3.3.3 Two-position valve. Each hydronic heat pump on the hydronic system having a total pump system power exceeding 10 hp (7.5 kW) shall have a two-position automatic valve interlocked to shut off the water flow when the compressor is off.

C403.4.4 Part-load controls. Hydronic systems greater than or equal to 300,000 Btu/h (87.9 kW) in design output capacity supplying heated or chilled water to comfort conditioning systems shall include controls that are configured to do all of the following:

1. Automatically reset the supply-water temperatures in response to varying building heating and cooling demand using coil valve position, zone-return water temperature, building-return water temperature or outside air temperature. The

temperature shall be reset by not less than 25 percent of the design supply-to-return water temperature difference.

2. Automatically vary fluid flow for hydronic systems with a combined pump motor capacity of 2 hp (1.5 kW) or larger with three or more control valves or other devices by reducing the system design flow rate by not less than 50 percent or the maximum reduction allowed by the equipment manufacturer for proper operation of equipment by valves that modulate or step open and close, or pumps that modulate or turn on and off as a function of load.
3. Automatically vary pump flow on heating-water systems, chilled-water systems and heat rejection loops serving water-cooled unitary air conditioners as follows:
    3.1. Where pumps operate continuously or operate based on a time schedule, pumps with nominal output motor power of 2 hp or more shall have a variable speed drive.
    3.2. Where pumps have automatic direct digital control configured to operate pumps only when zone heating or cooling is required, a variable speed drive shall be provided for pumps with motors having the same or greater nominal output power indicated in Table C403.4.4 based on the climate zone and system served.
4. Where a variable speed drive is required by Item 3 of this section, pump motor power input shall be not more than 30 percent of design wattage at 50 percent of the design water flow. Pump flow shall be controlled to maintain one control valve nearly wide open or to satisfy the minimum differential pressure.

Exceptions:

1. Supply-water temperature reset is not required for chilled-water systems supplied by off-site district chilled water or chilled water from ice storage systems.
2. Variable pump flow is not required on dedicated coil circulation pumps where needed for freeze protection.
3. Variable pump flow is not required on dedicated equipment circulation pumps where configured in primary/secondary design to provide the minimum flow requirements of the equipment manufacturer for proper operation of equipment.
4. Variable speed drives are not required on heating water pumps where more than 50 percent of annual heat is generated by an electric boiler.

TABLE C403.4.4
VARIABLE SPEED DRIVE (VSD) REQUIREMENTS FOR DEMAND-CONTROLLED PUMPS

CHILLED WATER AND HEAT REJECTION LOOP PUMPS IN THESE CLIMATE ZONES	HEATING WATER PUMPS IN THESE CLIMATE ZONES	VSD REQUIRED FOR MOTORS WITH RATED OUTPUT OF:
0A, 0B, 1A, 1B, 2B	—	≥ 2 hp
2A, 3B	—	≥ 3 hp
3A, 3C, 4A, 4B	7, 8	≥ 5 hp
4C, 5A, 5B, 5C, 6A, 6B	3C, 5A, 5C, 6A, 6B	≥ 7.5 hp
—	4A, 4C, 5B	≥ 10 hp
7, 8	4B	≥ 15 hp
—	2A, 2B, 3A, 3B	≥ 25 hp
—	0B, 1B	≥ 100 hp
—	0A, 1A	≥ 200 hp

For SI: 1 hp = 0.746 kW.

C403.4.5 Pump isolation. Chilled water plants including more than one chiller shall be capable of and configured to reduce flow automatically through the chiller plant when a chiller is shut down. Chillers piped in series for the purpose of increased temperature differential shall be considered as one chiller. Boiler systems including more than one boiler shall be capable of and configured to reduce flow automatically through the boiler system when a boiler is shut down.

C403.5 Economizers. Economizers shall comply with Sections C403.5.1 through C403.5.5. An air or water economizer shall be provided for the following cooling systems:

1. Chilled water systems with a total cooling capacity, less cooling capacity provided with air economizers, as specified in Table C403.5(1).
2. Individual fan systems with cooling capacity greater than or equal to 54,000 Btu/h (15.8 kW) in buildings having other than a *Group R* occupancy. The total supply capacity of all fan cooling units not provided with economizers shall not exceed 20 percent of the total supply capacity of all fan cooling units in the building or 300,000 Btu/h (88 kW), whichever is greater.
3. Individual fan systems with cooling capacity greater than or equal to 270,000 Btu/h (79.1 kW) in buildings having a *Group R* occupancy. The total supply capacity of all fan cooling units not provided with economizers shall not exceed 20 percent of the total supply capacity of all fan cooling units in the building or 1,500,000 Btu/h (440 kW), whichever is greater.

Exceptions: Economizers are not required for the following systems.

1. Individual fan systems not served by chilled water for buildings located in *Climate Zones* 0A, 0B, 1A and 1B.
2. Where more than 25 percent of the air designed to be supplied by the system is to spaces that are designed to be humidified above 35°F (1.7°C) dew-point temperature to satisfy process needs.
3. Systems expected to operate less than 20 hours per week.
4. Systems serving supermarket areas with open refrigerated casework.
5. Where the cooling efficiency is greater than or equal to the efficiency requirements in Table C403.5(2).
6. Systems that include a heat recovery system in accordance with Section C403.10.5.
7. VRF systems installed with a dedicated outdoor air system.

TABLE C403.5(1)
MINIMUM CHILLED-WATER SYSTEM COOLING CAPACITY FOR DETERMINING ECONOMIZER COOLING REQUIREMENTS

CLIMATE ZONES (COOLING)	TOTAL CHILLED-WATER SYSTEM CAPACITY LESS CAPACITY OF COOLING UNITS WITH AIR ECONOMIZERS	
	Local water-cooled chilled-water systems	Air-cooled chilledwater systems or district chilled-water systems
0A, 1A	Economizer not required	Economizer not required
0B, 1B, 2A, 2B	960,000 Btu/h	1,250,000 Btu/h
3A, 3B, 3C, 4A, 4B, 4C	720,000 Btu/h	940,000 Btu/h
5A, 5B, 5C, 6A, 6B, 7, 8	1,320,000 Btu/h	1,720,000 Btu/h

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

TABLE C403.5(2)
EQUIPMENT EFFICIENCY PERFORMANCE EXCEPTION FOR ECONOMIZERS

CLIMATE ZONES	COOLING EQUIPMENT PERFORMANCE IMPROVEMENT (EER OR IPLV)
2A, 2B	10% efficiency improvement
3A, 3B	15% efficiency improvement
4A, 4B	20% efficiency improvement

C403.5.1 Integrated economizer control. Economizer systems shall be integrated with the mechanical cooling system and be configured to provide partial cooling even where additional mechanical cooling is required to provide the remainder of the cooling load. Controls shall not be capable of creating a false load in the mechanical cooling systems by limiting or disabling the economizer or any other means, such as hot gas bypass, except at the lowest stage of mechanical cooling.

Units that include an air economizer shall comply with the following:

1. Unit controls shall have the mechanical cooling capacity control interlocked with the air economizer controls such that the outdoor air damper is at the 100-percent open position when mechanical cooling is on and the outdoor air damper does not begin to close to prevent coil freezing due to minimum compressor run time until the leaving air temperature is less than 45°F (7°C).
2. Direct expansion (DX) units that control 75,000 Btu/h (22 kW) or greater of rated capacity of the capacity of the mechanical cooling directly based on occupied space temperature shall have not fewer than two stages of mechanical cooling capacity.
3. Other DX units, including those that control space temperature by modulating the airflow to the space, shall be in accordance with Table C403.5.1.

TABLE C403.5.1
DX COOLING STAGE REQUIREMENTS FOR MODULATING AIRFLOW UNITS

RATING CAPACITY	MINIMUM NUMBER OF MECHANICAL COOLING STAGES	MINIMUM COMPRESSOR DISPLACEMENT[a]
≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	3 stages	≤ 35% of full load
≥ 240,000 Btu/h	4 stages	≤ 25% full load

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

a. For mechanical cooling stage control that does not use variable compressor displacement, the percent displacement shall be equivalent to the mechanical cooling capacity reduction evaluated at the full load rating conditions for the compressor.

C403.5.2 Economizer heating system impact. HVAC system design and economizer controls shall be such that economizer operation does not increase building heating energy use during normal operation.

Exception: Economizers on variable air volume (VAV) systems that cause zone level heating to increase because of a reduction in supply air temperature.

C403.5.3 Air economizers. Where economizers are required by Section C403.5, air economizers shall comply with Sections C403.5.3.1 through C403.5.3.5.

C403.5.3.1 Design capacity. Air economizer systems shall be configured to modulate *outdoor air* and return air dampers to provide up to 100 percent of the design supply air quantity as *outdoor air* for cooling.

C403.5.3.2 Control signal. Economizer controls and dampers shall be configured to sequence the dampers with the mechanical cooling equipment and shall not be controlled by only mixed-air temperature.

Exception: The use of mixed-air temperature limit control shall be permitted for systems controlled from space temperature (such as single-*zone* systems).

C403.5.3.3 High-limit shutoff. Air economizers shall be configured to automatically reduce *outdoor air* intake to the design minimum *outdoor air* quantity when *outdoor air* intake will not reduce cooling energy usage. High-limit shutoff control types for specific climates shall be chosen from Table C403.5.3.3. High-limit shutoff control settings for these control types shall be those specified in Table C403.5.3.3.

C403.5.3.4 Relief of excess outdoor air. Systems shall be capable of relieving excess *outdoor air* during air economizer operation to prevent overpressurizing the building. The relief air outlet shall be located to avoid recirculation into the building.

C403.5.3.5 Economizer dampers. Return, exhaust/relief and outdoor air dampers used in economizers shall comply with Section C403.7.7.

C403.5.4 Water-side economizers. Where economizers are required by Section C403.5, water-side economizers shall comply with Sections C403.5.4.1 and C403.5.4.2.

C403.5.4.1 Design capacity. Water economizer systems shall be configured to cool supply air by indirect evaporation and providing up to 100 percent of the expected system cooling load at *outdoor air* temperatures of not greater than 50°F (10°C) dry bulb/45°F (7°C) wet bulb.

Exceptions:

1. Systems primarily serving computer rooms in which 100 percent of the expected system cooling load at 40°F (4°C) dry bulb/35°F (1.7°C) wet bulb is met with evaporative water economizers.
2. Systems primarily serving computer rooms with dry cooler water economizers that satisfy 100 percent of the expected system cooling load at 35°F (1.7°C) dry bulb.
3. Systems where dehumidification requirements cannot be met using outdoor air temperatures of 50°F (10°C) dry bulb/45°F (7°C) wet bulb and where 100 percent of the expected system cooling load at 45°F (7°C) dry bulb/40°F (4°C) wet bulb is met with evaporative water economizers.

TABLE C403.5.3.3
HIGH-LIMIT SHUTOFF CONTROL SETTING FOR AIR ECONOMIZERS[b]

DEVICE TYPE	CLIMATE ZONE	REQUIRED HIGH LIMIT (ECONOMIZER OFF WHEN):	
		Equation	Description
Fixed dry bulb	0B, 1B, 2B, 3B, 3C, 4B, 4C, 5B, 5C, 6B, 7, 8	$T_{OA} > 75°F$	Outdoor air temperature exceeds 75°F
	5A, 6A	$T_{OA} > 70°F$	Outdoor air temperature exceeds 70°F
	0A, 1A, 2A, 3A, 4A	$T_{OA} > 65°F$	Outdoor air temperature exceeds 65°F
Differential dry bulb	0B, 1B, 2B, 3B, 3C, 4B, 4C, 5A, 5B, 5C, 6A, 6B, 7, 8	$T_{OA} > T_{RA}$	Outdoor air temperature exceeds return air temperature
Fixed enthalpy with fixed drybulb temperatures	All	$h_{OA} > 28$ Btu/lb[a] or $T_{OA} > 75°F$	Outdoor air enthalpy exceeds 28 Btu/lb of dry air[a] or Outdoor air temperature exceeds 75°F
Differential enthalpy with fixed dry-bulb temperature	All	$h_{OA} > h_{RA}$ or $T_{OA} > 75°F$	Outdoor air enthalpy exceeds return air enthalpy or Outdoor air temperature exceeds 75°F

For SI: °C = (°F – 32)/1.8, 1 Btu/lb = 2.33 kJ/kg.

a. At altitudes substantially different than sea level, the fixed enthalpy limit shall be set to the enthalpy value at 75°F and 50-percent relative humidity. As an example, at approximately 6,000 feet elevation, the fixed enthalpy limit is approximately 30.7 Btu/lb.

b. Devices with selectable setpoints shall be capable of being set to within 2°F and 2 Btu/lb of the setpoint listed.

C403.5.4.2 Maximum pressure drop. Precooling coils and water-to-water heat exchangers used as part of a water economizer system shall either have a water-side pressure drop of less than 15 feet (45 kPa) of water or a secondary loop shall be created so that the coil or heat exchanger pressure drop is not seen by the circulating pumps when the system is in the normal cooling (noneconomizer) mode.

C403.5.5 Economizer fault detection and diagnostics. Air-cooled unitary direct-expansion units listed in the tables in Section C403.3.2 and variable refrigerant flow (VRF) units that are equipped with an economizer in accordance with Sections C403.5 through C403.5.4 shall include a fault detection and diagnostics system complying with the following:

1. The following temperature sensors shall be permanently installed to monitor system operation:
    1.1. Outside air.
    1.2. Supply air.
    1.3. Return air.
2. Temperature sensors shall have an accuracy of ±2°F (1.1°C) over the range of 40°F to 80°F (4°C to 26.7°C).
3. Refrigerant pressure sensors, where used, shall have an accuracy of ±3 percent of full scale.
4. The unit controller shall be configured to provide system status by indicating the following:
    4.1. Free cooling available.

4.2. Economizer enabled.
4.3. Compressor enabled.
4.4. Heating enabled.
4.5. Mixed air low limit cycle active.
4.6. The current value of each sensor.

5. The unit controller shall be capable of manually initiating each operating mode so that the operation of compressors, economizers, fans and the heating system can be independently tested and verified.
6. The unit shall be configured to report faults to a fault management application available for *access* by day-to-day operating or service personnel, or annunciated locally on zone thermostats.
7. The fault detection and diagnostics system shall be configured to detect the following faults:
   7.1. Air temperature sensor failure/fault.
   7.2. Not economizing when the unit should be economizing.
   7.3. Economizing when the unit should not be economizing.
   7.4. Damper not modulating.
   7.5. Excess outdoor air.

C403.6 Requirements for mechanical systems serving multiple zones. Sections C403.6.1 through C403.6.9 shall apply to mechanical systems serving multiple zones.

C403.6.1 Variable air volume and multiple-zone systems. Supply air systems serving multiple zones shall be variable air volume (VAV) systems that have zone controls configured to reduce the volume of air that is reheated, recooled or mixed in each zone to one of the following:

1. Twenty percent of the zone design peak supply for systems with direct digital control (DDC) and 30 percent for other systems.
2. Systems with DDC where all of the following apply:
   2.1. The airflow rate in the deadband between heating and cooling does not exceed 20 percent of the zone design peak supply rate or higher allowed rates under Items 3, 4 and 5 of this section.
   2.2. The first stage of heating modulates the zone supply air temperature setpoint up to a maximum setpoint while the airflow is maintained at the deadband flow rate.
   2.3. The second stage of heating modulates the airflow rate from the deadband flow rate up to the heating maximum flow rate that is less than 50 percent of the zone design peak supply rate.
3. The outdoor airflow rate required to meet the minimum ventilation requirements of Chapter 4 of the *International Mechanical Code*.
4. Any higher rate that can be demonstrated to reduce overall system annual energy use by offsetting reheat/recool energy losses through a reduction in outdoor air intake for the system as approved by the code official.
5. The airflow rate required to comply with applicable codes or accreditation standards such as pressure relationships or minimum air change rates.

Exception: The following individual zones or entire air distribution systems are exempted from the requirement for VAV control:

1. *Zones* or supply air systems where not less than 75 percent of the energy for reheating or for providing warm air in mixing systems is provided from a site-recovered, including condenser heat, or site-solar energy source.
2. Systems that prevent reheating, recooling, mixing or simultaneous supply of air that has been previously cooled, either mechanically or through the use of economizer systems, and air that has been previously mechanically heated.

C403.6.2 Single-duct VAV systems, terminal devices. Single-duct VAV systems shall use terminal devices capable of and configured to reduce the supply of primary supply air before reheating or recooling takes place.

C403.6.3 Dual-duct and mixing VAV systems, terminal devices. Systems that have one warm air duct and one cool air duct shall use terminal devices that are configured to reduce the flow from one duct to a minimum before mixing of air from the other duct takes place.

C403.6.4 Single-fan dual-duct and mixing VAV systems, economizers. Individual dual-duct or mixing heating and cooling systems with a single fan and with total capacities greater than 90,000 Btu/h [(26.4 kW) 7.5 tons] shall not be

equipped with air economizers.

C403.6.5 Supply-air temperature reset controls. Multiple-zone HVAC systems shall include controls that are capable of and configured to automatically reset the supply-air temperature in response to representative building loads, or to outdoor air temperature. The controls shall be configured to reset the supply air temperature not less than 25 percent of the difference between the design supply-air temperature and the design room air temperature. Controls that adjust the reset based on zone humidity are allowed in Climate Zones 0B, 1B, 2B, 3B, 3C and 4 through 8. HVAC zones that are expected to experience relatively constant loads shall have maximum airflow designed to accommodate the fully reset supply-air temperature.

Exceptions:

1. Systems that prevent reheating, recooling or mixing of heated and cooled supply air.
2. Seventy-five percent of the energy for reheating is from site-recovered or site-solar energy sources.
3. Systems in Climate Zones 0A, 1A and 3A with less than 3,000 cfm (1500 L/s) of design outside air.
4. Systems in Climate Zone 2A with less than 10,000 cfm (5000 L/s) of design outside air.
5. Systems in Climate Zones 0A, 1A, 2A and 3A with not less than 80 percent outside air and employing exhaust air energy recovery complying with Section C403.7.4.

C403.6.5.1 Dehumidification control interaction. In Climate Zones 0A, 1A, 2A and 3A, the system design shall allow supply-air temperature reset while dehumidification is provided. When dehumidification control is active, air economizers shall be locked out.

C403.6.6 Multiple-zone VAV system ventilation optimization control. Multiple-zone VAV systems with direct digital control of individual zone boxes reporting to a central control panel shall have automatic controls configured to reduce outdoor air intake flow below design rates in response to changes in system *ventilation* efficiency (E_v) as defined by the *International Mechanical Code.*

Exceptions:

1. VAV systems with zonal transfer fans that recirculate air from other zones without directly mixing it with outdoor air, dual-duct dual-fan VAV systems, and VAV systems with fanpowered terminal units.
2. Systems where total design exhaust airflow is more than 70 percent of total design outdoor air intake flow requirements.

C403.6.7 Parallel-flow fan-powered VAV air terminal control. Parallel-flow fan-powered VAV air terminals shall have automatic controls configured to:

1. Turn off the terminal fan except when space heating is required or where required for ventilation.
2. Turn on the terminal fan as the first stage of heating before the heating coil is activated.
3. During heating for warmup or setback temperature control, either:
    3.1. Operate the terminal fan and heating coil without primary air.
    3.2. Reverse the terminal damper logic and provide heating from the central air handler by primary air.

C403.6.8 Setpoints for direct digital control. For systems with direct digital control of individual zones reporting to the central control panel, the static pressure setpoint shall be reset based on the *zone* requiring the most pressure. In such case, the setpoint is reset lower until one *zone* damper is nearly wide open. The direct digital controls shall be capable of monitoring zone damper positions or shall have an alternative method of indicating the need for static pressure that is configured to provide all of the following:

1. Automatic detection of any *zone* that excessively drives the reset logic.
2. Generation of an alarm to the system operational location.
3. Allowance for an operator to readily remove one or more *zones* from the reset algorithm.

C403.6.9 Static pressure sensor location. Static pressure sensors used to control VAV fans shall be located such that the controller setpoint is not greater than 1.2 inches w.c. (299 Pa). Where this results in one or more sensors being located downstream of major duct splits, not less than one sensor shall be located on each major branch to ensure that static pressure can be maintained in each branch.

C403.7 Ventilation and exhaust systems. In addition to other requirements of Section C403 applicable to the provision of ventilation air or the exhaust of air, ventilation and exhaust systems shall be in accordance with Sections C403.7.1 through C403.7.7.

C403.7.1 Demand control ventilation. Demand control ventilation (DCV) shall be provided for all single-zone systems

required to comply with Sections C403.5 through C403.5.3 and spaces larger than 500 square feet (46.5 m^2) and with an average occupant load of 15 people or greater per 1,000 square feet (93 m^2) of floor area, as established in Table 403.3.1.1 of the *International Mechanical Code*, and served by systems with one or more of the following:

1. An air-side economizer.
2. Automatic modulating control of the outdoor air damper.
3. A design outdoor airflow greater than 3,000 cfm (1416 L/s).

Exceptions:

1. Systems with energy recovery complying with Section C403.7.4.2.
2. Multiple-zone systems without direct digital control of individual zones communicating with a central control panel.
3. Multiple-zone systems with a design outdoor airflow less than 750 cfm (354 L/s).
4. Spaces where more than 75 percent of the space design outdoor airflow is required for makeup air that is exhausted from the space or transfer air that is required for makeup air that is exhausted from other spaces.
5. Spaces with one of the following occupancy classifications as defined in Table 403.3.1.1 of the *International Mechanical Code*: correctional cells, education laboratories, barber, beauty and nail salons, and bowling alley seating areas.

C403.7.2 Enclosed parking garage ventilation controls. Enclosed parking garages used for storing or handling automobiles operating under their own power shall employ carbon monoxide detectors applied in conjunction with nitrogen dioxide detectors and automatic controls configured to stage fans or modulate fan average airflow rates to 50 percent or less of design capacity, or intermittently operate fans less than 20 percent of the occupied time or as required to maintain acceptable contaminant levels in accordance with *International Mechanical Code* provisions. Failure of contamination-sensing devices shall cause the exhaust fans to operate continuously at design airflow.

Exceptions:

1. Garages with a total exhaust capacity less than 8,000 cfm (3,755 L/s) with ventilation systems that do not utilize heating or mechanical cooling.
2. Garages that have a garage area to ventilation system motor nameplate power ratio that exceeds 1,125 cfm/hp (710 L/s/kW) and do not utilize heating or mechanical cooling.

C403.7.3 Ventilation air heating control. Units that provide ventilation air to multiple zones and operate in conjunction with zone heating and cooling systems shall not use heating or heat recovery to warm supply air to a temperature greater than 60°F (16°C) when representative building loads or outdoor air temperatures indicate that the majority of zones require cooling.

C403.7.4 Energy recovery systems. Energy recovery ventilation systems shall be provided as specified in either Section C403.7.4.1 or C403.7.4.2, as applicable.

C403.7.4.1 Nontransient dwelling units. Nontransient dwelling units shall be provided with outdoor air energy recovery ventilation systems with an enthalpy recovery ratio of not less than 50 percent at cooling design condition and not less than 60 percent at heating design condition.

Exceptions:

1. Nontransient dwelling units in Climate Zone 3C.
2. Nontransient dwelling units with not more than 500 square feet (46 m^2) of *conditioned floor area* in Climate Zones 0, 1, 2, 3, 4C and 5C.
3. Enthalpy recovery ratio requirements at heating design condition in Climate Zones 0, 1 and 2.
4. Enthalpy recovery ratio requirements at cooling design condition in Climate Zones 4, 5, 6, 7 and 8.

C403.7.4.2 Spaces other than nontransient dwelling units. Where the supply airflow rate of a fan system serving a space other than a nontransient dwelling unit exceeds the values specified in Tables C403.7.4.2(1) and C403.7.4.2(2), the system shall include an energy recovery system. The energy recovery system shall provide an enthalpy recovery ratio of not less than 50 percent at design conditions. Where an air economizer is required, the energy recovery system shall include a bypass or controls that permit operation of the economizer as required by Section C403.5.

Exception: An energy recovery ventilation system shall not be required in any of the following conditions:

1. Where energy recovery systems are prohibited by the *International Mechanical Code*.
2. Laboratory fume hood systems that include not fewer than one of the following features:
    2.1. Variable-air-volume hood exhaust and room supply systems configured to reduce exhaust and makeup air volume to 50 percent or less of design values.

2.2. Direct makeup (auxiliary) air supply equal to or greater than 75 percent of the exhaust rate, heated not warmer than 2°F (1.1°C) above room setpoint, cooled to not cooler than 3°F (1.7°C) below room setpoint, with no humidification added, and no simultaneous heating and cooling used for dehumidification control.

3. Systems serving spaces that are heated to less than 60°F (15.5°C) and that are not cooled.
4. Where more than 60 percent of the outdoor heating energy is provided from site-recovered or site-solar energy.
5. Enthalpy recovery ratio requirements at heating design condition in *Climate Zones* 1 and 2.
6. Enthalpy recovery ratio requirements at cooling design condition in *Climate Zones* 3C, 4C, 5B, 5C, 6B, 7 and 8.
7. Systems requiring dehumidification that employ energy recovery in series with the cooling coil.
8. Where the largest source of air exhausted at a single location at the building exterior is less than 75 percent of the design *outdoor air* flow rate.
9. Systems expected to operate less than 20 hours per week at the *outdoor air* percentage covered by Table C403.7.4.2(1).
10. Systems exhausting toxic, flammable, paint or corrosive fumes or dust.
11. Commercial kitchen hoods used for collecting and removing grease vapors and smoke.

C403.7.5 Kitchen exhaust systems. Replacement air introduced directly into the exhaust hood cavity shall not be greater than 10 percent of the hood exhaust airflow rate. Conditioned supply air delivered to any space shall not exceed the greater of the following:

1. The ventilation rate required to meet the space heating or cooling load.
2. The hood exhaust flow minus the available transfer air from adjacent space where available transfer air is considered to be that portion of outdoor ventilation air not required to satisfy other exhaust needs, such as restrooms, and not required to maintain pressurization of adjacent spaces.

Where total kitchen hood exhaust airflow rate is greater than 5,000 cfm (2360 L/s), each hood shall be a factory-built commercial exhaust hood listed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory in compliance with UL 710. Each hood shall have a maximum exhaust rate as specified in Table C403.7.5 and shall comply with one of the following:

1. Not less than 50 percent of all replacement air shall be transfer air that would otherwise be exhausted.
2. Demand ventilation systems on not less than 75 percent of the exhaust air that are configured to provide not less than a 50-percent reduction in exhaust and replacement air system airflow rates, including controls necessary to modulate airflow in response to appliance operation and to maintain full capture and containment of smoke, effluent and combustion products during cooking and idle.
3. Listed energy recovery devices with a sensible heat recovery effectiveness of not less than 40 percent on not less than 50 percent of the total exhaust airflow.

Where a single hood, or hood section, is installed over appliances with different duty ratings, the maximum allowable flow rate for the hood or hood section shall be based on the requirements for the highest appliance duty rating under the hood or hood section.

Exception: Where not less than 75 percent of all the replacement air is transfer air that would otherwise be exhausted.

TABLE C403.7.4.2(1)
ENERGY RECOVERY REQUIREMENT (Ventilation systems operating less than 8,000 hours per year)

CLIMATE ZONE	PERCENT (%) OUTDOOR AIR AT FULL DESIGN AIRFLOW RATE							
	≥ 10% and < 20%	≥ 20% and < 30%	≥ 30% and < 40%	≥ 40% and < 50%	≥ 50% and < 60%	≥ 60% and < 70%	≥ 70% and < 80%	≥ 80%
	Design Supply Fan Airflow Rate (cfm)							
3B, 3C, 4B, 4C, 5B	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR
0B, 1B, 2B, 5C	NR	NR	NR	NR	≥ 26,000	≥ 12,000	≥ 5,000	≥ 4,000
6B	≥ 28,000	≥ 26,5000	≥ 11,000	≥ 5,500	≥ 4,500	≥ 3,500	≥ 2,500	≥ 1,500

0A, 1A, 2A, 3A, 4A, 5A, 6A	≥ 26,000	≥ 16,000	≥ 5,500	≥ 4,500	≥ 3,500	≥ 2,000	≥ 1,000	> 120
7, 8	≥ 4,500	≥ 4,000	≥ 2,500	≥ 1,000	> 140	> 120	> 100	> 80

For SI: 1 cfm = 0.4719 L/s.
NR = Not Required.

TABLE C403.7.4.2(2)
ENERGY RECOVERY REQUIREMENT (Ventilation systems operating not less than 8,000 hours per year)

CLIMATE ZONE	PERCENT (%) OUTDOOR AIR AT FULL DESIGN AIRFLOW RATE							
	≥ 10% and < 20%	≥ 20% and < 30%	≥ 30% and < 40%	≥ 40% and < 50%	≥ 50% and < 60%	≥ 60% and < 70%	≥ 70% and < 80%	≥ 80%
	Design Supply Fan Airflow Rate (cfm)							
3C	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR
0B, 1B, 2B, 3B, 4C, 5C	NR	≥ 19,500	≥ 9,000	≥ 5,000	≥ 4,000	≥ 3,000	≥ 1,500	≥ 120
0A, 1A, 2A, 3A, 4B, 5B	≥ 2,500	≥ 2,000	≥ 1,000	≥ 500	≥ 140	≥ 120	≥ 100	≥ 80
4A, 5A, 6A, 6B, 7, 8	≥ 200	≥ 130	≥ 100	≥ 80	≥ 70	≥ 60	≥ 50	≥ 40

For SI: 1 cfm = 0.4719 L/s.
NR = Not Required.

TABLE C403.7.5
MAXIMUM NET EXHAUST FLOW RATE, CFM PER LINEAR FOOT OF HOOD LENGTH

TYPE OF HOOD	LIGHT-DUTY EQUIPMENT	MEDIUM-DUTY EQUIPMENT	HEAVY-DUTY EQUIPMENT	EXTRA-HEAVY-DUTY EQUIPMENT
Wall-mounted canopy	140	210	280	385
Single island	280	350	420	490
Double island (per side)	175	210	280	385
Eyebrow	175	175	NA	NA
Backshelf/Pass-over	210	210	280	NA

For SI: 1 cfm = 0.4719 L/s; 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

NA = Not Allowed

C403.7.6 Automatic control of HVAC systems serving guestrooms. In Group R-1 buildings containing more than 50 guestrooms, each guestroom shall be provided with controls complying with the provisions of Sections C403.7.6.1 and C403.7.6.2. Card key controls comply with these requirements.

C403.7.6.1 Temperature setpoint controls. Controls shall be provided on each HVAC system that are capable of and configured with three modes of temperature control.

1. When the guestroom is rented but unoccupied, the controls shall automatically raise the cooling setpoint and lower the heating setpoint by not less than 4°F (2°C) from the occupant setpoint within 30 minutes after the occupants have left the guestroom.
2. When the guestroom is unrented and unoccupied, the controls shall automatically raise the cooling setpoint to not lower than 80°F (27°C) and lower the heating setpoint to not higher than 60°F (16°C). Unrented and unoccupied guestroom mode shall be initiated within 16 hours of the guestroom being continuously occupied or where a *networked guestroom control system* indicates that the guestroom is unrented and the guestroom is unoccupied for more than 20 minutes. A *networked guestroom control system* that is capable of returning the thermostat setpoints to default occupied setpoints 60 minutes prior to the time a guestroom is scheduled to be occupied is not precluded by this section. Cooling that is capable of limiting relative humidity with a setpoint not lower than 65-

percent relative humidity during unoccupied periods is not precluded by this section.

3. When the guestroom is occupied, HVAC setpoints shall return to their occupied setpoints once occupancy is sensed.

C403.7.6.2 Ventilation controls. Controls shall be provided on each HVAC system that are capable of and configured to automatically turn off the ventilation and exhaust fans within 20 minutes of the occupants leaving the guestroom, or *isolation devices* shall be provided to each guestroom that are capable of automatically shutting off the supply of outdoor air to and exhaust air from the guestroom.

Exception: Guestroom ventilation systems are not precluded from having an automatic daily pre-occupancy purge cycle that provides daily outdoor air ventilation during unrented periods at the design ventilation rate for 60 minutes, or at a rate and duration equivalent to one air change.

C403.7.7 Shutoff dampers. Outdoor air intake and exhaust openings and stairway and shaft vents shall be provided with Class I motorized dampers. The dampers shall have an air leakage rate not greater than 4 cfm/ft^2 (20.3 L/s × m^2) of damper surface area at 1.0 inch watergauge (249 Pa) and shall be labeled by an *approved agency* when tested in accordance with AMCA 500D for such purpose.

Outdoor air intake and exhaust dampers shall be installed with automatic controls configured to close when the systems or spaces served are not in use or during unoccupied period warm-up and setback operation, unless the systems served require outdoor or exhaust air in accordance with the *International Mechanical Code* or the dampers are opened to provide intentional economizer cooling.

Stairway and shaft vent dampers shall be installed with automatic controls configured to open upon the activation of any fire alarm initiating device of the building's fire alarm system or the interruption of power to the damper.

Exception: Nonmotorized gravity dampers shall be an alternative to motorized dampers for exhaust and relief openings as follows:

1. In buildings less than three stories in height above grade plane.
2. In buildings of any height located in *Climate Zones* 0, 1, 2 or 3.
3. Where the design exhaust capacity is not greater than 300 cfm (142 L/s).

Nonmotorized gravity dampers shall have an air leakage rate not greater than 20 cfm/ft^2 (101.6 L/s × m^2) where not less than 24 inches (610 mm) in either dimension and 40 cfm/ft^2 (203.2 L/s × m^2) where less than 24 inches (610 mm) in either dimension. The rate of air leakage shall be determined at 1.0 inch water gauge (249 Pa) when tested in accordance with AMCA 500D for such purpose. The dampers shall be labeled by an *approved agency*.

C403.8 Fans and fan controls. Fans in HVAC systems shall comply with Sections C403.8.1 through C403.8.6.1.

C403.8.1 Allowable fan horsepower. Each HVAC system having a total fan system motor nameplate horsepower exceeding 5 hp (3.7 kW) at fan system design conditions shall not exceed the allowable *fan system motor nameplate hp* (Option 1) or *fan system bhp* (Option 2) shown in Table C403.8.1(1). This includes supply fans, exhaust fans, return/relief fans, and fan-powered terminal units associated with systems providing heating or cooling capability. Single-zone variable air volume systems shall comply with the constant volume fan power limitation.

Exceptions:

1. Hospital, vivarium and laboratory systems that utilize flow control devices on exhaust or return to maintain space pressure relationships necessary for occupant health and safety or environmental control shall be permitted to use variable volume fan power limitation.
2. Individual exhaust fans with motor nameplate horsepower of 1 hp (0.746 kW) or less are exempt from the allowable fan horsepower requirement.

C403.8.2 Motor nameplate horsepower. For each fan, the fan brake horsepower (bhp) shall be indicated on the construction documents and the selected motor shall be not larger than the first available motor size greater than the following:

1. For fans less than 6 bhp (4476 W), 1.5 times the fan brake horsepower.
2. For fans 6 bhp (4476 W) and larger, 1.3 times the fan brake horsepower.

Exceptions:

1. Fans equipped with electronic speed control devices to vary the fan airflow as a function of load.
2. Fans with a fan nameplate electrical input power of less than 0.89 kW.
3. Systems complying with Section C403.8.1 fan system motor nameplate hp (Option 1).
4. Fans with motor nameplate horsepower less than 1 hp (746 W).

TABLE C403.8.1(1)
FAN POWER LIMITATION

	LIMIT	CONSTANT VOLUME	VARIABLE VOLUME
Option 1: Fan system motor nameplate hp	Allowable nameplate motor hp	$hp \leq CFM_S \times 0.0011$	$hp \leq CFM_S \times 0.0015$
Option 2: Fan system bhp	Allowable fan system bhp	$bhp \leq CFM_S \times 0.00094 + A$	$bhp \leq CFM_S \times 0.0013 + A$

For SI: 1 bhp = 735.5 W, 1 hp = 745.5 W, 1 cfm = 0.4719 L/s.
where:
CFM_S = The maximum design supply airflow rate to conditioned spaces served by the system in cubic feet per minute. hp = The maximum combined motor nameplate horsepower.
bhp = The maximum combined fan brake horsepower.
A = Sum of [$PD \times CFM_D / 4131$].
where:
PD = Each applicable pressure drop adjustment from Table C403.8.1(2) in. w.c.
CFM_D = The design airflow through each applicable device from Table C403.8.1(2) in cubic feet per minute.

TABLE C403.8.1(2)
FAN POWER LIMITATION PRESSURE DROP ADJUSTMENT

DEVICE	ADJUSTMENT
Credits	
Return air or exhaust systems required by code or accreditation standards to be fully ducted, or systems required to maintain air pressure differentials between adjacent rooms	0.5 inch w.c. (2.15 inches w.c. for laboratory and vivarium systems)
Return and exhaust airflow control devices	0.5 inch w.c.
Exhaust filters, scrubbers or other exhaust treatment	The pressure drop of device calculated at fan system design condition
Particulate filtration credit: MERV 9 thru 12	0.5 inch w.c.
Particulate filtration credit: MERV 13 thru 15	0.9 inch w.c.
Particulate filtration credit: MERV 16 and greater and electronically enhanced filters	Pressure drop calculated at 2 times the clean filter pressure drop at fan system design condition.
Carbon and other gas-phase air cleaners	Clean filter pressure drop at fan system design condition.
Biosafety cabinet	Pressure drop of device at fan system design condition.
Energy recovery device, other than coil runaround loop	For each airstream, (2.2 × energy recovery effectiveness 0.5) inch w.c.
Coil runaround loop	0.6 inch w.c. for each airstream.
Evaporative humidifier/cooler in series with another cooling coil	Pressure drop of device at fan system design conditions.
Sound attenuation section (fans serving spaces with design background noise goals below NC35)	0.15 inch w.c.
Exhaust system serving fume hoods	0.35 inch w.c.
Laboratory and vivarium exhaust systems in high-rise buildings	0.25 inch w.c./100 feet of vertical duct exceeding 75 feet.
Deductions	
Systems without central cooling device	0.6 inch w.c.
Systems without central heating device	0.3 inch w.c.
Systems with central electric resistance heat	0.2 inch w.c.

For SI: 1 inch w.c. = 249 Pa, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.
w.c. = Water Column, NC = Noise Criterion.

C403.8.3 Fan efficiency. Each fan and fan array shall have a fan energy index (FEI) of not less than 1.00 at the design point of operation, as determined in accordance with AMCA 208 by an *approved* independent testing laboratory and labeled by the manufacturer. Each fan and fan array used for a variable-air-volume system shall have an FEI of not less than 0.95 at the design

point of operation, as determined in accordance with AMCA 208 by an approved independent testing laboratory and labeled by the manufacturer. The FEI for fan arrays shall be calculated in accordance with AMCA 208 Annex C.

Exceptions: The following fans are not required to have a fan energy index:

1. Fans that are not embedded fans with motor nameplate horsepower of less than 1.0 hp (0.75 kW) or with a nameplate electrical input power of less than 0.89 kW.
2. Embedded fans that have a motor nameplate horsepower of 5 hp (3.7 kW) or less, or with a fan system electrical input power of 4.1 kW or less.
3. Multiple fans operated in series or parallel as the functional equivalent of a single fan that have a combined motor nameplate horsepower of 5 hp (3.7 kW) or less or with a fan system electrical input power of 4.1 kW or less.
4. Fans that are part of equipment covered in Section C403.3.2.
5. Fans included in an equipment package certified by an *approved agency* for air or energy performance.
6. Ceiling fans, which are defined as nonportable devices suspended from a ceiling or overhead structure for circulating air via the rotation of the blades.
7. Fans used for moving gases at temperatures above 425°F (250°C).
8. Fans used for operation in explosive atmospheres.
9. Reversible fans used for tunnel ventilation.
10. Fans that are intended to operate only during emergency conditions.
11. Fans outside the scope of AMCA 208.

C403.8.4 Fractional hp fan motors. Motors for fans that are not less than $^1/_{12}$ hp (0.062 kW) and less than 1 hp (0.746 kW) shall be electronically commutated motors or shall have a minimum motor efficiency of 70 percent, rated in accordance with DOE 10 CFR 431. These motors shall have the means to adjust motor speed for either balancing or remote control. The use of belt-driven fans to sheave adjustments for airflow balancing instead of a varying motor speed shall be permitted.

Exceptions: The following motors are not required to comply with this section

1. Motors in the airstream within fan coils and terminal units that only provide heating to the space served.
2. Motors in space-conditioning equipment that comply with Section C403.3.2 or Sections C403.8.1. through C403.8.3.
3. Motors that comply with Section C405.8.

C403.8.5 Low-capacity ventilation fans. Mechanical ventilation system fans with motors less than $^1/_{12}$ hp (0.062 kW) in capacity shall meet the efficacy requirements of Table C403.8.5 at one or more rating points.

Exceptions:

1. Where ventilation fans are a component of a listed heating or cooling appliance.
2. Dryer exhaust duct power ventilators, domestic range hoods and domestic range booster fans that operate intermittently.

TABLE C403.8.5
LOW-CAPACITY VENTILATION FAN EFFICACY[a]

FAN LOCATION	AIRFLOW RATE MINIMUM (CFM)	MINIMUM EFFICACY (CFM/WATT)	AIRFLOW RATE MAXIMUM (CFM)
HRV or ERV	Any	1.2 cfm/watt	Any
In-line fan	Any	3.8 cfm/watt	Any
Bathroom, utility room	10	2.8 cfm/watt	< 90
Bathroom, utility room	90	3.5 cfm/watt	Any

For SI: 1 cfm/ft = 47.82 W.

1. Airflow shall be tested in accordance with HVI 916 and listed. Efficacy shall be listed or shall be derived from listed power and airflow. Fan efficacy for fully ducted HRV, ERV, balanced and in-line fans shall be determined at a static pressure not less than 0.2 inch w.c. Fan efficacy for ducted range hoods, bathroom and utility room fans shall be determined at a static pressure not less than 0.1 inch w.c.

C403.8.6 Fan control. Controls shall be provided for fans in accordance with Section C403.8.6.1 and as required for specific systems provided in Section C403.

C403.8.6.1 Fan airflow control. Each cooling system listed in Table C403.8.6.1 shall be designed to vary the indoor fan airflow as a function of load and shall comply with the following requirements:

1. Direct expansion (DX) and chilled water cooling units that control the capacity of the mechanical cooling directly based on space temperature shall have not fewer than two stages of fan control. Low or minimum speed shall not be greater than 66 percent of full speed. At low or minimum speed, the fan system shall draw not more than 40 percent of the fan power at full fan speed. Low or minimum speed shall be used during periods of low cooling load and ventilation-only operation.
2. Other units including DX cooling units and chilled water units that control the space temperature by modulating the airflow to the space shall have modulating fan control. Minimum speed shall be not greater than 50 percent of full speed. At minimum speed the fan system shall draw not more than 30 percent of the power at full fan speed. Low or minimum speed shall be used during periods of low cooling load and ventilation-only operation.
3. Units that include an air-side economizer in accordance with Section C403.5 shall have not fewer than two speeds of fan control during economizer operation.

Exceptions:

1. Modulating fan control is not required for chilled water and evaporative cooling units with fan motors of less than 1 hp (0.746 kW) where the units are not used to provide *ventilation air* and the indoor fan cycles with the load.
2. Where the volume of outdoor air required to comply with the ventilation requirements of the *International Mechanical Code* at low speed exceeds the air that would be delivered at the speed defined in Section C403.8.6, the minimum speed shall be selected to provide the required *ventilation air*.

TABLE C403.8.6.1 COOLING SYSTEMS

COOLING SYSTEM TYPE	FAN MOTOR SIZE	MECHANICAL COOLING CAPACITY
DX cooling	Any	≥ 65,000 Btu/h
Chilled water and evaporative cooling	≥ 1/4 hp	Any

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W; 1 hp = 0.746 kW.

C403.9 Large-diameter ceiling fans. Where provided, large-diameter ceiling fans shall be tested and labeled in accordance with AMCA 230.

C403.10 Heat rejection equipment. Heat rejection equipment, including air-cooled condensers, dry coolers, opencircuit cooling towers, closed-circuit cooling towers and evaporative condensers, shall comply with this section.

Exception: Heat rejection devices where energy usage is included in the equipment efficiency ratings listed in Tables C403.3.2(6) and C403.3.2(7).

C403.10.1 Fan speed control. Each fan system powered by an individual motor or array of motors with connected power, including the motor service factor, totaling 5 hp (3.7 kW) or more shall have controls and devices configured to automatically modulate the fan speed to control the leaving fluid temperature or condensing temperature and pressure of the heat rejection device. Fan motor power input shall be not more than 30 percent of design wattage at 50 percent of the design airflow.

Exceptions:

1. Fans serving multiple refrigerant or fluid cooling circuits.
2. Condenser fans serving flooded condensers.

C403.10.2 Multiple-cell heat rejection equipment. Multiple-cell heat rejection equipment with variable speed fan drives shall be controlled to operate the maximum number of fans allowed that comply with the manufacturer's requirements for all system components and so that all fans operate at the same fan speed required for the instantaneous cooling duty, as opposed to staged on and off operation. The minimum fan speed shall be the minimum allowable speed of the fan drive system in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

C403.10.3 Limitation on centrifugal fan open-circuit cooling towers. Centrifugal fan open-circuit cooling towers with a combined rated capacity of 1,100 gpm (4164 L/m) or greater at 95°F (35°C) condenser water return, 85°F (29°C) condenser

water supply, and 75°F (24°C) outdoor air wet-bulb temperature shall meet the energy efficiency requirement for axial fan open-circuit cooling towers listed in Table C403.3.2(8).

Exception: Centrifugal open-circuit cooling towers that are designed with inlet or discharge ducts or require external sound attenuation.

C403.10.4 Tower flow turndown. Open-circuit cooling towers used on water-cooled chiller systems that are configured with multiple- or variable-speed condenser water pumps shall be designed so that all open-circuit cooling tower cells can be run in parallel with the larger of the flow that is produced by the smallest pump at its minimum expected flow rate or at 50 percent of the design flow for the cell.

C403.10.5 Heat recovery for service water heating. Condenser heat recovery shall be installed for heating or reheating of service hot water provided that the facility operates 24 hours a day, the total installed heat capacity of water-cooled systems exceeds 6,000,000 Btu/hr (1758 kW) of heat rejection, and the design service water heating load exceeds 1,000,000 Btu/h (293 kW).

The required heat recovery system shall have the capacity to provide the smaller of the following:

1. Sixty percent of the peak heat rejection load at design conditions.
2. The preheating required to raise the peak service hot water draw to 85°F (29°C).

Exceptions:

1. Facilities that employ condenser heat recovery for space heating or reheat purposes with a heat recovery design exceeding 30 percent of the peak water-cooled condenser load at design conditions.
2. Facilities that provide 60 percent of their service water heating from site solar or site recovered energy or from other sources.

C403.11 Refrigeration equipment performance. Refrigeration equipment performance shall be determined in accordance with Sections C403.11.1 and C403.11.2 for commercial refrigerators, freezers, refrigerator-freezers, walk-in coolers, walk-in freezers and refrigeration equipment. The energy use shall be verified through certification under an *approved* certification program or, where a certification program does not exist, the energy use shall be supported by data furnished by the equipment manufacturer.

Exception: Walk-in coolers and walk-in freezers regulated under federal law in accordance with Subpart R of DOE 10 CFR 431.

C403.11.1 Commercial refrigerators, refrigerator-freezers and refrigeration. Refrigeration equipment, defined in DOE 10 CFR Part 431.62, shall have an energy use in kWh/day not greater than the values of Table C403.11.1 when tested and rated in accordance with AHRI Standard 1200.

C403.11.2 Walk-in coolers and walk-in freezers. Walk-in cooler and walk-in freezer refrigeration systems, except for walk-in process cooling refrigeration systems as defined in DOE 10 CFR 431.302, shall meet the requirements of Tables C403.11.2.1(1), C403.11.2.1(2), and C403.11.2.1(3).

C403.11.2.1 Performance standards. *Walk-in coolers* and *walk-in freezers* shall meet the requirements of Tables C403.11.2.1(1), C403.11.2.1(2) and C403.11.2.1(3).

TABLE C403.11.2.1(1)
WALK-IN COOLER AND FREEZER DISPLAY DOOR EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[a]

CLASS DESCRIPTOR	CLASS	MAXIMUM ENERGY CONSUMPTION (kWh/day)[a]
Display door, medium temperature	DD, M	$0.04 \times A_{dd} + 0.41$
Display door, low temperature	DD, L	$0.15 \times A_{dd} + 0.29$

a. A_{dd} is the surface area of the display door.

TABLE C403.11.2.1(2)
WALK-IN COOLER AND FREEZER NONDISPLAY DOOR EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS[a]

CLASS DESCRIPTOR	CLASS	MAXIMUM ENERGY CONSUMPTION (kWh/day)[a]
Passage door, medium temperature	PD, M	$0.05 \times A_{nd} + 1.7$
Passage door, low temperature	PD, L	$0.14 \times A_{nd} + 4.8$
Freight door, medium temperature	FD, M	$0.04 \times A_{nd} + 1.9$
Freight door, low temperature	FD, L	$0.12 \times A_{nd} + 5.6$

a. A_{nd} is the surface area of the nondisplay door.

TABLE C403.11.2.1(3)
WALK-IN COOLER AND FREEZER REFRIGERATION SYSTEM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS

CLASS DESCRIPTOR	CLASS	MINIMUM ANNUAL WALK-IN ENERGY FACTOR AWEF (Btu/W-h)[a]	TEST PROCEDURE
Dedicated condensing, medium temperature, indoor system	DC.M.I	5.61	AHRI 1250
Dedicated condensing, medium temperature, outdoor system	DC.M.O	7.60	
Dedicated condensing, low temperature, indoor system, net capacity (q_{net}) < 6,500 Btu/h	DC.L.I, < 6,500	$9.091 \times 10^{-5} \times q_{net} + 1.81$	
Dedicated condensing, low temperature, indoor system, net capacity (q_{net}) ≥ 6,500 Btu/h	DC.L.I, ≥ 6,500	2.40	
Dedicated condensing, low temperature, outdoor system, net capacity (q_{net}) < 6,500 Btu/h	DC.L.O, < 6,500	$6.522 \times 10^{-5} \times q_{net} + 2.73$	
Dedicated condensing, low temperature, outdoor system, net capacity (q_{net}) ≥ 6,500 Btu/h	DC.L.O, ≥ 6,500	3.15	
Unit cooler, medium	UC.M	9.00	
Unit cooler, low temperature, net capacity (q_{net}) < 15,500 Btu/h	UC.L, < 15,500	$1.575 \times 10^{-5} \times q_{net} + 3.91$	
Unit cooler, low temperature, net capacity (q_{net}) ≥ 15,500 Btu/h	UC.L, ≥ 15,500	4.15	

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.
a. q_{net} is net capacity (Btu/h) as determined in accordance with AHRI 1250.

TABLE C403.11.1
MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS: COMMERCIAL REFRIGERATORS AND FREEZERS AND REFRIGERATION

EQUIPMENT CATEGORY	CONDENSING UNIT CONFIGURATION	EQUIPMENT FAMILY	RATING TEMP., °F	OPERATING TEMP., °F	EQUIPMENT CLASSIFICATION[a, c]	MAXIMUM DAILY ENERGY CONSUMPTION, kWh/day[d, e]	TEST STANDARD
Remote condensing commercial refrigerators and commercial freezers	Remote (RC)	Vertical open (VOP)	38 (M)	≥ 32	VOP.RC.M	0.64 × TDA + 4.07	AHRI 1200
			0 (L)	< 32	VOP.RC.L	2.20 × TDA + 6.85	
		Semivertical open (SVO)	38 (M)	≥ 32	SVO.RC.M	0.66 × TDA + 3.18	
			0 (L)	< 32	SVO.RC.L	2.20 × TDA + 6.85	
		Horizontal open (HZO)	38 (M)	≥ 32	HZO.RC.M	0.35 × TDA + 2.88	
			0 (L)	< 32	HZO.RC.L	0.55 × TDA + 6.88	
		Vertical closed transparent (VCT)	38 (M)	≥ 32	VCT.RC.M	0.15 × TDA + 1.95	
			0 (L)	< 32	VCT.RC.L	0.49 × TDA + 2.61	
		Horizontal closed transparent (HCT)	38 (M)	≥ 32	HCT.RC.M	0.16 × TDA + 0.13	
			0 (L)	< 32	HCT.RC.L	0.34 × TDA + 0.26	
		Vertical closed solid (VCS)	38 (M)	≥ 32	VCS.RC.M	0.10 × V + 0.26	
			0 (L)	< 32	VCS.RC.L	0.21 × V + 0.54	
		Horizontal closed solid (HCS)	38 (M)	≥ 32	HCS.RC.M	0.10 × V + 0.26	
			0 (L)	< 32	HCS.RC.L	0.21 × V + 0.54	
		Service over counter (SOC)	38 (M)	≥ 32	SOC.RC.M	0.44 × TDA + 0.11	
			0 (L)	< 32	SOC.RC.L	0.93 × TDA + 0.22	
Self-contained commercial refrigerators and commercial freezers with and without doors	Self-contained (SC)	Vertical open (VOP)	38 (M)	≥ 32	VOP.SC.M	1.69 × TDA + 4.71	AHRI 1200
			0 (L)	< 32	VOP.SC.L	4.25 × TDA + 11.82	
		Semivertical open (SVO)	38 (M)	≥ 32	SVO.SC.M	1.70 × TDA + 4.59	
			0 (L)	< 32	SVO.SC.L	4.26 × TDA + 11.51	
		Horizontal open (HZO)	38 (M)	≥ 32	HZO.SC.M	0.72 × TDA + 5.55	
			0 (L)	< 32	HZO.RC.L	1.90 × TDA + 7.08	
		Vertical closed transparent (VCT)	38 (M)	≥ 32	VCT.SC.M	0.10 × V + 0.86	
			0 (L)	< 32	VCT.SC.L	0.29 × V + 2.95	
		Vertical closed solid (VCS)	38 (M)	≥ 32	VCS.SC.M	0.05 × V + 1.36	
			0 (L)	< 32	VCS.SC.L	0.22 × V + 1.38	
		Horizontal closed transparent (HCT)	38 (M)	≥ 32	HCT.SC.M	0.06 × V + 0.37	
			0 (L)	< 32	HCT.SC.L	0.08 × V + 1.23	
		Horizontal closed solid (HCS)	38 (M)	≥ 32	HCS.SC.M	0.05 × V + 0.91	
			0 (L)	< 32	HCS.SC.L	0.06 × V + 1.12	
		Service over counter (SOC)	38 (M)	≥ 32	SOC.SC.M	0.52 × TDA + 1.00	
			0 (L)	< 32	SOC.SC.L	1.10 × TDA + 2.10	

(continued)

TABLE C403.11.1—continued
MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS: COMMERCIAL REFRIGERATORS AND FREEZERS AND REFRIGERATION

For SI: 1 square foot = 0.0929 m², 1 cubic foot = 0.02832 m³, °C = (°F – 32)/1.8.

a. The meaning of the letters in this column is indicated in the columns to the left.
b. Ice cream freezer is defined in DOE 10 CFR 431.62 as a commercial freezer that is designed to operate at or below -5 °F and that the manufacturer designs, markets or intends for the storing, displaying or dispensing of ice cream.
c. Equipment class designations consist of a combination [in sequential order separated by periods (AAA).(BB).(C)] of the following:

- (AAA)—An equipment family code (VOP = vertical open, SVO = semivertical open, HZO = horizontal open, VCT = vertical closed transparent doors, VCS = vertical closed solid doors, HCT = horizontal closed transparent doors, HCS = horizontal closed solid doors, and SOC = service over counter);
- (BB)—An operating mode code (RC = remote condensing and SC = self-contained); and
- (C)—A rating temperature code [M = medium temperature (38°F), L = low temperature (0°F), or I = ice cream temperature (-15°F)].

- For example, “VOP.RC.M” refers to the “vertical open, remote condensing, medium temperature” equipment class.

d. V is the volume of the case (ft^3) as measured in AHRI 1200, Appendix C.

e. TDA is the total display area of the case (ft^2) as measured in AHRI 1200, Appendix D.

C403.11.3 Refrigeration systems. Refrigerated display cases, *walk-in coolers* or *walk-in freezers* that are served by remote compressors and remote condensers not located in a condensing unit, shall comply with Sections C403.11.3.1 and C403.11.3.2.

Exception: Systems where the working fluid in the refrigeration cycle goes through both subcritical and super-critical states (transcritical) or that use ammonia refrigerant are exempt.

C403.11.3.1 Condensers serving refrigeration systems. Fan-powered condensers shall comply with the following:

1. The design *saturated condensing temperatures* for air-cooled condensers shall not exceed the design dry-bulb temperature plus 10°F (5.6°C) for low-*temperature refrigeration systems*, and the design dry-bulb temperature plus 15°F (8°C) for *medium temperature refrigeration systems* where the *saturated condensing temperature* for blend refrigerants shall be determined using the average of liquid and vapor temperatures as converted from the condenser drain pressure.
2. Condenser fan motors that are less than 1 hp (0.75 kW) shall use electronically commutated motors, permanent split-capacitor-type motors or 3-phase motors.
3. Condenser fans for air-cooled condensers, evaporatively cooled condensers, air or watercooled fluid coolers or cooling towers shall reduce fan motor demand to not more than 30 percent of design wattage at 50 percent of design air volume, and incorporate one of the following continuous variable speed fan control approaches:
    3.1. Refrigeration system condenser control for air-cooled condensers shall use variable setpoint control logic to reset the condensing temperature setpoint in response to ambient dry-bulb temperature.
    3.2. Refrigeration system condenser control for evaporatively cooled condensers shall use variable setpoint control logic to reset the condensing temperature setpoint in response to ambient wetbulb temperature.
4. Multiple fan condensers shall be controlled in unison.
5. The minimum condensing temperature setpoint shall be not greater than 70°F (21°C).

C403.11.3.2 Compressor systems. Refrigeration compressor systems shall comply with the following:

1. Compressors and multiple-compressor system suction groups shall include control systems that use floating suction pressure control logic to reset the target suction pressure temperature based on the temperature requirements of the attached refrigeration display cases or walk-ins.

    Exception: Controls are not required for the following:

    1. Single-compressor systems that do not have variable capacity capability.
    2. Suction groups that have a design saturated suction temperature of 30°F (-1.1°C) or higher, suction groups that comprise the high stage of a two-stage or cascade system, or suction groups that primarily serve chillers for secondary cooling fluids.

2. Liquid subcooling shall be provided for all low temperature compressor systems with a design cooling capacity equal to or greater than 100,000 Btu (29.3 kW) with a design-saturated suction temperature of -10°F (-23°C) or lower. The sub-cooled liquid temperature shall be controlled at a maximum temperature setpoint of 50°F (10°C) at the exit of the subcooler using either compressor economizer (interstage) ports or a separate compressor suction group operating at a saturated suction temperature of 18°F (-7.8°C) or higher.
    2.1. Insulation for liquid lines with a fluid operating temperature less than 60°F (15.6°C) shall comply with Table C403.11.3.
3. Compressors that incorporate internal or external crankcase heaters shall provide a means to cycle the heaters off during compressor operation.

C403.12 Construction of HVAC system elements. Ducts, plenums, piping and other elements that are part of an HVAC system shall be constructed and insulated in accordance with Sections C403.12.1 through C403.12.3.1.

C403.12.1 Duct and plenum insulation and sealing. Supply and return air ducts and plenums shall be insulated with not less than R-8 insulation where located in unconditioned spaces and where located outside the building with not less than ~~R-8 insulation in *Climate Zones* 0 through 4 and not less than~~ R-12 insulation ~~in *Climate Zones* 5 through 8.~~ Ducts located underground beneath buildings shall be insulated as required in this section or have an equivalent thermal distribution efficiency. Underground ducts utilizing the thermal distribution efficiency method shall be *listed* and *labeled* to indicate the *R*-value equivalency. Where located within a building envelope assembly, the duct or plenum shall be separated from the building exterior or unconditioned or exempt spaces by not less than ~~R-8 insulation in *Climate Zones* 0 through 4 and~~

~~not less than~~ R-12 insulation ~~in *Climate Zones* 5 through 8.~~

Exceptions:

1. Where located within equipment.
2. Where the design temperature difference between the interior and exterior of the duct or plenum is not greater than 15°F (8°C).

Ducts, air handlers and filter boxes shall be sealed. Joints and seams shall comply with Section 603.9 of the *International Mechanical Code*.

C403.12.2 Duct construction. Ductwork shall be constructed and erected in accordance with the *International Mechanical Code*.

C403.12.2.1 Low-pressure duct systems. Longitudinal and transverse joints, seams and connections of supply and return ducts operating at a static pressure less than or equal to 2 inches water gauge (w.g.) (498 Pa) shall be securely fastened and sealed with welds, gaskets, mastics (adhesives), mas-tic-plus-embedded fabric systems or tapes installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Pressure classifications specific to the duct system shall be clearly indicated on the construction documents in accordance with the *International Mechanical Code*.

Exception: Locking-type longitudinal joints and seams, other than the snap-lock and button-lock types, need not be sealed as specified in this section.

C403.12.2.2 Medium-pressure duct systems. Ducts and plenums designed to operate at a static pressure greater than 2 inches water gauge (w.g.) (498 Pa) but less than 3 inches w.g. (747 Pa) shall be insulated and sealed in accordance with Section C403.12.1. Pressure classifications specific to the duct system shall be clearly indicated on the construction documents in accordance with the *International Mechanical Code.*

C403.12.2.3 High-pressure duct systems. Ducts and plenums designed to operate at static pressures equal to or greater than 3 inches water gauge (747 Pa) shall be insulated and sealed in accordance with Section C403.12.1. In addition, ducts and plenums shall be leak tested in accordance with the SMACNA HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual and shown to have a rate of air leakage (CL) less than or equal to 4.0 as determined in accordance with Equation 4-8.

$$CL = F/P^{0.65} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 4-8)}$$

where:

F = The measured leakage rate in cfm per 100 square feet (9.3 m^2) of duct surface.

P = The static pressure of the test.

Documentation shall be furnished demonstrating that representative sections totaling not less than 25 percent of the duct area have been tested and that all tested sections comply with the requirements of this section.

C403.12.3 Piping insulation. Piping serving as part of a heating or cooling system shall be thermally insulated in accordance with Table C403.12.3.

Exceptions:

1. Factory-installed piping within HVAC equipment tested and rated in accordance with a test procedure referenced by this code.
2. Factory-installed piping within room fan-coils and unit ventilators tested and rated according to AHRI 440 (except that the sampling and variation provisions of Section 6.5 shall not apply) and AHRI 840, respectively.
3. Piping that conveys fluids that have a design operating temperature range between 60°F (15°C) and 105°F (41°C).
4. Piping that conveys fluids that have not been heated or cooled through the use of fossil fuels or electric power.
5. Strainers, control valves, and balancing valves associated with piping 1 inch (25 mm) or less in diameter.
6. Direct buried piping that conveys fluids at or below 60°F (15°C).
7. In radiant heating systems, sections of piping intended by design to radiate heat.

C403.12.3.1 Protection of piping insulation. Piping insulation exposed to the weather shall be protected from damage, including that caused by sunlight, moisture, equipment maintenance and wind, and shall provide shielding from solar radiation that can cause degradation of the material. Adhesive tape shall not be permitted.

C403.13 Mechanical systems located outside of the building thermal envelope. Mechanical systems providing heat <u>or cooling</u> outside of the thermal envelope of a building shall comply with Sections C403.13.1 through C403.13.3.

C403.13.1 Heating outside a building. Systems installed to provide heat outside ~~a building~~ the building thermal envelope shall be electric ~~radiant~~ systems. Such heating systems shall be controlled by an occupancy sensing device or a timer switch, so that the system is automatically de-energized when occupants are not present. Controls shall be configured to allow the system to operate for four hours maximum per day

C403.13.2 Cooling outside a building. Systems installed to provide cooling outside the building thermal envelope shall be prohibited.

C403.13.3 Snow- and ice-melt systems. Snow- and ice-melting systems shall comply with C403.13.3.1 through C403.13.3.3.

C403.13.3.1 ~~Snow- and ice-melt systems~~ Controls. Snow- and ice-melting systems shall include automatic controls configured to shut off the system when the ~~pavement~~ temperature of the snow melted surface is above ~~50°F (10°C)~~ 40°F (4°C) and precipitation is not falling, and an automatic or manual control that is configured to shut off when the outdoor temperature is above 40°F (4°C).

Exception: Heat mats controlled by a factory installed thermostat configured to energize the mat when the outdoor temperature is less than 35°F maximum and configured to deenergize the mat when the outdoor temperature is greater than 50°F maximum.

C403.13.3.2 Insulation. Minimum R-10 insulation shall be installed under the snow melted surface.

Exceptions:

1. Integrated pedestal system products over conditioned space or on above grade decks with minimum R-4 integral insulation plus minimum R-6 insulation under the air space.
2. Heat mats

C403.13.3.3 Equipment. Electric resistance and heat pump heaters are permitted. Where condensing boilers are used, the boiler supply water temperature shall be 130°F maximum to allow for efficient boiler operation.

C403.13.4 Roof and gutter deicing controls. Roof and gutter deicing systems, including but not limited to self-regulating cable, shall include automatic controls that are configured to shut off the system when the outdoor temperature is above 40°F (4°C) and that include one of the following:

1. A moisture sensor configured to shut off the system in the absence of moisture, or
2. A daylight sensor or other means configured to shut off the system between sunset and sunrise.

C403.13.5 Freeze protection system controls. Freeze protection systems, such as heat tracing of outdoor piping and heat exchangers, including self-regulating heat tracing, shall include automatic controls configured to shut off the systems when outdoor air temperatures are above 40°F (4°C) or when the conditions of the protected fluid will prevent freezing.

TABLE C403.12.3
MINIMUM PIPE INSULATION THICKNESS (in inches)[a, c]

FLUID OPERATING TEMPERATURE RANGE AND USAGE (°F)	INSULATION CONDUCTIVITY		NOMINAL PIPE OR TUBE SIZE (inches)				
	Conductivity Btu × in./(h × ft² × °F)[b]	Mean Rating Temperature, °F	< 1	1 to < 1 1/2	1 1/2 to < 4	4 to < 8	> 8
> 350	0.32–0.34	250	4.5	5.0	5.0	5.0	5.0
251–350	0.29–0.32	200	3.0	4.0	4.5	4.5	4.5
201–250	0.27–0.30	150	2.5	2.5	2.5	3.0	3.0
141–200	0.25–0.29	125	1.5	1.5	2.0	2.0	2.0
105–140	0.21–0.28	100	1.0	1.0	1.5	1.5	1.5
40–60	0.21–0.27	75	0.5	0.5	1.0	1.0	1.0
< 40	0.20–0.26	50	0.5	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.5

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8.

a. For piping smaller than $1^1/_2$ inches and located in partitions within conditioned spaces, reduction of these thicknesses by 1 inch shall be permitted (before thickness adjustment required in Note b) but not to a thickness less than 1 inch.

b. For insulation outside the stated conductivity range, the minimum thickness (T) shall be determined as follows:

$T = r[(1 + t/r)^{K/k}$

– 1] where:

T = Minimum insulation thickness.

r = Actual outside radius of pipe.

t = Insulation thickness listed in the table for applicable fluid temperature and pipe size.

K = Conductivity of alternate material at mean rating temperature indicated for the applicable fluid temperature (Btu × in/h × ft^2 × °F).

k = The upper value of the conductivity range listed in the table for the applicable fluid temperature.

c. For direct-buried heating and hot water system piping, reduction of these thicknesses by $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) shall be permitted (before thickness adjustment required in Note b but not to thicknesses less than 1 inch.

C403.14 Operable opening interlocking controls. The heating and cooling systems shall have controls that will interlock these mechanical systems to the set temperatures of 90ºF (32ºC) for cooling and 55ºF (12.7ºC) for heating when the conditions of Section C402.5.8 exist. The controls shall configure to shut off the systems entirely when the outdoor temperatures are below 90ºF (32ºC) or above 55ºF (12.7ºC).

SECTION C404
SERVICE WATER HEATING

C404.1 General. This section covers the minimum efficiency of, and controls for, service water-heating equipment and insulation of service hot water piping.

C404.2 Service water-heating equipment performance efficiency. Water-heating equipment and hot water storage tanks shall meet the requirements of Table C404.2. The efficiency shall be verified through data furnished by the manufacturer of the equipment or through certification under an *approved* certification program. Water-heating equipment intended to be used to provide space heating shall meet the applicable provisions of Table C404.2.

C404.2.1 High input service water-heating systems. Gas-fired water-heating equipment installed in new buildings shall be in compliance with this section. Where a singular piece of water-heating equipment serves the entire building and the input rating of the equipment is 1,000,000 Btu/h (293 kW) or greater, such equipment shall have a thermal efficiency, E_t, of not less than 92 percent. Where multiple pieces of water-heating equipment serve the building and the combined input rating of the water-heating equipment is 1,000,000 Btu/h (293 kW) or greater, the combined input-capacity-weighted-average thermal efficiency, E_t, shall be not less than 90 percent.

Exceptions:

1. Where not less than 25 percent of the annual service water-heating requirement is provided by *on-site renewable energy* or site-recovered energy, the minimum thermal efficiency requirements of this section shall not apply.
2. The input rating of water heaters installed in individual dwelling units shall not be required to be included in the total input rating of service water-heating equipment for a building.
3. The input rating of water heaters with an input rating of not greater than 100,000 Btu/h (29.3 kW) shall not be required to be included in the total input rating of service water-heating equipment for a building.

TABLE C404.2
MINIMUM PERFORMANCE OF WATER-HEATING EQUIPMENT

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY (input)	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	PERFORMANCE REQUIRED[a, b]	TEST PROCEDURE
Water heaters, electric	≤ 12 kW[d]	Tabletop[e], ≥ 20 gallons and ≤ 120 gallons	0.93 – 0.00132V, EF	DOE 10 CFR Part 430
		Resistance ≥ 20 gallons and ≤ 55 gallons	0.960 – 0.0003V, EF	
		Grid-enabled[f] > 75 gallons and ≤ 120 gallons	1.061 – 0.00168V, EF	
	> 12 kW	Resistance	(0.3 + 27/V_m), %/h	ANSI Z21.10.3

	≤ 24 amps and ≤ 250 volts	Heat pump > 55 gallons and ≤ 120 gallons	2.057 – 0.00113V, EF	DOE 10 CFR Part 430
Storage water heaters, gas	≤ 75,000 Btu/h	≥ 20 gallons and > 55 gallons	0.675 – 0.0015V, EF	DOE 10 CFR Part 430
		> 55 gallons and ≤ 100 gallons	0.8012 – 0.00078V, EF	
	> 75,000 Btu/h and ≤ 155,000 Btu/h	< 4,000 Btu/h/gal	80% E_t (Q/800 + 110 V)SL, Btu/h	ANSI Z21.10.3
	> 155,000 Btu/h	< 4,000 Btu/h/gal	80% E_t (Q/800 + 110 V)SL, Btu/h	
Instantaneous water heaters, gas	> 50,000 Btu/h and < 200,000 Btu/h[c]	≥ 4,000 Btu/h/gal and < 2 gal	0.82 – 0.00 19V, EF	DOE 10 CFR Part 430
	≥ 200,000 Btu/h	≥ 4,000 Btu/h/gal and < 10 gal	80% E_t	ANSI Z21.10.3
	≥ 200,000 Btu/h	≥ 4,000 Btu/h/gal and ≥ 10 gal	80% E_t (Q/800 + 110 V)SL, Btu/h	
Storage water heaters, oil	≤ 105,000 Btu/h	≥ 20 gal and ≤ 50 gallons	0.68 – 0.0019V, EF	DOE 10 CFR Part 430
	≥ 105,000 Btu/h	< 4,000 Btu/h/gal	80% E_t (Q/800 + 110 V)SL, Btu/h	ANSI Z21.10.3
Instantaneous water heaters, oil	≤ 210,000 Btu/h	≥ 4,000 Btu/h/gal and < 2 gal	0.59 – 0.0019V, EF	DOE 10 CFR Part 430
	> 210,000 Btu/h	≥ 4,000 Btu/h/gal and < 10 gal	80% E_t	ANSI Z21.10.3
	> 210,000 Btu/h	≥ 4,000 Btu/h/gal and ≥ 10 gal	78% E_t (Q/800 + 110 V)SL, Btu/h	
Hot water supply boilers, gas and oil	≥ 300,000 Btu/h and < 12,500,000 Btu/h	≥ 4,000 Btu/h/gal and < 10 gal	80% E_t	ANSI Z21.10.3
Hot water supply boilers, gas	≥ 300,000 Btu/h and < 12,500,000 Btu/h	≥ 4,000 Btu/h/gal and ≥ 10 gal	80% E_t (Q/800 + 110 V)SL, Btu/h	
Hot water supply boilers, oil	> 300,000 Btu/h and < 12,500,000 Btu/h	> 4,000 Btu/h/gal and > 10 gal	78% E_t (Q/800 + 110 V)SL, Btu/h	
Pool heaters, gas and oil	All	—	82% E_t	ASHRAE 146
Heat pump pool heaters	All	—	4.0 COP	AHRI 1160
Unfired storage tanks	All	—	Minimum insulation requirement R-12.5 (h × ft² × °F)/Btu	(none)

(continued)

TABLE C404.2—continued
MINIMUM PERFORMANCE OF WATER-HEATING EQUIPMENT

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m², °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 gallon = 3.785 L, 1 British thermal unit per hour per gallon = 0.078 W/L.

a. Energy factor (EF) and thermal efficiency (E_t) are minimum requirements. In the EF equation, V is the rated volume in gallons.

b. Standby loss (SL) is the maximum Btu/h based on a nominal 70°F temperature difference between stored water and ambient requirements. In the SL equation, Q is the nameplate input rate in Btu/h. In the equations for electric water heaters, V is the rated volume in gallons and V_m is the measured volume in gallons. In the SL equation for oil and gas water heaters and boilers, V is the rated volume in gallons.

c. Instantaneous water heaters with input rates below 200,000 Btu/h shall comply with these requirements where the water heater is designed to heat water to temperatures 180°F or higher.

d. Electric water heaters with an input rating of 12 kW (40,950 Btu/h) or less that are designed to heat water to temperatures of 180°F or greater shall comply with the requirements for electric water heaters that have an input rating greater than 12 kW (40,950 Btu/h).

e A tabletop water heater is a water heater that is enclosed in a rectangular cabinet with a flat top surface not more than 3 feet in height.

f. A grid-enabled water heater is an electric-resistance water heater that meets all of the following:

1. Has a rated storage tank volume of more than 75 gallons.
2. Was manufactured on or after April 16, 2015.
3. Is equipped at the point of manufacture with an activation lock.
4. Bears a permanent label applied by the manufacturer that complies with all of the following:

4.1. Is made of material not adversely affected by water.

4.2. Is attached by means of nonwater-soluble adhesive.

4.3. Advises purchasers and end users of the intended and appropriate use of the product with the following notice printed in 16.5 point Arial Narrow Bold font: "IMPORTANT INFORMATION: This water heater is intended only for use as part of an electric thermal storage or demand response program. It will not provide adequate hot water unless enrolled in such a program and activated by your utility company or another program operator. Confirm the availability of a program in your local area before purchasing or installing this product."

C404.3 Heat traps for hot water storage tanks. Storage tank-type water heaters and hot water storage tanks that have vertical water pipes connecting to the inlet and outlet of the tank shall be provided with integral heat traps at those inlets and outlets or shall have pipe-configured heat traps in the piping connected to those inlets and outlets. Tank inlets and outlets associated with solar water heating system circulation loops shall not be required to have heat traps.

C404.4 Insulation of piping. Piping from a water heater to the termination of the heated water fixture supply pipe shall be insulated in accordance with Table C403.12.3. On both the inlet and outlet piping of a storage water heater or heated water storage tank, the piping to a heat trap or the first 8 feet (2438 mm) of piping, whichever is less, shall be insulated. Piping that is heat traced shall be insulated in accordance with Table C403.12.3 or the heat trace manufacturer's instructions. Tubular pipe insulation shall be installed in accordance with the insulation manufacturer's instructions. Pipe insulation shall be continuous except where the piping passes through a framing member. The minimum insulation thickness requirements of this section shall not supersede any greater insulation thickness requirements necessary for the protection of piping from freezing temperatures or the protection of personnel against external surface temperatures on the insulation.

Exception: Tubular pipe insulation shall not be required on the following:

1. The tubing from the connection at the termination of the fixture supply piping to a plumbing fixture or plumbing appliance.
2. Valves, pumps, strainers and threaded unions in piping that is 1 inch (25 mm) or less in nominal diameter.
3. Piping from user-controlled shower and bath mixing valves to the water outlets.
4. Cold-water piping of a demand recirculation water system.
5. Tubing from a hot drinking-water heating unit to the water outlet.
6. Piping at locations where a vertical support of the piping is installed.
7. Piping surrounded by building insulation with a thermal resistance (R-value) of not less than R-3.

C404.5 Heated water supply piping. Heated water supply piping shall be in accordance with Section C404.5.1 or C404.5.2. The flow rate through $^1/_4$-inch (6.4 mm) piping shall be not greater than 0.5 gpm (1.9 L/m). The flow rate through $^5/_{16}$-inch (7.9 mm) piping shall be not greater than 1 gpm (3.8 L/m). The flow rate through $^3/_8$-inch (9.5 mm) piping shall be not greater than 1.5 gpm (5.7 L/m).

~~**C404.5.1 Maximum allowable pipe length method.** The maximum allowable piping length from the nearest source of heated water to the termination of the fixture supply pipe shall be in accordance with the following. Where the piping contains more than one size of pipe, the largest size of pipe within the piping shall be used for determining the maximum allowable length of the piping in Table C404.5.1.~~

~~1. For a public lavatory faucet, use the "Public lavatory faucets" column in Table C404.5.1.~~

~~2. For all other plumbing fixtures and plumbing appliances, use the "Other fixtures and appliances" column in Table C404.5.1.~~

~~**TABLE C404.5.1**~~
~~**PIPING VOLUME AND MAXIMUM PIPING LENGTHS**~~

~~NOMINAL PIPE SIZE (inches)~~	~~VOLUME (liquid ounces per foot length)~~	~~MAXIMUM PIPING LENGTH (feet)~~	
		~~Public lavatory faucets~~	~~Other fixtures and appliances~~
~~1/4~~	~~0.33~~	~~6~~	~~50~~
~~5/16~~	~~0.5~~	~~4~~	~~50~~
~~3/8~~	~~0.75~~	~~3~~	~~50~~
~~1/2~~	~~1.5~~	~~2~~	~~43~~
~~5/8~~	~~2~~	~~1~~	~~32~~
~~3/4~~	~~3~~	~~0.5~~	~~21~~
~~7/8~~	~~4~~	~~0.5~~	~~16~~
~~1~~	~~5~~	~~0.5~~	~~13~~
~~1 1/4~~	~~8~~	~~0.5~~	~~8~~
~~1 1/2~~	~~11~~	~~0.5~~	~~6~~
~~2 or larger~~	~~18~~	~~0.5~~	~~4~~

~~For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 liquid ounce = 0.030 L, 1 gallon = 128 ounces.~~

~~**C404.5.2 Maximum allowable pipe volume method.** The water volume in the piping shall be calculated in accordance with Section C404.5.2.1. Water heaters, circulating water systems and heat trace temperature maintenance systems shall be considered to be sources of heated water.~~

~~The volume from the nearest source of heated water to the termination of the fixture supply pipe shall be as follows:~~

~~1. For a public lavatory faucet: not more than 2 ounces (0.06 L).~~

~~2. For other plumbing fixtures or plumbing appliances; not more than 0.5 gallon (1.89 L).~~

~~**C404.5.2.1 Water volume determination.** The volume shall be the sum of the internal volumes of pipe, fittings, valves, meters and manifolds between the nearest source of heated water and the termination of the fixture supply pipe. The volume in the piping shall be determined from the "Volume" column in Table C404.5.1 or from Table C404.5.2.1. The volume contained within fixture shutoff valves, within flexible water supply connectors to a fixture fitting and within a fixture fitting shall not be included in the water volume determination. Where heated water is supplied by a recirculating system or heat-traced piping, the volume shall include the portion of the fitting on the branch pipe that supplies water to the fixture.~~

C404.6 Heated-water circulating and temperature maintenance systems. Heated-water circulation systems shall be in accordance with Section C404.6.1. Heat trace temperature maintenance systems shall be in accordance with Section C404.6.2. Controls for hot water storage shall be in accordance with Section C404.6.3. Automatic controls, temperature sensors and pumps shall be in a location with *access*. Manual controls shall be in a location with *ready access*.

C404.6.1 Circulation systems. Heated-water circulation systems shall be provided with a circulation pump. The system return pipe shall be a dedicated return pipe or a cold water supply pipe. Gravity and thermo-syphon circulation systems shall be prohibited. Controls for circulating hot water system pumps shall automatically turn off the pump when the water in the circulation loop is at the desired temperature and when there is not a demand for hot water. The controls shall limit the temperature of the water entering the cold water piping to not greater than 104ºF (40°C).

C404.6.1.1 Demand recirculation controls. Demand recirculation water systems shall have controls that start the pump upon receiving a signal from the action of a user of a fixture or appliance, sensing the presence of a user of a fixture, or sensing the flow of hot or tempered water to a fixture fitting or appliance.

C404.6.2 Heat trace systems. Electric heat trace systems shall comply with IEEE 515.1. Controls for such systems shall be able to automatically adjust the energy input to the heat tracing to maintain the desired water temperature in the piping in accordance with the times when heated water is used in the occupancy. Heat trace shall be arranged to be turned off automatically when there is not a demand for hot water.

C404.6.3 Controls for hot water storage. The controls on pumps that circulate water between a water heater and a heated-water storage tank shall limit operation of the pump from heating cycle startup to not greater than 5 minutes after the end of the cycle.

TABLE C404.5.2.1
INTERNAL VOLUME OF VARIOUS WATER DISTRIBUTION TUBING

OUNCES OF WATER PER FOOT OF TUBE									
Nominal Size (inches)	Copper Type M	Copper Type L	Copper Type K	CPVC CTS SDR 11	CPVC SCH 40	CPVC SCH 80	PE-RT SDR 9	Composite ASTM F1281	PEX CTS SDR 9
3/8	1.06	0.97	0.84	N/A	1.17	—	0.64	0.63	0.64
1/2	1.69	1.55	1.45	1.25	1.89	1.46	1.18	1.31	1.18
3/4	3.43	3.22	2.90	2.67	3.38	2.74	2.35	3.39	2.35
1	5.81	5.49	5.17	4.43	5.53	4.57	3.91	5.56	3.91
1 1/4	8.70	8.36	8.09	6.61	9.66	8.24	5.81	8.49	5.81
1 1/2	12.18	11.83	11.45	9.22	13.20	11.38	8.09	13.88	8.09
2	21.08	20.58	20.04	15.79	21.88	19.11	13.86	21.48	13.86

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 liquid ounce = 0.030 L, 1 oz/ft^2 = 305.15 g/m^2. N/A = Not Available.

C404.7 Drain water heat recovery units. Drain water heat recovery units shall comply with CSA B55.2. Potable waterside pressure loss shall be less than 10 psi (69 kPa) at maximum design flow. For *Group R* occupancies, the efficiency of drain water heat recovery unit efficiency shall be in accordance with CSA B55.1.

C404.8 Energy consumption of pools and permanent spas. The energy consumption of pools and permanent spas shall be controlled by the requirements ~~in~~ of APSP 15 and Sections C404.8.1 through C404.8.4.

C404.8.1 Heaters. The electric power to all heaters shall be controlled by an on-off switch that is an integral part of the heater, mounted on the exterior of the heater, or external to and within 3 feet (914 mm) of the heater in a location with *ready access*. Operation of such switch shall not change the setting of the heater thermostat. Such switches shall be in addition to a circuit breaker for the power to the heater. Gas-fired heaters shall not be equipped with continuously burning ignition pilots.

C404.8.2 Time switches. Time switches or other control methods shall be installed for heaters and pump motors that are configured to ~~can automatically~~ turn off and on and/or vary speed of heaters and pump motors according to a preset schedule to save energy use ~~shall be installed for heaters and pump motors~~. Heaters and pump motors that have built-in time switches shall be in compliance with this section.

Exceptions:

1. Where public health standards require 24-hour pump operation.
2. Pumps that operate solar and waste-heat recovery pool heating systems.

C404.8.3 Covers. Outdoor heated pools and outdoor permanent spas shall be provided with a vapor-retardant cover with minimum insulation value of R-2.~~or other *approved* vapor retardant means.~~

~~**Exception:** Where more than 75 percent of the energy for heating, computed over an operating season of not fewer than 3 calendar months, is from a heat pump or an on-site renewable energy system, covers or other vapor retardant means shall not be required.~~

C404.8.4 Insulation. Swimming pools and permanent spas shall have insulation on the sides and bottom surfaces located on the exterior. The type of insulation shall be impermeable and impervious to water logging or saturation and unaffected by water, mold, mildew, and have capability to resist compression. The insulation value shall be a minimum of R-15.

C404.9 Portable spas. The energy consumption of electric powered portable spas shall be controlled by the requirements of APSP 14.

C409.1 Covers. Portable spas shall be provided with a cover with a minimum insulation value of R-12.

SECTION C405
ELECTRICAL POWER AND LIGHTING SYSTEMS

C405.1 General. Electrical power, lighting, generation, and storage systems ~~Lighting system controls, the maximum~~

~~lighting power for interior and exterior applications, and electrical energy consumption~~ shall comply with this section. *Sleeping units* shall comply with Section C405.2.4 and with either Section C405.1.1 or C405.3. *General lighting* shall consist of all lighting included when calculating the total connected interior lighting power in accordance with Section C405.3.1 and which does not require specific application controls in accordance with Section C405.2.4.

Transformers, uninterruptable power supplies, motors and electrical power processing equipment in data center systems shall comply with Section 8 of ASHRAE 90.4 in addition to this code.

C405.1.1 Lighting for dwelling units. ~~No less than 90 percent of the~~ Permanently installed lighting serving sleeping units and dwelling units, excluding kitchen appliance lighting, shall be provided by lamps with an efficacy of not less than 65 lm/W or luminaires with an efficacy of not less than 45 lm/W, or shall comply with Sections C405.2.5 and C405.3.

C405.2 Lighting controls. Lighting systems shall be provided with controls that comply with one of the following.

1. Lighting controls as specified in Sections C405.2.1 through C405.2.7.
2. Luminaire level lighting controls (LLLC) and lighting controls as specified in Sections C405.2.1, C405.2.5 and C405.2.6. The LLLC luminaire shall be independently capable of:
   2.1. Monitoring occupant activity to brighten or dim lighting when occupied or unoccupied, respectively.
   2.2. Monitoring ambient light, both electric light and daylight, and brighten or dim artificial light to maintain desired light level.
   2.3. For each control strategy, configuration and reconfiguration of performance parameters including; bright and dim setpoints, timeouts, dimming fade rates, sensor sensitivity adjustments, and wireless zoning configurations.

Exceptions: Lighting controls are not required for the following:

1. Areas designated as security or emergency areas that are required to be continuously lighted.
2. Interior exit stairways, interior exit ramps and exit passageways.
3. Emergency egress lighting that is normally off.

C405.2.1 Occupant sensor controls. Occupant *sensor controls* shall be installed to control lights in the following space types:

1. Classrooms/lecture/training rooms.
2. Conference/meeting/multipurpose rooms.
3. Copy/print rooms.
4. Lounges/breakrooms.
5. Enclosed offices.
6. Open plan office areas.
7. Restrooms.
8. Storage rooms.
9. Locker rooms.
10. Corridors.
11. Warehouse storage areas.
12. Other spaces 300 square feet (28 m^2) or less that are enclosed by floor-to-ceiling height partitions.

Exception: Luminaires that are required to have specific application controls in accordance with Section C405.2.5.

C405.2.1.1 Occupant sensor control function. Occupant sensor controls in warehouses shall comply with Section C405.2.1.2. Occupant sensor controls in open plan office areas shall comply with Section C405.2.1.3. Occupant sensor controls in corridors shall comply with Section C405.2.1.4. Occupant sensor controls for all other spaces specified in Section C405.2.1 shall comply with the following:

1. They shall automatically turn off lights within 20 minutes after all occupants have left the space.
2. They shall be manual on or controlled to automatically turn on the lighting to not more than 50-percent power.

3. They shall incorporate a manual control to allow occupants to turn off lights.

Exception: Full automatic-on controls with no manual control shall be permitted in corridors, interior parking areas, stairways, restrooms, locker rooms, lobbies, library stacks and areas where manual operation would endanger occupant safety or security.

C405.2.1.2 Occupant sensor control function in warehouse storage areas. Lighting in warehouse storage areas shall be controlled as follows:

1. Lighting in each aisleway shall be controlled independently of lighting in all other aisleways and open areas.

2. Occupant sensors shall automatically reduce lighting power within each controlled area to an occupied setpoint of not more than 50 percent within 20 minutes after all occupants have left the controlled area.

3. Lights that are not turned off by occupant sensors shall be turned off by time-switch control complying with Section C405.2.2.1.

4. A manual control shall be provided to allow occupants to turn off lights in the space.

C405.2.1.3 Occupant sensor control function in open plan office areas. Occupant sensor controls in open plan office spaces less than 300 square feet (28 m^2) in area shall comply with Section C405.2.1.1. Occupant sensor controls in all other open plan office spaces shall comply with all of the following:

1. The controls shall be configured so that general lighting can be controlled separately in control zones with floor areas not greater than 600 square feet (55 m^2) within the open plan office space.

2. General lighting in each control zone shall be permitted to automatically turn on upon occupancy within the control zone. General lighting in other unoccupied zones within the open plan office space shall be permitted to turn on to not more than 20 percent of full power or remain unaffected.

3. The controls shall automatically turn off general lighting in all control zones within 20 minutes after all occupants have left the open plan office space.

Exception: Where general lighting is turned off by time-switch control complying with Section C405.2.2.1.

4. General lighting in each control zone shall turn off or uniformly reduce lighting power to an unoccupied setpoint of not more than 20 percent of full power within 20 minutes after all occupants have left the control zone.

C405.2.1.4 Occupant sensor control function in corridors. Occupant sensor controls in corridors shall uniformly reduce lighting power to not more than 50 percent of full power within 20 minutes after all occupants have left the space.

Exception: Corridors provided with less than two footcandles of illumination on the floor at the darkest point with all lights on.

C405.2.2 Time-switch controls. Each area of the building that is not provided with *occupant sensor controls* complying with Section C405.2.1.1 shall be provided with *time-switch controls* complying with Section C405.2.2.1.

Exceptions:

1. Luminaires that are required to have specific application controls in accordance with Section C405.2.4.

2. Spaces where patient care is directly provided.

3. Spaces where an automatic shutoff would endanger occupant safety or security.

4. Lighting intended for continuous operation.

5. Shop and laboratory classrooms.

C405.2.2.1 Time-switch control function. Time- switch *controls* shall comply with all of the following:

1. Automatically turn off lights when the space is scheduled to be unoccupied.

2. Have a minimum 7-day clock.

3. Be capable of being set for seven different day types per week.

4. Incorporate an automatic holiday "shutoff" feature, which turns off all controlled lighting loads for not fewer than 24 hours and then resumes normally scheduled operations.

5. Have program backup capabilities, which prevent the loss of program and time settings for not fewer than 10 hours, if power is interrupted.

6. Include an override switch that complies with the following:

6.1. The override switch shall be a manual control.

6.2. The override switch, when initiated, shall permit the controlled lighting to remain on for not more than 2 hours.

6.3. Any individual override switch shall control the lighting for an area not larger than 5,000 square feet (465 m^2).

Exception: Within mall concourses, auditoriums, sales areas, manufacturing facilities and sports arenas:

1. The time limit shall be permitted to be greater than 2 hours, provided that the switch is a captive key device.

2. The area controlled by the override switch shall not be limited to 5,000 square feet (465 m^2) provided that such area is less than 20,000 square feet (1860 m^2).

C405.2.3 Light-reduction controls. Where not provided with occupant sensor controls complying with Section C405.2.1.1, general lighting shall be provided with light- reduction controls complying with Section C405.2.3.1.

Exceptions:

1. Luminaires controlled by daylight responsive controls complying with Section C405.2.4.

2. Luminaires controlled by special application controls complying with Section C405.2.5.

3. Where provided with manual control, the following areas are not required to have light-reduction control:

3.1. Spaces that have only one luminaire with a rated power of less than 60 watts.

3.2. Spaces that use less than 0.45 watts per square foot (4.9 W/m^2).

3.3. Corridors, lobbies, electrical rooms and/or mechanical rooms.

C405.2.3.1 Light-reduction control function. Spaces required to have light-reduction controls shall have a manual control that allows the occupant to reduce the connected lighting load by not less than 50 percent in a reasonably uniform illumination pattern with an inter-mediate step in addition to full on or off, or with continuous dimming control, using one of the following or another approved method:

1. Continuous dimming of all luminaires from full output to less than 20 percent of full power.
2. Switching all luminaires to a reduced output of not less than 30 percent and not more than 70 percent of full power.
3. Switching alternate luminaires or alternate rows of luminaires to achieve a reduced output of not less than 30 percent and not more than 70 percent of full power.

C405.2.4 Daylight-responsive controls. Daylight-responsive controls complying with Section C405.2.4.1 shall be provided to control the general lighting within daylight zones in the following spaces:

1. Spaces with a total of more than 150 watts of general lighting within primary sidelit daylight zones complying with Section C405.2.4.2.
2. Spaces with a total of more than 300 watts of general lighting within sidelit daylight zones complying with Section C405.2.4.2.
3. Spaces with a total of more than 150 watts of general lighting within toplit daylight zones complying with Section C405.2.4.3.

Exceptions: Daylight responsive controls are not required for the following:

1. Spaces in health care facilities where patient care is directly provided.
2. Sidelit daylight zones on the first floor above grade in Group A-2 and Group M occupancies.
3. New buildings where the total connected lighting power calculated in accordance with Section C405.3.1 is not greater than the adjusted interior lighting power allowance (LPAadj) calculated in accordance with Equation 4-9.

$$LPAadj = [LPAnorm \times (1.0 - 0.4 \times UDZFA / TBFA)]$$ **(Equation 4-9)**

where:

LPAadj = Adjusted building interior lighting power allowance in watts.

LPAnorm = Normal building lighting power allowance in watts calculated in accordance with Section C405.3.2 and reduced in accordance with Section C406.3 where Option 2 of

Section C406.1 is used to comply with the requirements of Section C406.

UDZFA = Uncontrolled daylight zone floor area is the sum of all sidelit and toplit zones, calculated in accordance with Sections C405.2.4.2 and C405.2.4.3, that do not have daylight responsive controls.

TBFA = Total building floor area is the sum of all floor areas included in the lighting power allowance calculation in Section C405.3.2.

C405.2.4.1 Daylight-responsive control function. Where required, *daylight-responsive controls* shall be provided within each space for control of lights in that space and shall comply with all of the following:

1. Lights in *toplit daylight zones* in accordance with Section C405.2.4.3 shall be controlled independently of lights in sidelit daylight zones in accordance with Section C405.2.4.2.
2. Lights in the primary sidelit daylight zone shall be controlled independently of lights in the secondary sidelit daylight zone.
3. *Daylight responsive controls* within each space shall be configured so that they can be calibrated from within that space by authorized personnel.
4. Calibration mechanisms shall be in a location with *ready access*.
5. *Daylight responsive controls* shall dim lights continuously from full light output to 15 percent of full light output or lower.
6. *Daylight responsive controls* shall be configured to completely shut off all controlled lights.
7. When occupant sensor controls have reduced the lighting power to an unoccupied setpoint in accordance with Sections C405.2.1.2 through C405.2.1.4, daylight responsive controls shall continue to adjust electric light levels in response to available daylight, but shall be configured to not increase the lighting power above the specified unoccupied setpoint.
8. Lights in *sidelit daylight zones* in accordance with Section C405.2.4.2 facing different cardi- nal orientations [within 45 degrees (0.79 rad) of due north, east, south, west] shall be controlled independently of each other.

Exceptions:

1. Within each space, up to 150 watts of lighting within the primary sidelit daylight zone is permitted to be controlled together with lighting in a primary sidelit daylight zone facing a different cardinal orientation.
2. Within each space, up to 150 watts of lighting within the secondary sidelit daylight zone is permitted to be controlled together with lighting in a secondary sidelit daylight zone facing a different cardinal orientation.

C405.2.4.2 Sidelit daylight zone. The sidelit daylight zone is the floor area adjacent to vertical *fenestration* that complies with all of the following:

1. Where the fenestration is located in a wall, the sidelit daylight zone shall extend laterally to the nearest full-height wall, or up to 1.0 times the height from the floor to the top of the fenestration, and longitudinally from the edge of the fenestration to the nearest full-height wall, or up to 0.5 times the height from the floor to the top of the fenestration, whichever is less, as indicated in Figure C405.2.4.2(1).
2. Where the fenestration is located in a rooftop monitor, the sidelit daylight zone shall extend laterally to the nearest obstruction that is taller than 0.7 times the ceiling height, or up to 1.0 times the height from the floor to the bottom of the fenestration, whichever is less, and longitudinally from the edge of the fenestration to the nearest obstruction that is taller than 0.7 times the ceiling height, or up to 0.25 times the height from the floor to the bottom of the fenestration, whichever is less, as indicated in Figures C405.2.4.2(2) and C405.2.4.2(3).
3. The secondary sidelit daylight zone is directly adjacent to the primary sidelit daylight zone and shall extend laterally to 2.0 times the height from the floor to the top of the fenestration or to the nearest full height wall, whichever is less, and longitudinally from the edge of the fenestration to the nearest full height wall, or up to 2 feet, whichever is less, as indicated in Figure C405.2.4.2(1). The area of secondary sidelit zones shall not be considered in the calculation of the daylight zones in Section C402.4.1.1.
4. The area of the fenestration is not less than 24 square feet (2.23 m^2).
5. The distance from the fenestration to any building or geological formation that would block *access to* daylight is greater than one-half of the height from the bottom of the fenestration to the top of the building or geologic formation.
6. The visible transmittance of the fenestration is not less than 0.20.
7. The projection factor (determined in accordance with Equation 4-5) for any overhanging projection that is shading

the fenestration is not greater than 1.0 for fenestration oriented 45 degrees or less from true north and not greater than 1.5 for all other orientations.

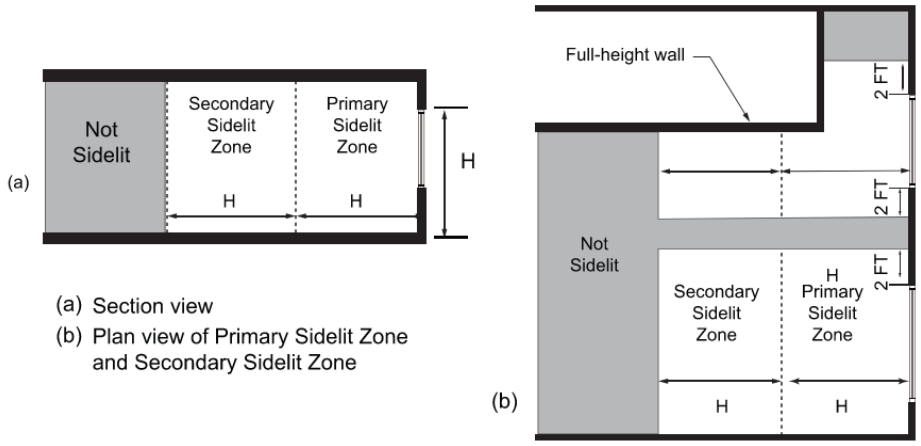


FIGURE C405.2.4.2(1)
PRIMARY AND SECONDARY SIDELIT DAYLIGHT ZONES

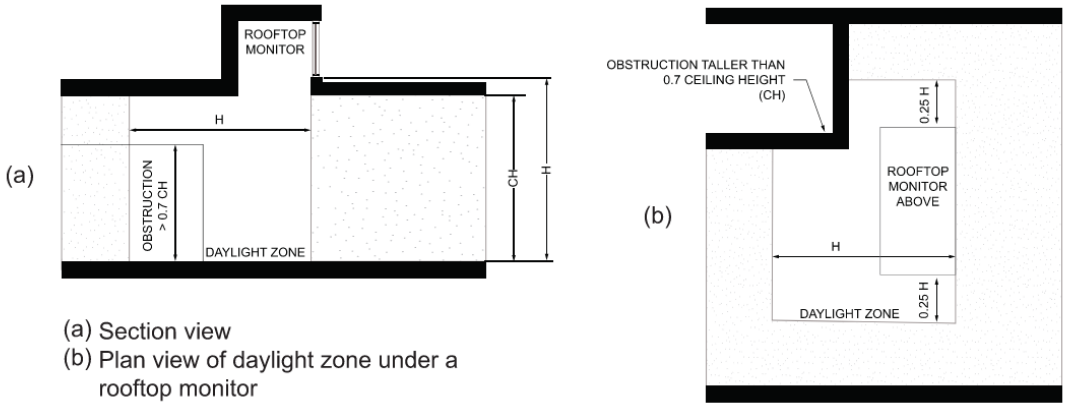


FIGURE C405.2.4.2(2)
DAYLIGHT ZONE UNDER A ROOFTOP MONITOR

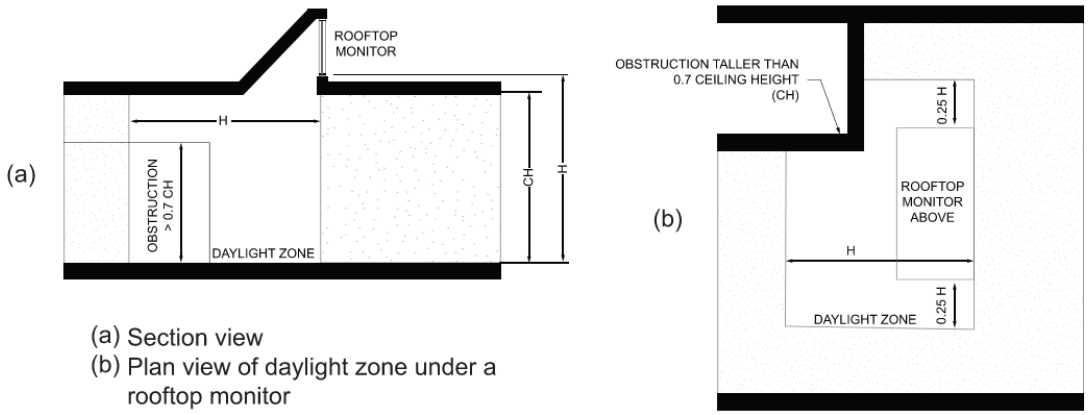


FIGURE C405.2.4.2(3)
DAYLIGHT ZONE UNDER A SLOPED ROOFTOP MONITOR

C405.2.4.3 Toplit daylight zone. The *toplit daylight zone* is the floor area underneath a roof fenestration assembly that complies with all of the following:

1. The toplit daylight zone shall extend laterally and longitudinally beyond the edge of the roof fenestration assembly to the nearest obstruction that is taller than 0.7 times the ceiling height, or up to 0.7 times the ceiling height, whichever is less, as indicated in Figure C405.2.4.3.
2. Direct sunlight is not blocked from hitting the roof fenestration assembly at the peak solar angle on the summer solstice by buildings or geological formations.
3. The product of the visible transmittance of the roof fenestration assembly and the area of the rough opening of the roof fenestration assembly divided by the area of the *toplit* zone is not less than 0.008.

C405.2.4.4 Atriums. Daylight zones at atrium spaces shall be established at the top floor surrounding the atrium and at the floor of the atrium space, and not on intermediate floors, as indicated in Figure C405.2.4.4.

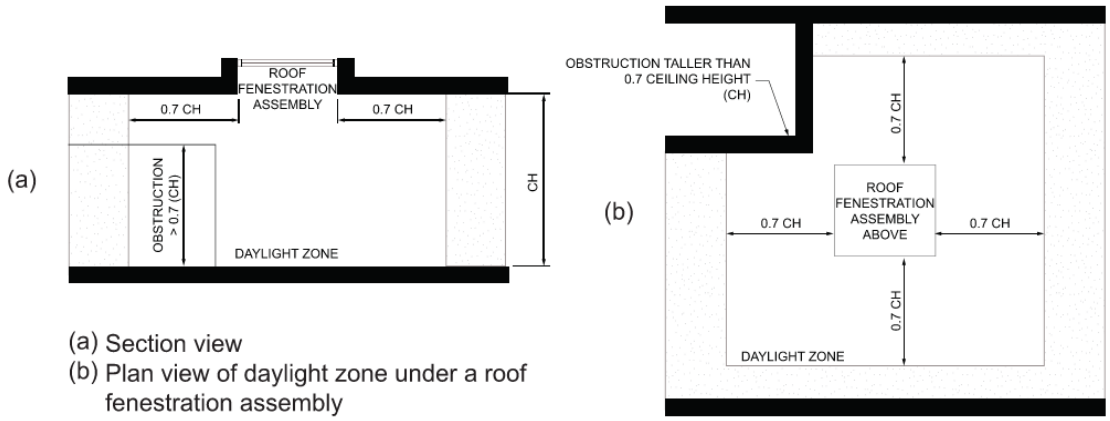
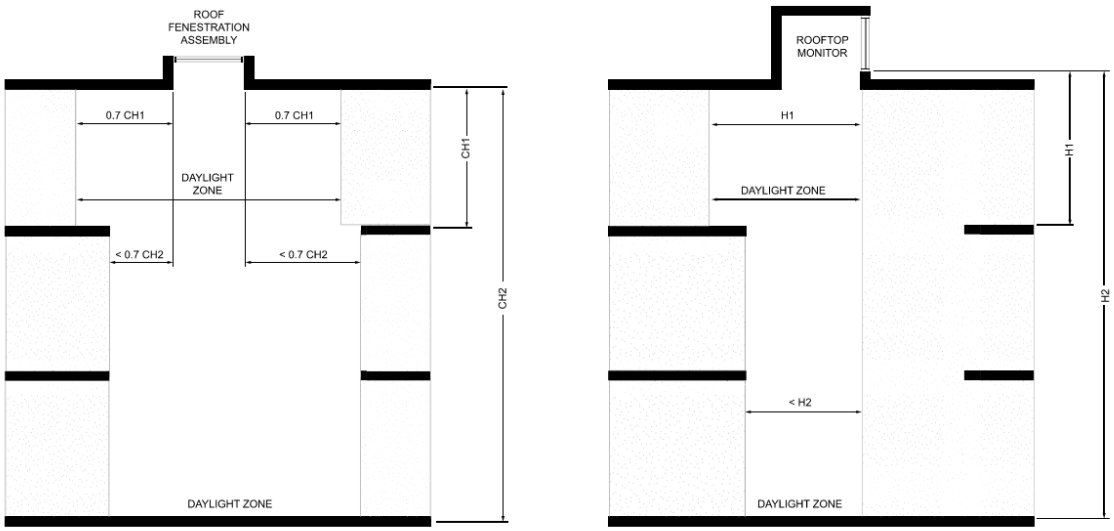


FIGURE C405.2.4.3 TOPLIT DAYLIGHT ZONE



(a) Section view of roof fenestration assembly at atrium

(b) Section view of roof monitor at atrium

C405.2.4.4

DAYLIGHT ZONES AT A MULTISTORY ATRIUM

C405.2.5 Specific application controls. Specific application controls shall be provided for the following:

1. The following lighting shall be controlled by an occupant sensor complying with Section C405.2.1.1 or a time-switch control complying with Section C405.2.2.1. In addition, a manual control shall be provided to control such lighting separately from the general lighting in the space:
   1.1. Luminaires for which additional lighting power is claimed in accordance with Section C405.3.2.2.1.
   1.2. Display and accent.
   1.3. Lighting in display cases.
   1.4. Supplemental task lighting, including permanently installed under-shelf or under-cabinet lighting.
   1.5. Lighting equipment that is for sale or demonstration in lighting education.
   1.6. Display lighting for exhibits in galleries, museums and monuments that is in addition to *general lighting*.
2. *Sleeping units* shall have control devices or systems that are configured to automatically switch off all permanently installed luminaires and switched receptacles within 20 minutes after all occupants have left the unit.

   Exceptions:
   1. Lighting and switched receptacles controlled by card key controls.
   2. Spaces where patient care is directly provided.
3. Permanently installed luminaires within *dwelling units* shall be provided with controls complying with Section C405.2.1.1 or C405.2.3.1.
4. Lighting for nonvisual applications, such as plant growth and food warming, shall be controlled by a time switch control complying with Section C405.2.2.1 that is independent of the controls for other lighting within the room or space.
5. Task lighting for medical and dental purposes that is in addition to *general lighting* shall be provided with a *manual control*.

C405.2.6 Manual controls. Where required by this code, manual controls for lights shall comply with the following:

1. They shall be in a location with *ready access* to occupants.
2. They shall be located where the controlled lights are visible, or shall identify the area served by the lights and indicate their status.

C405.2.7 Exterior lighting controls. Exterior lighting systems shall be provided with controls that comply with Sections C405.2.7.1 through C405.2.7.4.

Exceptions:

1. Lighting for covered vehicle entrances and exits from buildings and parking structures where required for eye adaptation.
2. Lighting controlled from within dwelling units.

C405.2.7.1 Daylight shutoff. Lights shall be automatically turned off when daylight is present and satisfies the lighting needs.

C405.2.7.2 Building facade and landscape lighting. Building facade and landscape lighting shall automatically shut off from not later than 1 hour after business closing to not earlier than 1 hour before business opening.

C405.2.7.3 Lighting setback. Lighting that is not controlled in accordance with Section C405.2.7.2 shall comply with the following:

1. Be controlled so that the total wattage of such lighting is automatically reduced by not less than 50 percent by selectively switching off or dimming luminaires at one of the following times:
   1.1. From not later than midnight to not earlier than 6 a.m.
   1.2. From not later than one hour after busi- ness closing to not earlier than one hour before business opening.
   1.3. During any time where activity has not been detected for 15 minutes or more.
2. Luminaires serving outdoor parking areas and having a rated input wattage of greater than 78 watts and a mounting height of 24 feet (7315 mm) or less above the ground shall be controlled so that the total wattage of such lighting is automatically reduced by not less than 50 percent during any time where activity has not been detected for 15 minutes or more. Not more than 1,500 watts of lighting power shall be controlled together.

C405.2.7.4 Exterior time-switch control function. Time-switch controls for exterior lighting shall comply with the following:

1. They shall have a clock capable of being programmed for not fewer than 7 days.
2. They shall be capable of being set for seven different day types per week.
3. They shall incorporate an automatic holiday setback feature.
4. They shall have program backup capabilities that prevent the loss of program and time settings for a period of not less than 10 hours in the event that power is interrupted.

C405.2.8 Parking garage lighting control. Parking garage lighting shall be controlled by an *occupant sensor* complying with Section C405.2.1.1 or a *time-switch control* complying with Section C405.2.2.1. Additional lighting controls shall be provided as follows:

1. Lighting power of each luminaire shall be automatically reduced by not less than 30 percent when there is no activity detected within a lighting zone for 20 minutes. Lighting zones for this requirement shall be not larger than 3,600 square feet (334.5 m^2).

   Exception: Lighting zones provided with less than 1.5 footcandles of illumination on the floor at the darkest point with all lights on are not required to have automatic light-reduction controls.
2. Where lighting for eye adaptation is provided at covered vehicle entrances and exits from buildings and parking structures, such lighting shall be separately controlled by a device that automatically reduces lighting power by at least 50 percent from sunset to sunrise.
3. The power to luminaires within 20 feet (6096 mm) of perimeter wall openings shall automatically reduce in response to daylight by at least 50 percent.

   Exceptions:
   1. Where the opening-to-wall ratio is less than 40 percent as viewed from the interior and encompassing the vertical distance from the driving surface to the lowest structural element.
   2. Where the distance from the opening to any exterior daylight blocking obstruction is less than one-half the height from the bottom of the opening or fenestration to the top of the obstruction.
   3. Where openings are obstructed by permanent screens or architectural elements restricting daylight entering the interior space.

C405.3 Interior lighting power requirements. A building complies with this section where its total connected interior lighting power calculated under Section C405.3.1 is not greater than the interior lighting power allowance calculated under Section C405.3.2.

C405.3.1 Total connected interior lighting power. The total connected interior lighting power shall be determined

in accordance with Equation 4-10.

$TCLP = [LVL + BLL + LED + TRK + \text{Other}]$ **(Equation 4-10)**

where:

TCLP = Total connected lighting power (watts).

LVL = For luminaires with lamps connected directly to building power, such as line voltage lamps, the rated wattage of the lamp.

BLL = For luminaires incorporating a ballast or transformer, the rated input wattage of the ballast or transformer when operating that lamp.

LED = For light-emitting diode luminaires with either integral or remote drivers, the rated wattage of the luminaire.

TRK = For lighting track, cable conductor, rail conductor, and plug-in busway systems that allow the addition and relocation of luminaires without rewiring, the wattage shall be one of the following:

1. The specified wattage of the luminaires, but not less than 8 W per linear foot (25 W/lin m).
2. The wattage limit of the permanent current-limiting devices protecting the system.
3. The wattage limit of the transformer supplying the system.

Other = The wattage of all other luminaires and lighting sources not covered previously and associated with interior lighting verified by data supplied by the manufacturer or other *approved* sources.

The connected power associated with the following lighting equipment and applications is not included in calculating total connected lighting power.

1. Television broadcast lighting for playing areas in sports arenas.
2. Emergency lighting automatically off during normal building operation.
3. Lighting in spaces specifically designed for use by occupants with special lighting needs, including those with visual impairment and other medical and age-related issues.
4. Casino gaming areas.
5. Mirror lighting in dressing rooms.
6. Task lighting for medical and dental purposes that is in addition to general lighting.
7. Display lighting for exhibits in galleries, museums and monuments that is in addition to general lighting.
8. Lighting for theatrical purposes, including performance, stage, film production and video production.
9. Lighting for photographic processes.
10. Lighting integral to equipment or instrumentation and installed by the manufacturer.
11. Task lighting for plant growth or maintenance.
12. Advertising signage or directional signage.
13. Lighting for food warming.
14. Lighting equipment that is for sale.
15. Lighting demonstration equipment in lighting education facilities.
16. Lighting approved because of safety considerations.
17. Lighting in retail display windows, provided that the display area is enclosed by ceiling-height partitions.
18. Furniture-mounted supplemental task lighting that is controlled by automatic shutoff.
19. Exit signs.
20. Antimicrobial lighting used for the sole purpose of disinfecting a space.

C405.3.2 Interior lighting power allowance. The total interior lighting power allowance (watts) for an entire building shall be determined according to Table C405.3.2(1) using the Building Area Method or Table C405.3.2(2) using the Space-by-Space Method. The inte- rior lighting power allowance for projects that involve only portions of a building shall be determined according to Table C405.3.2(2) using the Space-by-Space Method. Buildings with unfinished

spaces shall use the Space-by- Space Method.

TABLE C405.3.2(1)
INTERIOR LIGHTING POWER ALLOWANCES: BUILDING AREA METHOD

BUILDING AREA TYPE	LPD (watts/ft^2)
Automotive facility	0.75
Convention center	0.64
Courthouse	0.79
Dining: bar lounge/leisure	0.80
Dining: cafeteria/fast food	0.76
Dining: family	0.71
Dormitory[a, b]	0.53
Exercise center	0.72
Fire station[a]	0.56
Gymnasium	0.76
Health care clinic	0.81
Hospital[a]	0.96
Hotel/Motel[a, b]	0.56
Library	0.83
Manufacturing facility	0.82
Motion picture theater	0.44
Multiple-family[c]	0.45
Museum	0.55
Office	0.64

(continued)

TABLE C405.3.2(1)—continued INTERIOR LIGHTING POWER ALLOWANCES: BUILDING AREA METHOD

BUILDING AREA TYPE	LPD (watts/ft^2)
Parking garage	0.18
Penitentiary	0.69
Performing arts theater	0.84
Police station	0.66
Post office	0.65
Religious building	0.67
Retail	0.84
School/university	0.72
Sports arena	0.76
Town hall	0.69
Transportation	0.50
Warehouse	0.45
Workshop	0.91

For SI: 1 watt per square foot = 10.76 w/m^2.

a. Where sleeping units are excluded from lighting power calculations by application of Section R404.1, neither the area of the sleeping units nor the wattage of lighting in the sleeping units is counted.

b. Where dwelling units are excluded from lighting power calculations by application of Section R404.1, neither the area of the dwelling units nor the wattage of lighting in the dwelling units is counted.

c. Dwelling units are excluded. Neither the area of the dwelling units nor the wattage of lighting in the dwelling units is counted.

TABLE C405.3.2(2)

INTERIOR LIGHTING POWER ALLOWANCES: SPACE-BY-SPACE METHOD

COMMON SPACE TYPES[a]	LPD (watts/ft²)
Atrium	
Less than 40 feet in height	0.48
Greater than 40 feet in height	0.60
Audience seating area	
In an auditorium	0.61
In a gymnasium	0.23
In a motion picture theater	0.27
In a penitentiary	0.67
In a performing arts theater	1.16
In a religious building	0.72
In a sports arena	0.33
Otherwise	0.33
Banking activity area	0.61
Breakroom (See Lounge/breakroom)	
Classroom/lecture hall/training room	
In a penitentiary	0.89
Otherwise	0.71
Computer room, data center	0.94
Conference/meeting/multipurpose room	0.97
Copy/print room	0.31

(continued)

TABLE C405.3.2(2)—continued INTERIOR LIGHTING POWER ALLOWANCES: SPACE-BY-SPACE METHOD

COMMON SPACE TYPES[a]	LPD (watts/ft²)
Corridor	
In a facility for the visually impaired (and not used primarily by the staff)[b]	0.71
In a hospital	0.71
Otherwise	0.41
Courtroom	1.20
Dining area	
In bar/lounge or leisure dining	0.86
In cafeteria or fast food dining	0.40
In a facility for the visually impaired (and not used primarily by the staff)[b]	1.27
In family dining	0.60
In a penitentiary	0.42
Otherwise	0.43
Electrical/mechanical room	0.43
Emergency vehicle garage	0.52
Food preparation area	1.09
Guestroom[c, d]	0.41
Laboratory	
In or as a classroom	1.11
Otherwise	1.33
Laundry/washing area	0.53
Loading dock, interior	0.88
Lobby	
For an elevator	0.65
In a facility for the visually impaired (and not used primarily by the staff)[b]	1.69
In a hotel	0.51
In a motion picture theater	0.23
In a performing arts theater	1.25
Otherwise	0.84
Locker room	0.52
Lounge/breakroom	
In a healthcare facility	0.42
Otherwise	0.59
Office	
Enclosed	0.74
Open plan	0.61
Parking area, interior	0.15
Pharmacy area	1.66
Restroom	
In a facility for the visually impaired (and not used primarily by the staff[b]	1.26
Otherwise	0.63
Sales area	1.05

(continued)

TABLE C405.3.2(2)—continued INTERIOR LIGHTING POWER ALLOWANCES: SPACE-BY-SPACE METHOD

COMMON SPACE TYPES[a]	LPD (watts/ft²)
Seating area, general	0.23
Stairwell	0.49
Storage room	0.38
Vehicular maintenance area	0.60
Workshop	1.26
BUILDING TYPE SPECIFIC SPACE TYPES[a]	**LPD (watts/ ft²)**
Automotive (see Vehicular maintenance area)	
Convention Center—exhibit space	0.61
Dormitory—living quarters[c, d]	0.50
Facility for the visually impaired[b]	
In a chapel (and not used primarily by the staff)	0.70
In a recreation room (and not used primarily by the staff)	1.77
Fire Station—sleeping quarters[c]	0.23
Gymnasium/fitness center	
In an exercise area	0.90
In a playing area	0.85
Healthcare facility	
In an exam/treatment room	1.40
In an imaging room	0.94
In a medical supply room	0.62
In a nursery	0.92
In a nurse's station	1.17
In an operating room	2.26
In a patient room[c]	0.68
In a physical therapy room	0.91
In a recovery room	1.25
Library	
In a reading area	0.96
In the stacks	1.18
Manufacturing facility	
In a detailed manufacturing area	0.80
In an equipment room	0.76
In an extra-high-bay area (greater than 50 feet floor-to-ceiling height)	1.42
In a high-bay area (25–50 feet floor-to-ceiling height)	1.24
In a low-bay area (less than 25 feet floor-to-ceiling height)	0.86

Museum	
In a general exhibition area	0.31
In a restoration room	1.10
Performing arts theater—dressing room	0.41
Post office—sorting area	0.76

(continued)

TABLE C405.3.2(2)—continued INTERIOR LIGHTING POWER ALLOWANCES: SPACE-BY-SPACE METHOD

COMMON SPACE TYPES[a]	LPD (watts/ft²)
Religious buildings	
In a fellowship hall	0.54
In a worship/pulpit/choir area	0.85
Retail facilities	
In a dressing/fitting room	0.51
In a mall concourse	0.82
Sports arena—playing area	
For a Class I facility[e]	2.94
For a Class II facility[f]	2.01
For a Class III facility[g]	1.30
For a Class IV facility[h]	0.86
Transportation facility	
At a terminal ticket counter	0.51
In a baggage/carousel area	0.39
In an airport concourse	0.25
Warehouse—storage area	
For medium to bulky, palletized items	0.33
For smaller, hand-carried items	0.69

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 watt per square foot = 10.76 w/m^2.

a. In cases where both a common space type and a building area specific space type are listed, the building area specific space type shall apply.

b. A 'Facility for the Visually Impaired' is a facility that is licensed or will be licensed by local or state authorities for senior long-term care, adult daycare, senior support or people with special visual needs.

c. Where sleeping units are excluded from lighting power calculations by application of Section R404.1, neither the area of the sleeping units nor the wattage of lighting in the sleeping units is counted.

d. Where dwelling units are excluded from lighting power calculations by application of Section R404.1, neither the area of the dwelling units nor the wattage of lighting in the dwelling units is counted.

e. Class I facilities consist of professional facilities; and semiprofessional, collegiate, or club facilities with seating for 5,000 or more spectators.

f. Class II facilities consist of collegiate and semiprofessional facilities with seating for fewer than 5,000 spectators; club facilities with seating for between 2,000 and 5,000 spectators; and amateur league and high school facilities with seating for more than 2,000 spectators.

g. Class III facilities consist of club, amateur league and high school facili- ties with seating for 2,000 or fewer spectators.

h. Class IV facilities consist of elementary school and recreational facilities; and amateur league and high school facilities without provision for spectators.

C405.3.2.1 Building Area Method. For the Building Area Method, the interior lighting power allowance is

calculated as follows:

1. For each building area type inside the building, determine the applicable building area type and the allowed lighting power density for that type from Table C405.3.2(1). For building area types not listed, select the building area type that most closely represents the use of that area. For the purposes of this method, an "area" shall be defined as all contiguous spaces that accommodate or are associated with a single building area type.
2. Determine the floor area for each building area type listed in Table C405.3.2(1) and multiply this area by the applicable value from Table C405.3.2(1) to determine the lighting power (watts) for each building area type.
3. The total interior lighting power allowance (watts) for the entire building is the sum of the lighting power from each building area type.

C405.3.2.2 Space-by-Space Method. Where a build- ing has unfinished spaces, the lighting power allowance for the unfinished spaces shall be the total connected lighting power for those spaces, or 0.2 watts per square foot (10.76 w/m^2), whichever is less. For the Space-by-Space Method, the interior lighting power allowance is calculated as follows:

1. For each space enclosed by partitions that are not less than 80 percent of the ceiling height, determine the applicable space type from Table C405.3.2(2). For space types not listed, select the space type that most closely represents the proposed use of the space. Where a space has multiple functions, that space may be divided into separate spaces.
2. Determine the total floor area of all the spaces of each space type and multiply by the value for the space type in Table C405.3.2(2) to deter- mine the lighting power (watts) for each space type.
3. The total interior lighting power allowance (watts) shall be the sum of the lighting power allowances for all space types.

C405.3.2.2.1 Additional interior lighting power. Where using the Space-by-Space Method, an increase in the interior lighting power allowance is permitted for specific lighting functions. Additional power shall be permitted only where the specified lighting is installed and controlled in accordance with Section C405.2.4. This additional power shall be used only for the specified luminaires and shall not be used for any other purpose. An increase in the interior lighting power allowance is permitted in the following cases:

1. For lighting equipment to be installed in sales areas specifically to highlight merchandise, the additional lighting power shall be determined in accordance with Equation 4-11.

Additional interior lighting power allowance = 1000 W + (Retail Area 1 × 0.45 W/ft^2) + (Retail Area 2 × 0.45W/ft^2) + (Retail Area 3 × 1.05 W/ft^2) + (Retail Area 4 × 1.87 W/ft^2)

For SI units:

Additional interior lighting power allowance = 1000 W + (Retail Area 1 × 4.8 W/m^2) + (Retail Area 2 × 4.84 W/m^2) + (Retail Area 3 × 11 W/m^2) + (Retail Area 4 × 20 W/m^2) **(Equation 4-11)**

where:

Retail Area 1 = The floor area for all products not listed in Retail Area 2, 3 or 4.

Retail Area 2 = The floor area used for the sale of vehicles, sporting goods and small electronics.

Retail Area 3 = The floor area used for the sale of furniture, clothing, cosmetics and artwork.

Retail Area 4 = The floor area used for the sale of jewelry, crystal and china.

Exception: Other merchandise categories are permitted to be included in Retail Areas 2 through 4, provided that justification documenting the need for additional lighting power based on visual inspection, contrast or other critical display is approved by the code official.

~~2. For spaces in which lighting is specified to be installed in addition to the general lighting for the purpose of decorative appearance or for highlighting art or exhibits, provided that the additional lighting power shall be not more than 0.9 W/ft^2 (9.7 W/m^2) in lobbies and not more than 0.75 W/ft^2 (8.1 W/m^2) in other spaces.~~

C405.4 Lighting for plant growth and maintenance. Not less than 95 percent of the permanently installed luminaires used for plant growth and maintenance shall have a photon efficiency of not less than 1.6 µmol/J as defined in accordance with ANSI/ASABE S640.

C405.5 Exterior lighting power requirements. The total connected exterior lighting power calculated in accordance

with Section C405.5.1 shall be not greater than the exterior lighting power allowance calculated in accordance with Section C405.5.2.

C405.5.1 Total connected exterior building exterior lighting power. The total exterior connected lighting power shall be the total maximum rated wattage of all lighting that is powered through the energy service for the building.

Exception: Lighting used for the following applications shall not be included.

1. Lighting *approved* because of safety considerations.
2. Emergency lighting automatically off during normal business operation.
3. Exit signs.
4. Specialized signal, directional and marker lighting associated with transportation.
5. Advertising signage or directional signage.
6. Integral to equipment or instrumentation and installed by its manufacturer.
7. Theatrical purposes, including performance, stage, film production and video production.
8. Athletic playing areas.
9. Temporary lighting.
10. Industrial production, material handling, transportation sites and associated storage areas.
11. Theme elements in theme/amusement parks.
12. Used to highlight features of art, public monuments and the national flag.
13. Lighting for water features and swimming pools.
14. Lighting controlled from within dwelling units, where the lighting complies with Section R404.1.

C405.5.2 Exterior lighting power allowance. The exterior lighting power allowance (watts) is calculated as follows:

1. Determine the Lighting Zone (LZ) for the building according to Table C405.5.2(1), unless otherwise specified by the code official.
2. For each exterior area that is to be illuminated by lighting that is powered through the energy service for the building, determine the applicable area type from Table C405.5.2(2). For area types not listed, select the area type that most closely represents the proposed use of the area.
3. Determine the total area or length of each area type and multiply by the value for the area type in Table C405.5.2(2) to determine the lighting power (watts) allowed for each area type.
4. The total exterior lighting power allowance (watts) is the sum of the base site allowance deter- mined according to Table C405.5.2(2), plus the watts from each area type.

TABLE C405.5.2(1) EXTERIOR LIGHTING ZONES

LIGHTING ZONE	DESCRIPTION
1	Developed areas of national parks, state parks, forest land, and rural areas
2	Areas predominantly consisting of residential zoning, neighborhood business districts, light industrial with limited nighttime use and residential mixed-use areas
3	All other areas not classified as lighting zone 1, 2 or 4
4	High-activity commercial districts in major metropolitan areas as designated by the local land use planning authority

TABLE C405.5.2(2)

LIGHTING POWER ALLOWANCES FOR BUILDING EXTERIORS

	LIGHTING ZONES			
	Zone 1	**Zone 2**	**Zone 3**	**Zone 4**
Base Site Allowance	350 W	400 W	500 W	900 W
Uncovered Parking Areas				
Parking areas and drives	0.03 W/ft^2	0.04 W/ft^2	0.06 W/ft^2	0.08 W/ft^2
Building Grounds				
Walkways and ramps less than 10 feet wide	0.50 W/linear foot	0.50 W/linear foot	0.60 W/linear foot	0.70 W/linear foot
Walkways and ramps 10 feet wide or greater, plaza areas, special feature areas	0.10 W/ft^2	0.10 W/ft^2	0.11 W/ft^2	0.14 W/ft^2
Dining areas	0.65 W/ft^2	0.65 W/ft^2	0.75 W/ft^2	0.95 W/ft^2
Stairways	0.60 W/ft^2	0.70 W/ft^2	0.70 W/ft^2	0.70 W/ft^2
Pedestrian tunnels	0.12 W/ft^2	0.12 W/ft^2	0.14 W/ft^2	0.21 W/ft^2
Landscaping	0.03 W/ft^2	0.04 W/ft^2	0.04 W/ft^2	0.04 W/ft^2
Building Entrances and Exits				
Pedestrian and vehicular entrances and exits	/linear foot of opening	/linear foot of opening	/linear foot of opening	/linear foot of opening
Entry canopies	0.20 W/ft^2	0.25 W/ft^2	0.40 W/ft^2	0.40 W/ft^2
Loading docks	0.35 W/ft^2	0.35 W/ft^2	0.35 W/ft^2	0.35 W/ft^2
Sales Canopies				
Free-standing and attached	0.40 W/ft^2	0.40 W/ft^2	0.60 W/ft^2	0.70 W/ft^2
Outdoor Sales				
Open areas (including vehicle sales lots)	0.20 W/ft^2	0.20 W/ft^2	0.35 W/ft^2	0.50 W/ft^2
Street frontage for vehicle sales lots in addition to “open area” allowance	No allowance	7 W/linear foot	7 W/linear foot	21 W/linear foot

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 watt per square foot = W/0.0929 m^2. W = watts.

TABLE C405.5.2(3)

INDIVIDUAL LIGHTING POWER ALLOWANCES FOR BUILDING EXTERIORS

LIGHTING ZONES				
	Zone 1	**Zone 2**	**Zone 3**	**Zone 4**
Building facades	No allowance	0.075 W/ft^2 of gross above-grade wall area	0.113 W/ft^2 of gross above-grade wall area	0.15 W/ft^2 of gross above-grade wall area
Automated teller machines (ATM) and night depositories	135 W per location plus 45 W per additional ATM per location			
Uncovered entrances and gate-house inspection stations at guarded facilities	0.50 W/ft^2 of area			
Uncovered loading areas for law enforcement, fire, ambulance and other emergency service vehicles	0.35 W/ft^2 of area			
Drive-up windows and doors	200 W per drive through			
Parking near 24-hour retail entrances.	400 W per main entry			

For SI: For SI: 1 watt per square foot = W/0.0929 m^2. W = watts.

C405.5.2.1 Additional exterior lighting power. Additional exterior lighting power allowances are available

for the specific lighting applications listed in Table C405.5.2(3). These additional power allowances shall be used only for the luminaires serving these specific applications and shall not be used to increase any other lighting power allowance.

C405.5.3 Gas lighting. Gas-fired lighting appliances shall not be permitted ~~equipped with continuously burning pilot ignition systems~~.

C405.6 Dwelling electrical meter. Each dwelling unit located in a Group R-2 building shall have a separate electrical meter.

C405.7 Electrical transformers. Low-voltage dry-type distribution electric transformers shall meet the minimum efficiency requirements of Table C405.7 as tested and rated in accordance with the test procedure listed in DOE 10 CFR 431. The efficiency shall be verified through certification under an approved certification program or, where a certification program does not exist, the equipment efficiency ratings shall be supported by data furnished by the trans- former manufacturer.

Exceptions: The following transformers are exempt:

1. Transformers that meet the *Energy Policy Act of 2005* exclusions based on the DOE 10 CFR 431 definition of special purpose applications.
2. Transformers that meet the *Energy Policy Act of 2005* exclusions that are not to be used in general purpose applications based on information provided in DOE 10 CFR 431.
3. Transformers that meet the *Energy Policy Act of 2005* exclusions with multiple voltage taps where the highest tap is not less than 20 percent more than the lowest tap.
4. Drive transformers.
5. Rectifier transformers.
6. Auto-transformers.
7. Uninterruptible power system transformers.
8. Impedance transformers.
9. Regulating transformers.
10. Sealed and nonventilating transformers.
11. Machine tool transformers.
12. Welding transformers.
13. Grounding transformers.
14. Testing transformers.

TABLE C405.7

MINIMUM NOMINAL EFFICIENCY LEVELS FOR DOE 10 CFR 431 LOW-VOLTAGE DRY-TYPE DISTRIBUTION TRANSFORMERS

SINGLE-PHASE TRANSFORMERS		THREE-PHASE TRANSFORMERS	
kVA[a]	Efficiency (%)[b]	kVA[a]	Efficiency (%)[b]
15	97.70	15	97.89
25	98.00	30	98.23
37.5	98.20	45	98.40
50	98.30	75	98.60
75	98.50	112.5	98.74
100	98.60	150	98.83
167	98.70	225	98.94
250	98.80	300	99.02
333	98.90	500	99.14
—	—	750	99.23
—	—	1000	99.28

a. kiloVolt-Amp rating.

b. Nominal efficiencies shall be established in accordance with the DOE 10 CFR 431 test procedure for low-voltage dry-type transformers.

C405.8 Electric motors. Electric motors shall meet the minimum efficiency requirements of Tables C405.8(1) through C405.8(4) when tested and rated in accordance with the DOE 10 CFR 431. The efficiency shall be verified through certification under an approved certification program or, where a certification program does not exist, the equipment efficiency ratings shall be supported by data furnished by the motor manufacturer.

Exception: The standards in this section shall not apply to the following exempt electric motors:

1. Air-over electric motors.
2. Component sets of an electric motor.
3. Liquid-cooled electric motors.
4. Submersible electric motors.
5. Inverter-only electric motors.

C405.9 Vertical and horizontal transportation systems and equipment. Vertical and horizontal transportation systems and equipment shall comply with this section.

C405.9.1 Elevator cabs. For the luminaires in each elevator cab, not including signals and displays, the sum of the lumens divided by the sum of the watts shall be not less than 35 lumens per watt. Ventilation fans in elevators that do not have their own air-conditioning system shall not consume more than 0.33 watts/cfm at the maximum rated speed of the fan. Controls shall be provided that will de-energize ventilation fans and lighting systems when the elevator is stopped, unoccupied and with its doors closed for over 15 minutes.

C405.9.2 Escalators and moving walks. Escalators and moving walks shall comply with ASME A17.1/CSA B44 and shall have automatic controls that reduce speed as permitted in accordance with ASME A17.1/CSA B44 and applicable local code.

Exception: A variable voltage drive system that reduces operating voltage in response to light loading conditions is an alternative to the reduced speed function.

C405.9.2.1 Energy recovery. Escalators shall be designed to recover electrical energy when resisting overspeed in the down direction. The escalator shall be designed to recover, on average, more power than is consumed by the power recovery feature of its motor controller system.

C405.10 Voltage drop. The total *voltage drop* across the combination of customer-owned service conductors, feeder conductors and branch circuit conductors shall not exceed 5 percent.

C405.11 Automatic receptacle control. The following shall have automatic receptacle control complying with Section C405.11.1:

1. At least 50 percent of all 125V, 15- and 20-amp receptacles installed in enclosed offices, conference rooms, rooms used primarily for copy or print functions, breakrooms, classrooms and individual workstations, including those installed in modular partitions and module office workstation systems.
2. At least 25 percent of branch circuit feeders installed for modular furniture not shown on the construction documents.

C405.11.1 Automatic receptacle control function. Automatic receptacle controls shall comply with the following:

1. Either split controlled receptacles shall be provided with the top receptacle controlled, or a controlled receptacle shall be located within 12 inches (304.8 mm) of each uncontrolled receptacle.
2. One of the following methods shall be used to provide control:
   - 2.1. A scheduled basis using a time-of-day operated control device that turns receptacle power off at specific programmed times and can be programmed separately for each day of the week. The control device shall be configured to provide an independent schedule for each portion of the building of not more than 5,000 square feet (464.5 m^2) and not more than one floor. The occupant shall be able to manually override an area for not more than 2 hours. Any individual override switch shall control the receptacles of not more than 5,000 feet (1524 m).
   - 2.2. An occupant sensor control that shall turn off receptacles within 20 minutes of all occupants leaving a space.
   - 2.3. An automated signal from another control or alarm system that shall turn off receptacles within 20 minutes after determining that the area is unoccupied.
3. All controlled receptacles shall be permanently marked in accordance with NFPA 70 and be uniformly distributed

throughout the space.

4. Plug-in devices shall not comply.

Exceptions: Automatic receptacle controls are not required for the following:

1. Receptacles specifically designated for equipment requiring continuous operation (24 hours per day, 365 days per year).
2. Spaces where an automatic control would endanger the safety or security of the room or building occupants.
3. Within a single modular office workstation, noncontrolled receptacles are permitted to be located more than 12 inches (304.8 mm), but not more than 72 inches (1828 mm) from the controlled receptacles serving that workstation.

TABLE C405.8(1)

MINIMUM NOMINAL FULL-LOAD EFFICIENCY FOR NEMA DESIGN A, NEMA DESIGN B, AND IEC DESIGN N MOTORS (EXCLUDING FIRE PUMP) ELECTRIC MOTORS AT 60 HZ[a, b]

MOTOR HORSEPOWER (STANDARD KILOWATT EQUIVALENT)	NOMINAL FULL-LOAD EFFICIENCY (%) AS OF JUNE 1, 2016							
	2 Pole		4 Pole		6 Pole		8 Pole	
	Enclosed	Open	Enclosed	Open	Enclosed	Open	Enclosed	Open
1 (0.75)	77.0	77.0	85.5	85.5	82.5	82.5	75.5	75.5
1.5 (1.1)	84.0	84.0	86.5	86.5	87.5	86.5	78.5	77.0
2 (1.5)	85.5	85.5	86.5	86.5	88.5	87.5	84.0	86.5
3 (2.2)	86.5	85.5	89.5	89.5	89.5	88.5	85.5	87.5
5 (3.7)	88.5	86.5	89.5	89.5	89.5	89.5	86.5	88.5
7.5 (5.5)	89.5	88.5	91.7	91.0	91.0	90.2	86.5	89.5
10 (7.5)	90.2	89.5	91.7	91.7	91.0	91.7	89.5	90.2
15 (11)	91.0	90.2	92.4	93.0	91.7	91.7	89.5	90.2
20 (15)	91.0	91.0	93.0	93.0	91.7	92.4	90.2	91.0
25 (18.5)	91.7	91.7	93.6	93.6	93.0	93.0	90.2	91.0
30 (22)	91.7	91.7	93.6	94.1	93.0	93.6	91.7	91.7
40 (30)	92.4	92.4	94.1	94.1	94.1	94.1	91.7	91.7
50 (37)	93.0	93.0	94.5	94.5	94.1	94.1	92.4	92.4
60 (45)	93.6	93.6	95.0	95.0	94.5	94.5	92.4	93.0
75 (55)	93.6	93.6	95.4	95.0	94.5	94.5	93.6	94.1
100 (75)	94.1	93.6	95.4	95.4	95.0	95.0	93.6	94.1
125 (90)	95.0	94.1	95.4	95.4	95.0	95.0	94.1	94.1
150 (110)	95.0	94.1	95.8	95.8	95.8	95.4	94.1	94.1
200 (150)	95.4	95.0	96.2	95.8	95.8	95.4	94.5	94.1
250 (186)	95.8	95.0	96.2	95.8	95.8	95.8	95.0	95.0
300 (224)	95.8	95.4	96.2	95.8	95.8	95.8	—	—
350 (261)	95.8	95.4	96.2	95.8	95.8	95.8	—	—
400 (298)	95.8	95.8	96.2	95.8	—	—	—	—
450 (336)	95.8	96.2	96.2	96.2	—	—	—	—
500 (373)	95.8	96.2	96.2	96.2	—	—	—	—

a. Nominal efficiencies shall be established in accordance with DOE 10 CFR 431.

b. For purposes of determining the required minimum nominal full-load efficiency of an electric motor that has a horsepower or kilowatt rating between two horsepower or two kilowatt ratings listed in this table, each such motor shall be deemed to have a listed horsepower or kilowatt rating, determined as follows:

1. A horsepower at or above the midpoint between the two consecutive horsepowers shall be rounded up to the higher of the two horsepowers.
2. A horsepower below the midpoint between the two consecutive horsepowers shall be rounded down to the lower of the two horsepowers.
3. A kilowatt rating shall be directly converted from kilowatts to horsepower using the formula: 1 kilowatt = (1/0.746) horsepower. The conversion should be calculated

to three significant decimal places, and the resulting horsepower shall be rounded in accordance with No. 1 or No. 2 above, as applicable.

TABLE C405.8(2)

MINIMUM NOMINAL FULL-LOAD EFFICIENCY FOR NEMA DESIGN C AND IEC DESIGN H MOTORS AT 60 HZ[a, b]

MOTOR HORSEPOWER (STANDARD KILOWATT EQUIVALENT)	NOMINAL FULL-LOAD EFFICIENCY (%) AS OF JUNE 1, 2016					
	4 Pole		6 Pole		8 Pole	
	Enclosed	Open	Enclosed	Open	Enclosed	Open
1 (0.75)	85.5	85.5	82.5	82.5	75.5	75.5
1.5 (1.1)	86.5	86.5	87.5	86.5	78.5	77.0
2 (1.5)	86.5	86.5	88.5	87.5	84.0	86.5
3 (2.2)	89.5	89.5	89.5	88.5	85.5	87.5
5 (3.7)	89.5	89.5	89.5	89.5	86.5	88.5
7.5 (5.5)	91.7	91.0	91.0	90.2	86.5	89.5
10 (7.5)	91.7	91.7	91.0	91.7	89.5	90.2
15 (11)	92.4	93.0	91.7	91.7	89.5	90.2
20 (15)	93.0	93.0	91.7	92.4	90.2	91.0
25 (18.5)	93.6	93.6	93.0	93.0	90.2	91.0
30 (22)	93.6	94.1	93.0	93.6	91.7	91.7
40 (30)	94.1	94.1	94.1	94.1	91.7	91.7
50 (37)	94.5	94.5	94.1	94.1	92.4	92.4
60 (45)	95.0	95.0	94.5	94.5	92.4	93.0
75 (55)	95.4	95.0	94.5	94.5	93.6	94.1
100 (75)	95.4	95.4	95.0	95.0	93.6	94.1
125 (90)	95.4	95.4	95.0	95.0	94.1	94.1
150 (110)	95.8	95.8	95.8	95.4	94.1	94.1
200 (150)	96.2	95.8	95.8	95.4	94.5	94.1

b. Nominal efficiencies shall be established in accordance with DOE 10 CFR 431.

c. For purposes of determining the required minimum nominal full-load efficiency of an electric motor that has a horsepower or kilowatt rating between two horsepower or two kilowatt ratings listed in this table, each such motor shall be deemed to have a listed horsepower or kilowatt rating, determined as follows:

1. A horsepower at or above the midpoint between the two consecutive horsepowers shall be rounded up to the higher of the two horsepowers.
2. A horsepower below the midpoint between the two consecutive horsepowers shall be rounded down to the lower of the two horsepowers.
3. A kilowatt rating shall be directly converted from kilowatts to horsepower using the formula: 1 kilowatt = (1/0.746) horsepower. The conversion should be calculated to three significant decimal places, and the resulting horsepower shall be rounded in accordance with No. 1 or No. 2 above, as applicable.

TABLE C405.8(3)

MINIMUM AVERAGE FULL-LOAD EFFICIENCY POLYPHASE SMALL ELECTRIC MOTORS[a]

MOTOR HORSEPOWER	OPEN MOTORS			
	Number of Poles	2	4	6
	Synchronous Speed (RPM)	3600	1800	1200
0.25	—	65.6	69.5	67.5
0.33	—	69.5	73.4	71.4
0.50	—	73.4	78.2	75.3
0.75	—	76.8	81.1	81.7
1	—	77.0	83.5	82.5
1.5	—	84.0	86.5	83.8

2	—	85.5	86.5	N/A
3	—	85.5	86.9	N/A

N/A = Not Applicable.

a. Average full-load efficiencies shall be established in accordance with DOE 10 CFR 431.

TABLE C405.8(4)

MINIMUM AVERAGE FULL-LOAD EFFICIENCY FOR CAPACITOR-START CAPACITOR-RUN AND CAPACITOR-START INDUCTION-RUN SMALL ELECTRIC MOTORS[a]

MOTOR HORSEPOWER	OPEN MOTORS			
	Number of Poles	2	4	6
	Synchronous Speed (RPM)	3600	1800	1200
0.25	—	66.6	68.5	62.2
0.33	—	70.5	72.4	66.6
0.50	—	72.4	76.2	76.2
0.75	—	76.2	81.8	80.2
1	—	80.4	82.6	81.1
1.5	—	81.5	83.8	N/A
2	—	82.9	84.5	N/A
3	—	84.1	N/A	N/A

N/A = Not Applicable.

a. Average full-load efficiencies shall be established in accordance with DOE 10 CFR 431.

C405.12 Energy monitoring. ~~New~~ Buildings ~~with a gross *conditioned floor area* of 25,000 square feet (2322 m²) or larger~~ shall be equipped to measure, monitor, record and report energy consumption data in compliance with Sections C405.12.1 through C405.12.5. A plan for quantifying annual energy type and use disclosure in compliance with Sections C405.12.1 through C405.12.8 shall be submitted with the construction documents.

Exceptions:

1. Buildings less than ~~10,000~~ 5,000 square feet (929 m2).
2. Existing buildings shall not be required to comply with Sections C405.12.1 through C405.12.8.
3. R-2 occupancies with less than 10,000 square feet (929 m2) of common area. ~~and individual tenant spaces are not required to comply with this section provided that the space has its own utility services and meters and has less than 5,000 square feet (464.5 m²) of *conditioned floor area*~~.
4. Individual tenant spaces less than 5,000 square feet (464.5 m2) with their own utility service and meter.

C405.12.1 Electrical energy metering. For all electrical energy supplied to the building and its associated site, including but not limited to site lighting, parking, recreational facilities and other areas that serve the building and its occupants, meters or other measurement devices shall be provided to collect energy consumption data for each end-use category required by Section C405.12.2.

C405.12.2 End-use electric metering categories. Meters or other *approved* measurement devices shall be provided to collect energy use data for each end-use category indicated in Table C405.12.2. Where multiple meters are used to measure any end-use category, the data acquisition system shall total all of the energy used by that category. Not more than 5 percent of the measured load for each of the end-use categories indicated in Table C405.12.2 shall be permitted to be from a load that is not within that category.

Exceptions:

1. HVAC and water heating equipment serving only an individual dwelling unit shall not require end-use metering.
2. End-use metering shall not be required for fire pumps, stairwell pressurization fans or any system that operates only during testing or emergency.
3. End-use metering shall not be required for an individual tenant space having a floor area not greater than 2,500 square feet (232 m^2) where a dedicated source meter complying with Section C405.12.3 is provided.

TABLE C405.12.2

ELECTRICAL ENERGY USE CATEGORIES

LOAD CATEGORY	DESCRIPTION OF ENERGY USE
Total HVAC system	Heating, cooling and ventilation, including but not limited to fans, pumps, boilers, chillers and water heating. Energy used by 120-volt equipment, or by 208/120-volt equipment that is located in a building where the main service is 480/277-volt power, is permitted to be excluded from total HVAC system energy use.
Interior lighting	Lighting systems located within the building.
Exterior lighting	Lighting systems located on the building site but not within the building.
Plug loads	Devices, appliances and equipment connected to convenience receptacle outlets.
Process load	Any single load that is not included in an HVAC, lighting or plug load category and that exceeds 5 percent of the peak connected load of the whole building, including but not limited to data centers, manufacturing equipment and commercial kitchens.
Electric vehicle charging	Electric vehicle charging loads.
Building operations and other miscellaneous loads	The remaining loads not included elsewhere in this table, including but not limited to vertical transportation systems, automatic doors, motorized shading systems, ornamental fountains, ornamental fireplaces, ~~swimming pools, in- ground spas and snow-melt systems.~~
Electric hot water heating	Electricity used to generate hot water. Exception: Electric water heating with design capacity that is less than 10 percent of building service rating
Snowmelt	Electricity used to melt snow
Pools and permanent spas	Electricity used to heat pools and permanent spas

C405.12.3 Electrical Meters. Meters or other measurement devices required by this section shall be configured to automatically communicate energy consumption data to the data acquisition system required by Section C405.12.4. Source meters shall be allowed to be any digital-type meter. Lighting, HVAC or other building systems that can self-monitor their energy consumption shall be permitted instead of meters. Current sensors shall be permitted, provided that they have a tested accuracy of ±2 percent. Required metering systems and equipment shall have the capability to provide at least hourly data that is fully integrated into the data acquisition system and graphical energy report in accordance with Sections C405.12.4 and C405.12.5. Non-intrusive load monitoring (NILM) packages that extract energy consumption data from detailed electric waveform analysis can be substituted for individual meters if the equivalent data can be made available for collection in Section C405.12.4 and reporting in Section C405.12.5.

C405.12.4 Electrical energy data acquisition system. A data acquisition system shall have the capability to store the data from the required meters and other sensing devices for a minimum of 36 months. The data acquisition system shall have the capability to store real-time energy consumption data and provide hourly, daily, monthly and yearly logged data for each end-use category required by Section C405.12.2. The data acquisition system shall have the capability of providing building total peak electric demand and the time(s) of day and time(s) of year at which the peak occurs. Peak demand shall be integrated over the same time period as the underlying meter reading rate, which is typically 15 minutes but shall be no longer than one hour.

C405.12.5 Graphical energy report. A permanent and readily accessible reporting mechanism shall be provided in the building that is accessible by building operation and management personnel. The reporting mechanism shall have the capability to graphically provide the electrical energy consumption for each end-use category required by Section C405.12.2 at least every hour, day, month and year for the previous 36 months. The graphical report shall also incorporate natural gas interval data or the ability to enter gas utility bills into the report.

C405.12.6 Non-electrical energy Consumption of non-electrical energy such as gas, district heating or cooling, unregulated fuel sources, or other non-renewable energy shall be automatically metered or a method developed for usage calculation annually or more frequently from energy bills. Natural gas usage shall be monitored through on site interval metering or from utility interval data.

C405.12.7 Renewable energy The ability to measure the production of on-site renewable energy shall be provided with the same or greater frequency as metered systems.

C405.12.8 Plan for disclosure The plan for annual energy use data gathering and disclosure shall include the following:

1. Property information including building type, total gross floor area, year built or year planned for construction completion, and occupancy type.
2. Total annual building site energy use per unit area (square foot) of gross floor area as collected or documented through Section C405.12.5 (electrical) and Section C405.12.6 (non-electrical) sources, separated by energy type (electric, gas, district cooling or heating, unregulated fuel sources etc.). Electrical energy shall be further broken down by load type as identified in Table C405.12.2.
4. Annual site generated renewable energy per unit area (square foot) of gross floor area.
5. Peak electric demand per unit area (square foot) of gross floor area, with an estimate of relative building system contribution to that peak, and the time and date of the peak.

C405.12.9 Energy Reporting Requirements: Buildings shall be subject to Section 8.60 – Building IQ of the Aspen Municipal Code and shall follow the requirements for a "Non-City Covered Property." Group R-2 buildings shall comply with the requirements of the Multi-Family Residential properties category in the nearest applicable square footage category. All other occupancy group buildings shall comply with the requirements of the Commercial properties category in the nearest applicable square footage category. This requirement shall supersede the applicability statements in Section 8.60.030 and the exceptions listed in Section 8.60.020.~~M~~, as amended.

C405.13 Electric Vehicle Power Transfer Infrastructure. New parking facilities shall be provided with electric vehicle power transfer infrastructure in compliance with Sections C405.13.1 through C405.13.6.

C405.13.1 Quantity. The number of required *DCFC EVSE spaces*, *EVSE spaces*, *EV ready spaces* and *EV capable spaces* shall be determined in accordance with this Section and Table C405.13.1 based on the total number of automobile parking spaces and shall be rounded up to the nearest whole number. For R2 buildings, the Table requirements shall be based on the total number of dwelling units or the total number of automobile parking spaces, whichever is less.

1. Where more than one parking facility is provided on a building site, the number of required automobile parking spaces required to have EV power transfer infrastructure shall be calculated separately for each parking facility.
2. Where one shared parking facility serves multiple building occupancies, the required number of spaces shall be determined proportionally based on the floor area of each building occupancy.
3. Installed *EVSE spaces* that exceed the minimum requirements of this section may be used to meet minimum requirements for *EV ready spaces* and *EV capable spaces*.
4. Installed *EV ready spaces* that exceed the minimum requirements of this section may be used to meet minimum requirements for *EV capable spaces*.
5. Requirements for a Group S-2 parking garage shall be determined by the occupancies served by that parking garage. Where new automobile spaces do not serve specific occupancies, the values for Group S-2 parking garage in Table C405.13.1 shall be used.
6. Direct Current Fast Charging.
    a. For Groups A, B, E, I, M and S-2 Occupancies with 5 or more parking spaces, the first required EVSE Installed Space shall be a DCFC EVSE.
    b. The number of *EVSE Installed Spaces* for Groups A, B, E, I, M and S-2 Occupancies may be reduced by up to ten per DCFC EVSE provided that the building includes not less than one parking space equipped with a DCFC EVSE and not less than one EV Ready space. A maximum of fifty spaces may be reduced from the total number of EVSE Installed spaces.
7. In addition to the quantities required elsewhere in this section, 20% of accessible parking spaces shall be *EVSE spaces*. Where van-accessible parking spaces are provided, they shall be EVSE spaces contributing to the 20%. All other accessible parking spaces shall be *EV Capable*.

Table C405.13.1 REQUIRED EV POWER TRANSFER INFRASTRUCTURE

OCCUPANCY	EVSE SPACES	EV READY SPACES	EV CAPABLE SPACES
GROUP A	10%	0%	25%
GROUP B	15%	0%	30%
GROUP E	2%	0%	5%
GROUP F	2%	0%	5%
GROUP H	1%	0%	0%
GROUP I	2%	0%	5%
GROUP M	10%	0%	25%
GROUP R-1	20%	5%	75%
GROUP R-2	0%	100%	0%
GROUP R-4	2%	0%	5%
GROUP S exclusive of parking garages	1%	0%	0%
GROUP S-2 parking garages	10%	0%	30%

C405.13.2 EV Capable Spaces. Each *EV capable space* used to meet the requirements of Section C405.13.1 shall comply with all of the following:

1. A continuous raceway or cable assembly shall be installed between an enclosure or outlet located within 3 feet (914 mm) of the *EV capable space* and a suitable panelboard or other onsite electrical distribution equipment.
2. Installed raceway or cable assembly shall be sized and rated to supply an minimum circuit capacity in accordance with C405.13.5
3. The electrical distribution equipment to which the raceway or cable assembly connects shall have sufficient dedicated space and spare electrical capacity for a 2-pole circuit breaker or set of fuses.
4. The electrical enclosure or outlet and the electrical distribution equipment directory shall be marked: "For future electric vehicle supply equipment (EVSE)."

C405.13.3 EV Ready Spaces. Each branch circuit serving *EV ready spaces* used to meet the requirements of

Section C405.13.1 shall comply with all of the following:

1. Terminate at a receptacle outlet, located within 3 feet (914 mm) of each *EV ready space* it serves.
2. Have a minimum electrical distribution system and circuit capacity in accordance with Section C405.13.5.
3. The panelboard or other electrical distribution equipment directory shall designate the branch circuit as "For electric vehicle supply equipment (EVSE)" and the outlet or enclosure shall be marked "For electric vehicle supply equipment (EVSE)."

C405.13.4 EVSE Spaces. An installed *EVSE* with multiple output connections shall be permitted to serve multiple *EVSE spaces*. Each *EVSE* installed to meet the requirements of Section C405.13.1, serving either a single *EVSE space* or multiple *EVSE spaces*, shall comply with all of the following:

1. Be served by an electrical distribution system in accordance with Section C405.13.5.
   Exception: *DCFC EVSE spaces*
2. Have a minimum nameplate charging capacity of 6.2 kVA (or 30A at 208/240V) per EVSE space served.
   Exception: *DCFC EVSE spaces*
3. Be located within 3 feet (914 mm) of each *EVSE space* it serves.
4. Be installed in accordance with Section C405.13.4.1.

C405.13.4.1 EVSE Installation *EVSE* shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 70 and shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 2202 or UL 2594. *EVSE* shall be accessible in accordance with International Building Code Section 1107.

C405.13.5 Electrical distribution system capacity. The electrical distribution system serving each *EV capable space*, *EV ready space*, and *EVSE space* used to comply with Section C405.13.1 shall comply with one of the following:

1. Sized for a calculated EV charging load of not less than 6.2 kVA for each EV ready space or EVSE space it serves.
2. The requirements of Section C405.13.5.1.

C405.13.5.1 Capacity Management for EV loads. The capacity of each branch circuit serving multiple *EVSE spaces*, *EV ready spaces* or *EV capable spaces* designed to be controlled by an energy management system providing load management in accordance with NFPA 70, shall comply with one of the following:

1. Be sized for a minimum calculated load of 3.3 kVA per *EVSE*, *EV ready* or *EV capable space*.
2. Where all (100%) of the automobile spaces are *EVSE* or *EV ready spaces*, be sized for a minimum calculated load of 2.1 kVA per *EVSE* or *EV ready space*.

Where an energy management system is used to control EV charging loads for the purposes of this section, it shall not be configured to turn off electrical power to *EVSE* or *EV ready spaces* used to comply with Section C405.13.1.

C405.14 Renewable energy infrastructure. A solar-ready zone shall be located on the roof of buildings that are oriented between 110 degrees and 270 degrees of true north or have low-slope roofs. Solar-ready zones shall comply with Sections C405.14.1 through C405.14.6.

Exceptions:

1. A building with a permanently installed, on-site renewable energy system.
2. A building with a solar-ready zone that is shaded for more than 70 percent of daylight hours annually.
3. Any building where more than 50 percent of roof area would be shaded from direct-beam sunlight by existing natural objects or by structures that are not part of the building for more than 2500 annual hours between 8:00 a.m. and 4:00 p.m.
4. A building where the licensed design professional certifies that the incident solar radiation available to the building is not suitable for a solar-ready zone.
5. A building where the licensed design professional certifies that the solar zone area required by Section CB103.3 cannot be met because of extensive rooftop equipment, skylights, vegetative roof areas or other obstructions.

C405.14.1 Construction document requirements for a solar-ready zone. Construction documents shall indicate

the solar-ready zone.

C405.14.2 Solar-ready zone area. The total solar-ready zone area shall be not less than 40 percent of the roof area calculated as the horizontally projected gross roof area less the area covered by skylights, occupied roof decks, vegetative roof areas and mandatory *access* or set back areas as required by the *International Fire Code*. The solar-ready zone shall be a single area or smaller, separated sub-zone areas. Each sub-zone shall be not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) in width in the narrowest dimension.

C405.14.3 Obstructions. Solar ready zones shall be free from obstructions, including pipes, vents, ducts, HVAC equipment, skylights and roof-mounted equipment.

C405.14.4 Roof loads and documentation. A collateral dead load of not less than 5 pounds per square foot (5 psf) (24.41 kg/m2) shall be included in the gravity and lateral design calculations for the solar-ready zone. The structural design loads for roof dead load and roof live load shall be indicated on the construction documents.

C405.14.5 Electrical service reserved space. The main electrical service panel shall have a reserved space to allow installation of a dual-pole circuit breaker for future solar electric. The reserved spaces shall be positioned at the end of the panel that is opposite from the panel supply conductor connection.

C405.14.6 Construction documentation certificate. A permanent certificate, indicating the solar-ready zone and other requirements of this section, shall be posted near the electrical distribution panel, water heater or other conspicuous location by the builder or registered design professional.

C405.15 Electrical energy storage system ready. Each building shall have one or more reserved ESS-ready areas to accommodate future electrical storage complying with the following:

1. Energy storage system rated energy capacity (kWH) ≥ Gross conditioned floor area of the three largest stories (sqft) x 0.0008 kWh/sqft
2. Energy storage system rated power capacity (kW) > Gross conditioned floor area of three largest stories (sqft) x 0.0002 kW/sqft

Exception: Dwellings with an installed *Energy Storage System (ESS)* sized in accordance with this section.

C405.15.1 ESS-ready location. Each ESS-ready area shall be located in accordance with Section 1207 of the International Fire Code.

C405.15.2 ESS-ready minimum area requirements. Each ESS-ready area shall be sized in accordance with the spacing requirements of Section 1207 of the International Fire Code and the UL9540 or UL9540a designated rating of the planned system. Where rated to UL9540a, the area shall be sized in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

C405.15.3 Electrical distribution equipment. The onsite electrical distribution equipment shall have sufficient capacity, rating, and space to allow installation of overcurrent devices and circuit wiring in accordance with NFPA 70 for future electrical ESS installation complying with the capacity criteria of Section C405.15.2.

C405.16 Inverters. Direct-current-to-alternating-current inverters serving on-site renewable energy systems or on-site electrical energy storage systems-shall be compliant with IEEE 1547-2018a and UL 1741-2021.

C405.17 Additional electric infrastructure. Buildings that contain *combustion equipment* shall be required to install electric infrastructure in accordance with this section.

C405.17.1 Residential combustion cooking. Spaces containing cooking equipment not designated *as commercial cooking appliances* shall be provided with a dedicated branch circuit in compliance with NFPA 70 Section 422.10. The branch circuit shall terminate within 6 feet (1829 mm) of fossil fuel ranges, cooktops and ovens and be accessible with no obstructions. Both ends of the branch circuit shall be labeled with the words “For Future Electric Cooking Equipment” and be electrically isolated.

C405.17.2 Combustion clothes drying. Spaces containing combustion equipment for clothes drying shall comply with either C405.17.4.1 or C405.17.4.2

C405.17.2.1 Commercial drying. Spaces containing clothes drying equipment, and end-uses for commercial laundry applications shall be provided with conduit that is continuous between a junction box located within 3 feet (914 mm) of the equipment and an electrical panel. The junction box, conduit and bus bar in the electrical panel shall be rated and sized to accommodate a branch circuit with sufficient capacity for an equivalent electric equipment with an equivalent equipment capacity. The electrical junction box and electrical panel shall have labels stating, "For Future Electric Clothes Drying Equipment."

C405.17.2.2 Residential drying. Spaces containing clothes drying equipment, appliances, and end-uses serving dwelling units or sleeping areas with a capacity less than or equal to 9.2 cubic feet shall be provided with a dedicated 240-volt branch circuit with a minimum capacity of 30 amps shall terminate within 6 feet (1829 mm) of fossil fuel clothes dryers and shall be accessible with no obstructions. Both ends of the branch circuit shall be labeled with the words "For Future Electric Clothes Drying Equipment" and be electrically isolated.

SECTION C406
ADDITIONAL EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS

C406.1 Additional energy efficiency credit requirements. New buildings shall achieve a total of 10 credits from Tables C406.1(1) through C406.1(5) where the table is selected based on the use group of the building and from credit calculations as specified in relevant subsections of Section C406. Where a building contains multiple-use groups, credits from each use group shall be weighted by floor area of each group to determine the weighted average building credit. Credits from the tables or calculation shall be achieved where a building complies with one or more of the following:

1. More efficient HVAC performance in accordance with Section C406.2.
2. Reduced lighting power in accordance with Section C406.3.
3. Enhanced lighting controls in accordance with Section C406.4.
4. On-site supply of renewable energy in accordance with Section C406.5.
5. Provision of a dedicated outdoor air system for certain HVAC equipment in accordance with Section C406.6.
6. High-efficiency service water heating in accordance with Section C406.7.
7. Enhanced envelope performance in accordance with Section C406.8.
8. Reduced air infiltration in accordance with Section C406.9
9. Where not required by Section C405.12, include an energy monitoring system in accordance with Section C406.10.
10. Where not required by Section C403.2.3, include a fault detection and diagnostics (FDD) system in accordance with Section C406.11.
11. Efficient kitchen equipment in accordance with Section C406.12.

C406.1.1 Tenant spaces. Tenant spaces shall comply with sufficient options from Tables C406.1(1) through C406.1(5) to achieve a minimum number of 5 credits, where credits are selected from Section C406.2, C406.3, C406.4, C406.6, C406.7 or C406.10. Where the entire building complies using credits from Section C406.5, C406.8 or C406.9, tenant spaces shall be deemed to comply with this section.

Exception: Previously occupied tenant spaces that comply with this code in accordance with Section C501.

C406.2 More efficient HVAC equipment performance. Equipment shall exceed the minimum efficiency requirements listed in the tables in Section C403.3.2. *Variable refrigerant flow systems* listed in the energy efficiency provisions of ANSI/ASHRAE/IES 90.1 in accordance with Section C406.2.1, C406.2.2, C406.2.3 or C406.2.4 shall also meet applicable requirements of Section C403. Energy efficiency credits for heating shall be selected from Section C406.2.1 or C406.2.3 and energy efficiency credits for cooling shall be selected from Section C406.2.2, C406.2.4 or C406.2.5. Selected credits shall include a heating or cooling energy efficiency credit or both. Equipment not listed in Tables C403.3.2(1) through C403.3.2(9) and *variable refrigerant flow systems* not listed in the energy efficiency provisions of ANSI/ASHRAE/IES 90.1 shall be limited to 10 percent of the total building system capacity for heating equipment where selecting Section C406.2.1 or C406.2.3 and cooling equipment where selecting Section C406.2.2, C406.2.4 or C406.2.5.

C406.2.1 Five-percent heating efficiency improvement. Equipment shall exceed the minimum heating efficiency requirements by 5 percent.

C406.2.2 Five-percent cooling efficiency improvement. Equipment shall exceed the minimum cooling and heat rejection efficiency requirements by 5 percent. Where multiple cooling performance requirements are provided,

C406.2.3 Ten-percent heating efficiency improvement. Equipment shall exceed the minimum heating efficiency requirements by 10 percent.

C406.2.4 Ten-percent cooling efficiency improvement. Equipment shall exceed the minimum cooling and heat rejection efficiency requirements by 10 percent. Where multiple cooling performance requirements are provided, the equipment shall exceed the annual energy requirement, including IEER, SEER and IPLV.

C406.2.5 More than 10-percent cooling efficiency improvement. Where equipment exceeds the minimum annual cooling and heat rejection efficiency requirements by more than 10 percent, energy efficiency credits for cooling may be determined using Equation 4-12, rounded to the nearest whole number. Where multiple cooling performance requirements are provided, the equipment shall exceed the annual energy requirement, including IEER, SEER and IPLV.

the equipment shall exceed the annual energy require- ment, including IEER, SEER and IPLV.

$$EEC_{HEC} = EEC_{10}[1 + ((CEI - 10 \text{ percent}) \div 10 \text{ percent})]$$

(Equation 4-12)

TABLE C406.1(1)

ADDITIONAL ENERGY EFFICIENCY CREDITS FOR GROUP B OCCUPANCIES

SECTION	CLIMATE ZONE																
	0A & 1A	0B & 1B	2A	2B	3A	3B	3C	4A	4B	4C	5A	5B	5C	6A	6B	7	8
C406.2.1: 5% heating efficiency improvement	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	1	NA	NA	1	1	NA	1
C406.2.2: 5% cooling efficiency improvement	6	6	5	5	4	4	3	3	3	2	2	2	1	2	2	2	1
C406.2.3: 10% heating efficiency improvement	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	2	1	1	2	2	NA	1
C406.2.4: 10% cooling efficiency improvement	11	12	10	9	7	7	6	5	6	4	4	5	3	4	3	3	3
C406.3: Reduced lighting power	9	8	9	9	9	9	10	8	9	9	7	8	8	6	7	7	6
C406.4: Enhanced digital lighting controls	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	1	2	1	1
C406.5: On-site renewable energy	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9
C406.6: Dedicated outdoor air	4	4	4	4	4	3	2	5	3	2	5	3	2	7	4	5	3
C406.7.2: Recovered or renewable water heating	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
C406.7.3: Efficient fossil fuel water heater	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
C406.7.4: Heat pump water heater	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
C406.8: Enhanced envelope performance	1	4	2	4	4	3	NA	7	4	5	10	7	6	11	10	14	16
C406.9: Reduced air infiltration	2	1	1	2	4	1	NA	8	2	3	11	4	1	15	8	11	6
C406.10: Energy monitoring	4	4	4	4	3	3	3	3	3	3	2	3	2	2	2	2	2

C406.11: Fault detection and diagnostics system	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	1	~~1~~

NA = Not Applicable.

where:

EEC_{HEC} = Energy efficiency credits for cooling efficiency improvement.

EEC_{10} = Section C406.2.4 credits from Tables C406.1(1) through C406.1(5).

CEI = The lesser of: the improvement above minimum cooling and heat rejection efficiency requirements or 15 percent.

C406.3 Reduced lighting power by more than 10 percent. Buildings shall comply with Section C406.3.1 or C406.3.2, and dwelling units and sleeping units within the building shall comply with Section C406.3.3.

C406.3.1 Reduced lighting power by more than 10 percent. The total connected interior lighting power calculated in accordance with Section C405.3.1 shall be less than 90 percent of the total lighting power allowance calculated in accordance with Section C405.3.2.

C406.3.2 Reduced lighting power by more than 15 percent. Where the total connected interior lighting power calculated in accordance with Section C405.3.1 is less than 85 percent of the total lighting power allowance calculated in accordance with Section C405.3.2, additional energy efficiency credits shall be determined based on Equation 4-13, rounded to the nearest whole number.

$$AEEC_{LPA} = AEEC_{10} \times 10 \times (LPA - LPD) / LPA$$

where:

$AEEC_{LPA}$ = Section C406.3.2 additional energy efficiency credits.

$AEEC_{10}$ = Section C406.3.1 credits from Tables C406.1(1) through C406.1(5).

LPA = Total lighting power allowance calculated in accordance with Section C405.3.2.

LPD = Total connected interior lighting power calculated in accordance with Section C405.3.1.

(Equation 4-13)

C406.3.3 Lamp efficacy. Not less than 95 percent of the permanently installed lighting, excluding kitchen appliance light fixtures, serving dwelling units and sleeping units shall be provided by lamps with an efficacy of not less than 65 lumens per watt or luminaires with an efficacy of not less than 45 lumens per watt.

TABLE C406.1(2)

ADDITIONAL ENERGY EFFICIENCY CREDITS FOR GROUP R AND I OCCUPANCIES

SECTION	CLIMATE ZONE																
	~~0A & 1A~~	~~0B & 1B~~	~~2A~~	~~2B~~	~~3A~~	~~3B~~	~~3C~~	~~4A~~	~~4B~~	~~4C~~	~~5A~~	~~5B~~	~~5C~~	~~6A~~	~~6B~~	~~7~~	~~8~~
C406.2.1: 5% heating efficiency improvement	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~1~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~1~~	~~NA~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~2~~	~~1~~	2	~~2~~
C406.2.2: 5% cooling efficiency improvement	~~3~~	~~3~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~NA~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~NA~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	1	~~NA~~
C406.2.3: 10% heating efficiency improvement	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~1~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~1~~	~~3~~	~~2~~	3	~~4~~
C406.2.4: 10% cooling efficiency improvement	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~4~~	~~3~~	~~2~~	~~3~~	~~1~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	1	~~1~~
C406.3: Reduced lighting power	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	2	~~2~~
C406.4: Enhanced digital lighting controls	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	NA	~~NA~~
C406.5: On-site renewable energy	~~8~~	~~8~~	~~8~~	~~8~~	~~7~~	~~8~~	~~8~~	~~7~~	~~7~~	~~7~~	~~7~~	~~7~~	~~7~~	~~7~~	~~7~~	7	~~7~~
C406.6: Dedicated outdoor air system	~~3~~	~~4~~	~~3~~	~~3~~	~~4~~	~~2~~	~~NA~~	~~6~~	~~3~~	~~4~~	~~8~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~10~~	~~7~~	11	~~12~~

C406.7.2: Recovered or renewable water heating	~~10~~	~~9~~	~~11~~	~~10~~	~~13~~	~~12~~	~~15~~	~~14~~	~~14~~	~~15~~	~~14~~	~~14~~	~~16~~	~~14~~	~~15~~	15	~~15~~
C406.7.3: Efficient fossil fuel water heater	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~6~~	~~6~~	~~8~~	~~7~~	~~8~~	~~8~~	~~8~~	~~9~~	~~9~~	~~9~~	~~10~~	~~10~~	~~9~~	10	~~11~~
C406.7.4: Heat pump water heater	~~6~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	5	~~5~~
C406.8: Enhanced envelope performance	~~3~~	~~6~~	~~3~~	~~5~~	~~4~~	~~4~~	~~1~~	~~4~~	~~3~~	~~3~~	~~4~~	~~5~~	~~3~~	~~5~~	~~4~~	6	~~6~~
C406.9: Reduced air infiltration	~~6~~	~~5~~	~~3~~	~~11~~	~~6~~	~~4~~	~~NA~~	~~7~~	~~3~~	~~3~~	~~9~~	~~5~~	~~1~~	~~13~~	~~6~~	8	~~3~~
C406.10: Energy monitoring	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	1	~~1~~
C406.11: Fault detection and diagnostics system	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~NA~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~NA~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~NA~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	1	~~1~~

NA = Not Applicable.

C406.4 Enhanced digital lighting controls. Interior general lighting in the building shall have the following enhanced lighting controls that shall be located, scheduled and operated in accordance with Sections C405.2.1 through C405.2.3.

1. Luminaires shall be configured for continuous dimming.
2. Luminaires shall be addressed individually. Where individual addressability is not available for the luminaire class type, a controlled group of not more than four luminaries shall be allowed.
3. Not more than eight luminaires shall be controlled together in a *daylight zone*.
4. Fixtures shall be controlled through a digital control system that includes the following function:
    4.1. Control reconfiguration based on digital addressability.
    4.2. Load shedding.
    4.3. Occupancy sensors shall be capable of being reconfigured through the digital control system.
5. Construction documents shall include submittal of a Sequence of Operations, including a specification outlining each of the functions in Item 4.
6. Functional testing of lighting controls shall comply with Section C408.

C406.5 On-site renewable energy. Buildings shall comply with Section C406.5.1 or C406.5.2. On-site renewable energy systems installed in accordance with this section shall not receive credit in the REMP appendix.

C406.5.1 Basic renewable credit. The total minimum ratings of on-site renewable energy systems, not including systems used for credits under Sections C406.7.2, shall be one of the following:

1. Not less than 0.86 Btu/h per square foot (2.7 W/m^2) or 0.25 watts per square foot (2.7 W/m^2) of *conditioned floor area*.
2. Not less than 2 percent of the annual energy used within the building for building mechanical and service water-heating equipment and lighting regulated in Section C405.

TABLE C406.1(3)

ADDITIONAL ENERGY EFFICIENCY CREDITS FOR GROUP E OCCUPANCIES

SECTION	CLIMATE ZONE																
	~~0A & 1A~~	~~0B & 1B~~	~~2A~~	~~2B~~	~~3A~~	~~3B~~	~~3C~~	~~4A~~	~~4B~~	~~4C~~	~~5A~~	~~5B~~	~~5C~~	~~6A~~	~~6B~~	~~7~~	~~8~~
C406.2.1: 5% heating efficiency improvement	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~2~~	~~1~~	~~2~~	~~1~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	3	~~4~~
C406.2.2: 5% cooling efficiency improvement	~~4~~	~~4~~	~~3~~	~~3~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~NA~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	1	~~NA~~
C406.2.3: 10% heating efficiency improvement	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~2~~	~~3~~	~~4~~	~~3~~	~~4~~	~~3~~	~~4~~	~~3~~	5	~~7~~
C406.2.4: 10% cooling efficiency improvement	~~7~~	~~8~~	~~7~~	~~6~~	~~5~~	~~4~~	~~3~~	~~4~~	~~3~~	~~1~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~1~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	2	~~1~~
C406.3: Reduced lighting power	~~8~~	~~8~~	~~8~~	~~9~~	~~8~~	~~9~~	~~9~~	~~8~~	~~9~~	~~9~~	~~8~~	~~9~~	~~8~~	~~7~~	~~8~~	7	~~7~~
C406.4: Enhanced digital lighting controls	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	2	~~1~~
C406.5: On-site renewable energy	~~6~~	~~6~~	~~6~~	~~6~~	~~6~~	~~6~~	~~6~~	~~6~~	~~6~~	~~6~~	~~6~~	~~6~~	~~6~~	~~6~~	~~6~~	5	~~5~~
C406.6: Dedicated outdoor air system	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	NA	~~NA~~
C406.7.2: Recovered or renewable water heating[a]	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	1	~~1~~
C406.7.3: Efficient fossil fuel water heater[a]	~~NA~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~3~~	~~2~~	~~3~~	~~2~~	~~3~~	~~3~~	3	~~5~~
C406.7.4: Heat pump water heater[a]	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~1~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~NA~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	1	~~1~~
C406.8: Enhanced envelope performance	~~3~~	~~7~~	~~3~~	~~4~~	~~2~~	~~4~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~3~~	~~1~~	~~2~~	~~3~~	~~NA~~	~~4~~	~~3~~	6	~~9~~
C406.9: Reduced air infiltration	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~2~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~1~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~4~~	~~1~~	4	~~3~~
C406.10: Energy monitoring	~~3~~	~~3~~	~~3~~	~~3~~	~~3~~	~~3~~	~~3~~	~~3~~	~~3~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~3~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	2	~~2~~
C406.11: Fault detection and diagnostics system	~~1~~	~~2~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	1	~~2~~

NA = Not Applicable.

b. For schools with showers or full-service kitchens.

C406.5.2 Enhanced renewable credit. Where the total minimum ratings of on-site renewable energy systems exceeds the rating in Section C406.5.1, additional energy efficiency credits shall be determined based on Equation 4-14, rounded to the nearest whole number.

$$AEEC_{RRa} = AEEC_{2.5} \times RRa/RR_1$$

where:

AEECRRa= Section C406.5.2 additional energy efficiency credits.

$AEEC_{2.5}$ = Section C406.5 credits from Tables C406.1(1) through C406.1(5).

RRa = Actual total minimum ratings of *on-site renewable energy* systems (in Btu/h, watts per square foot or W/m^2).

RR_1 = Minimum ratings of *on-site renewable energy* systems required by Section C406.5.1 (in Btu/h, watts per square foot or W/m^2).

(Equation 4-14)

C406.6 Dedicated outdoor air system. Buildings containing equipment or systems regulated by Section C403.3.4, C403.4.3, C403.4.4, C403.4.5, C403.6, C403.8.4, C403.8.6, C403.8.6.1, C403.10.1, C403.10.2, C403.10.3 or C403.10.4 shall be equipped with an independent ventilation system designed to provide not less than the minimum 100-percent outdoor air to each individual occupied space, as specified by the *International Mechanical Code*. The ventilation system shall be capable of total energy recovery. The HVAC system shall include supply-air temperature controls that automatically reset the supply-air temperature in

response to representative building loads or to outdoor air temperatures. The controls shall reset the supply-air temperature not less than 25 percent of the difference between the design supply- air temperature and the design room-air temperature.

TABLE C406.1(4)

ADDITIONAL ENERGY EFFICIENCY CREDITS FOR GROUP M OCCUPANCIES

SECTION	CLIMATE ZONE																
	~~0A & 1A~~	~~0B & 1B~~	~~2A~~	~~2B~~	~~3A~~	~~3B~~	~~3C~~	~~4A~~	~~4B~~	~~4C~~	~~5A~~	~~5B~~	~~5C~~	~~6A~~	~~6B~~	~~7~~	~~8~~
C406.2.1: 5% heating efficiency improvement	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~NA~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~3~~	~~2~~	3	~~4~~
C406.2.2: 5% cooling efficiency improvement	~~5~~	~~6~~	~~4~~	~~4~~	~~3~~	~~3~~	~~1~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~2~~	~~NA~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	1	~~NA~~
C406.2.3: 10% heating efficiency improvement	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~4~~	~~3~~	~~4~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~3~~	6	~~8~~
C406.2.4: 10% cooling efficiency improvement	~~9~~	~~12~~	~~9~~	~~8~~	~~6~~	~~6~~	~~3~~	~~4~~	~~4~~		~~2~~	~~3~~	~~NA~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	2	~~1~~
C406.3: Reduced lighting power	~~13~~	~~13~~	~~15~~	~~14~~	~~16~~	~~14~~	~~17~~	~~15~~	~~15~~	~~14~~	~~12~~	~~14~~	~~14~~	~~16~~	~~16~~	14	~~12~~
C406.4: Enhanced digital lighting controls	~~3~~	~~3~~	~~4~~	~~3~~	~~4~~	~~3~~	~~4~~	~~4~~	~~4~~	~~3~~	~~3~~	~~3~~	~~3~~	~~4~~	~~4~~	3	~~3~~
C406.5: On-site renewable energy	~~8~~	~~8~~	~~8~~	~~8~~	~~8~~	~~8~~	~~8~~	~~8~~	~~8~~	~~7~~	~~7~~	~~7~~	~~7~~	~~7~~	~~7~~	7	~~6~~
C406.6: Dedicated outdoor air system	~~3~~	~~4~~	~~3~~	~~3~~	~~3~~	~~3~~	~~1~~	~~3~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~3~~	~~2~~	~~4~~	~~3~~	4	~~4~~
C406.7.2: Recovered or renewable water heating	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	NA	~~NA~~
C406.7.3: Efficient fossil fuel water heater	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	NA	~~NA~~
C406.7.4: Heat pump water heater	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	NA	~~NA~~
C406.8: Enhanced envelope performance	~~4~~	~~6~~	~~3~~	~~4~~	~~3~~	~~3~~	~~1~~	~~6~~	~~4~~	~~4~~	~~4~~	~~5~~	~~4~~	~~6~~	~~5~~	8	~~9~~
C406.9: Reduced air infiltration	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~2~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~NA~~	~~3~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~3~~	~~2~~	~~1~~	~~7~~	~~3~~	6	~~3~~
C406.10: Energy monitoring	~~4~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~5~~	~~4~~	~~4~~	~~4~~	~~4~~	~~3~~	~~3~~	~~4~~	~~3~~	~~4~~	~~4~~	4	~~3~~
C406.11: Fault detection and diagnostics system	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~2~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	~~1~~	2	~~2~~

NA = Not Applicable.

C406.7 Reduced energy use in service water heating. Buildings shall comply with Section C406.7.1 and Section C406.7.2, C406.7.3 or C406.7.4.

C406.7.1 Building type. To qualify for this credit, the building shall contain one of the following use groups, and the additional energy efficiency credit shall be prorated by conditioned floor area of the portion of the building comprised of the following use groups:

1. Group R-1: Boarding houses, hotels or motels.
2. Group I-2: Hospitals, psychiatric hospitals and nursing homes.
3. Group A-2: Restaurants and banquet halls or buildings containing food preparation areas.
4. Group F: Laundries.
5. Group R-2.
6. Group A-3: Health clubs and spas.
7. Group E: Schools with full-service kitchens or locker rooms with showers.
8. ~~Buildings showing a service hot water load of 10 percent or more of total building energy loads, as shown with an energy analysis as described in Section C407.~~

C406.7.2 Recovered or renewable water heating. The building service water-heating system shall have one or more of the following that are sized to provide not less than 30 percent of the building's annual hot water requirements, or sized to provide 70 percent of the building's annual hot water requirements if the building is required to comply with Section C403.10.5:

1. Waste heat recovery from service hot water, heat- recovery chillers, building equipment or process equipment.
2. *On-site renewable energy* water-heating systems.

TABLE C406.1(5)

ADDITIONAL ENERGY EFFICIENCY CREDITS FOR OTHER[a] OCCUPANCIES

SECTION	CLIMATE ZONE																
	0A & 1A	0B & 1B	2A	2B	3A	3B	3C	4A	4B	4C	5A	5B	5C	6A	6B	7	8
C406.2.1: 5% heating efficiency improvement	NA	NA	NA	NA	1	1	1	1	1	2	1	2	1	2	2	3	3
C406.2.2: 5% cooling efficiency improvement	5	5	4	4	3	3	2	2	2	1	1	2	1	1	1	1	1
C406.2.3: 10% heating efficiency improvement	NA	NA	NA	1	1	1	1	2	2	3	3	3	3	4	3	5	5
C406.2.4: 10% cooling efficiency improvement	8	9	8	7	5	5	3	4	4	2	2	3	2	2	2	2	2
C406.3: Reduced lighting power	8	8	9	9	9	9	10	8	9	9	7	8	8	8	8	8	7
C406.4: Enhanced digital lighting controls	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	3	2	2	2	2	1
C406.5: On-site renewable energy	8	8	8	8	8	8	8	8	8	7	7	7	7	7	7	7	7
C406.6: Dedicated outdoor air system	3	4	3	3	4	3	2	5	3	3	5	4	3	7	5	7	6
C406.7.2: Recovered or renewable water heating[b]	10	9	11	10	13	12	15	14	14	15	14	14	16	14	15	15	15
C406.7.3: Efficient fossil fuel water heater[b]	5	5	6	6	8	7	8	8	8	9	9	9	10	10	9	10	11
C406.7.4: Heat pump water heater[b]	6	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5
C406.8: Enhanced envelope performance	3	6	3	4	3	4	1	5	4	3	5	5	4	7	6	9	10
C406.9: Reduced air infiltration	3	2	2	4	4	2	NA	6	2	2	6	4	1	10	5	7	4
C406.10: Energy monitoring	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	2	3	2	2	2	3	2
C406.11: Fault detection and diagnostics system	2	2	2	2	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

NA = Not Applicable.

a. Other occupancy groups include all groups except Groups B, E, I, M and R.

b. For occupancy groups listed in Section C406.7.1.

C406.7.3 Efficient fossil fuel water heater. The combined input-capacity weighted-average equipment rating of all fossil fuel water-heating equipment in the building shall be not less than 95 percent Et or 0.95 EF. This option shall receive only half the listed credits for buildings required to comply with Section C404.2.1.

C406.7.4 Heat pump water heater. Where electric resistance water heaters are allowed, all service hot water system heating requirements shall be met using heat pump technology with a combined input-capacity weighted-average EF of 3.0. Air-source heat pump water heaters shall not draw conditioned air from within the building, except exhaust air that would otherwise be exhausted to the exterior.

C406.8 Enhanced envelope performance. The total UA of the *building thermal envelope* as designed shall be not less than 15 percent below the total UA of the *building thermal envelope* in accordance with Section C402.1.5.

C406.9 Reduced air infiltration. Air infiltration shall be verified by whole-building pressurization testing conducted in accordance with ASTM E779 or ASTM E1827 by an independent third party. The measured air-leakage rate of the building envelope shall not exceed 0.25 cfm/ft^2 (2.0 L/s × m^2) under a pressure differential of 0.3 inches water column (75 Pa), with the calculated surface area

being the sum of the above- and below-grade building envelope. A report that includes the tested surface area, floor area, air by volume, stories above grade, and leakage rates shall be submitted to the code official and the building owner.

Exception: For buildings having over 250,000 square feet (25 000 m^2) of *conditioned floor area*, air leakage testing need not be conducted on the whole building where testing is conducted on representative above-grade sections of the building. Tested areas shall total not less than 25 percent of the conditioned floor area and shall be tested in accordance with this section.

C406.10 Energy monitoring. Buildings shall be equipped to measure, monitor, record and report energy consumption data in compliance with Sections C406.10.1 through C406.10.5.

C406.10.1 Electrical energy metering. For all electrical energy supplied to the building and its associated site, including but not limited to site lighting, parking, recreational facilities, and other areas that serve the building and its occupants, meters or other measurement devices shall be provided to collect energy consumption data for each end-use category required by Section C406.10.2.

C406.10.2 End-use metering categories. Meters or other *approved* measurement devices shall be provided to collect energy use data for each end-use category listed in Table 406.10.2. These meters shall have the capability to collect energy consumption data for the whole building or for each separately metered portion of the building. Where multiple meters are used to measure any end-use category, the data acquisition system shall total all of the energy used by that category. Not more than 5 percent of the measured load for each of the end-use categories listed in Table 406.10.2 is permitted to be from a load not within the category.

Exceptions:

1. HVAC and water-heating equipment serving only an individual dwelling unit does not require end-use metering.
2. End-use metering is not required for fire pumps, stairwell pressurization fans or any system that operates only during testing or emergency.

TABLE C406.10.2 ENERGY USE CATEGORIES

LOAD CATEGORY	DESCRIPTION OF ENERGY USE
Total HVAC system	Heating, cooling and ventilation, including but not limited to fans, pumps, boilers, chillers and water heating. Energy used by 120-volt equipment, or by 208/120-volt equipment that is located in a building where the main service is 480/277-volt power, is permitted to be excluded from total HVAC system energy use.
Interior lighting	Lighting systems located within the building.
Exterior lighting	Lighting systems located on the building site but not within the building.
Plug loads	Devices, appliances and equipment connected to convenience receptacle outlets.
Process loads	Any single load that is not included in an HVAC, lighting or plug load category and that exceeds 5 percent of the peak connected load of the whole building, including but not limited to data centers, manufacturing equipment and commer- cial kitchens.
Building operations and other miscellaneous loads	The remaining loads not included elsewhere in this table, including but not limited to vertical transportation systems and automatic doors.

C406.10.3 Meters. Meters or other measurement devices required by this section shall be configured to automatically communicate energy consumption data to the data acquisition system required by Section C406.10.4. Source meters shall be allowed to be any digital-type meter. Lighting, HVAC or other building systems that can monitor their energy consumption shall be permitted instead of meters. Current sensors shall be permitted, provided that they have a tested accuracy of ±2 percent. Required metering systems and equipment shall have the capability to provide at least hourly data that is fully integrated into the data acquisition system and graphical energy report in accordance with Sections C406.10.4 and C406.10.5.

C406.10.4 Data acquisition system. A data acquisition system shall have the capability to store the data from the required meters and other sensing devices for a minimum of 36 months. The data acquisition system shall have the capability to store real-time energy consumption data and provide hourly, daily, monthly and yearly logged data for each end-use category required by Section C406.10.2.

C406.10.5 Graphical energy report. A permanent and readily accessible reporting mechanism shall be provided in the building that is accessible by building operation and management personnel. The reporting mechanism shall have the capability to graphically provide theenergy consumption for each end-use category required by Section C406.10.2 at least every hour, day, month and year for the previous 36 months.

C406.11 Fault detection and diagnostics system. A fault detection and diagnostics system shall be installed to monitor the HVAC system's performance and automatically identify faults. The system shall do all of the following:

1. Include permanently installed sensors and devices to monitor the HVAC system's performance.
2. Sample the HVAC system's performance at least once every 15 minutes.
3. Automatically identify and report HVAC system faults.
4. Automatically notify authorized personnel of identified HVAC system faults.
5. Automatically provide prioritized recommendations for repair of identified faults based on analysis of data collected from the sampling of the HVAC system performance.
6. Be capable of transmitting the prioritized fault repair recommendations to remotely located authorized personnel.

C406.12 Efficient kitchen equipment. For buildings and spaces designated as Group A-2 or facilities that include a commercial kitchen with at least one gas or electric fryer, all fryers, dishwashers, steam cookers and ovens shall comply with all of the following:

1. Achieve performance levels in accordance with the equipment specifications listed in Tables C406.12(1) through C406.12(4) when rated in accordance with the applicable test procedure.
2. Be installed prior to the issuance of the Certificate of Occupancy.
3. Have associated performance levels listed on the construction documents submitted for permitting.

Energy efficiency credits for efficient kitchen equipment shall be independent of climate zone and determined based on Equation 4-15, rounded to the nearest whole number.

$AEEC_K = 20 \times Area_K / Area_B$

where:

$AEEC_K$ = Section C406.12 additional energy efficiency credits.

$Area_K$ = Floor area of full-service kitchen (ft² or m²).

$Area_B$ = Gross floor area of building (ft² or m²).

(Equation 4-15)

TABLE C406.12(1)

MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS: COMMERCIAL FRYERS

FRYER TYPE	HEAVY-LOAD COOKING ENERGY EFFICIENCY	IDLE ENERGY RATE	TEST PROCEDURE
Standard open deep-fat gas fryers	≥ 50%	≤ 9,000 Btu/h	ASTM F1361
Standard open deep-fat electric fryers	≥ 83%	≤ 800 watts	
Large-vat open deep-fat gas fryers	≥ 50%	≤ 12,000 Btu/h	ASTM F2144
Large-vat open deep-fat electric fryers	≥ 80%	≤ 1,100 watts	

For SI: 1 Btu/h = 0.293/W.

TABLE C406.12(2)

MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS: COMMERCIAL STEAM COOKERS

FUEL TYPE	PAN CAPACITY	COOKING ENERGY EFFICIENCY[a]	IDLE ENERGY RATE	TEST PROCEDURE

Electric steam	3-pan	50%	—	ASTM F1484
	4-pan	50%	—	
	5-pan	50%	—	
	6-pan and larger	50%	—	
Gas steam	3-pan	38%	—	
	4-pan	38%	—	
	5-pan	38%	—	
	6-pan and larger	38%	—	

a. Cooking energy efficiency is based on heavy load (potato) cooking capacity.

TABLE C406.12(3)

MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS: COMMERCIAL DISHWASHERS

MACHINE TYPE	HIGH-TEMPERATURE EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS		LOW-TEMPERATURE EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS		TEST PROCEDURE
	Idle energy rate[a]	Water consumption[b]	Idle energy rate[a]	Water consumption[b]	
Under counter	≤ 50 kW	≤ 0.86 GPR	≤ 0.50 kW	≤ 1.19 GPR	ASTM F1696 ASTM F1920
Stationary single-tank door	≤ 70 kW	≤ 0.89 GPR	≤ 0.60 kW	≤ 1.18 GPR	
Pot, pan and utensil	≤ 1.20 kW	≤ 0.58 GPR	≤ 1.00 kW	≤ 0.58 GPSF	
Single-tank conveyor	≤ 1.50 kW	≤ 0.70 GPR	≤ 1.50 kW	≤ 0.79 GPR	
Multiple-tank conveyor	≤ 2.25 kW	≤ 0.54 GPR	≤ 2.00 kW	≤ 0.54 GPR	
Single-tank flight	Reported	GPH ≤ 2.975*x* + 55.00	Reported	GPH ≤ 2.975*x* + 55.00	
Multiple-tank flight	Reported	GPH ≤ 4.96*x* + 17.00	Reported	GPH ≤ 4.96*x* + 17.00	

a. Idle results shall be measured with the door closed and represent the total idle energy consumed by the machine, including all tank heaters and controls. Booster heater (internal or external) energy consumption shall not be part of this measurement unless it cannot be separately monitored.

b. GPR = gallons per rack, GPSF = gallons per square foot of rack, GPH = gallons per hour, *x* = maximum conveyer belt speed (feet/minute) × conveyer belt width (feet).

TABLE C406.12(4)

MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS: COMMERCIAL OVENS

FUEL TYPE	CLASSIFICATION	IDLE RATE	COOKING-ENERGY EFFICIENCY, %	TEST PROCEDURE
Convection ovens				
Gas	Full-size	≤ 12,000 Btu/h	≥ 46	ASTM F1496
Electric	Half-size	≤ 1.0 Btu/h	≥ 71	
	Full-size	≤ 1.60 Btu/h		
Combination ovens				
Gas	Steam mode	≤ 200*P*[a] + 6,511 Btu/h	≥ 41	ASTM F2861
	Convection mode	≤ 150*P*[a] + 5,425 Btu/h	≥ 56	
Electric	Steam mode	≤ 0.133*P*[a] + 0.6400 kW	≥ 55	
	Convection mode	≤ 0.080*P*[a] + 0.4989 kW	≥ 76	
Rack ovens				
Gas	Single	≤ 25,000 Btu/h	≥ 48	ASTM F2093
	Double	≤ 30,000 Btu/h	≥ 52	

For SI: 1 Btu/h = 0.293/W.

a. *P* = Pan Capacity: the number of steam table pans the combination oven is able to accommodate in accordance with ASTM F1495.

SECTION C407

TOTAL BUILDING PERFORMANCE

Section C407 is deleted in its entirety. Refer to Section C401.2.2 of this code.

SECTION C408
MAINTENANCE INFORMATION AND SYSTEM COMMISSIONING

C408.1 General. This section covers the provision of maintenance information and the commissioning of, and the functional testing requirements for, building systems.

C408.1.1 Building operations and maintenance information. The building operations and maintenance documents shall be provided to the owner and shall consist of manufacturers' information, specifications and recommendations; programming procedures and data points; narratives; and other means of illustrating to the owner how the building, equipment and systems are intended to be installed, maintained and operated. Required regular maintenance actions for equipment and systems shall be clearly stated on a readily visible label. The label shall include the title or publication number for the operation and maintenance manual for that particular model and type of product.

C408.2 Mechanical systems and service water-heating systems commissioning and completion requirements. Prior to the final mechanical and plumbing inspections, the *registered design professional or approved agency* shall provide evidence of mechanical systems *commissioning* and completion in accordance with the provisions of this section.

Construction document notes shall clearly indicate provisions for *commissioning* and completion requirements in accordance with this section and are permitted to refer to specifications for further requirements. Copies of all documentation shall be given to the owner or owner's authorized agent and made available to the *code official* upon request in accordance with Sections C408.2.4 and C408.2.5.

Exceptions: The following systems are exempt:

1. Mechanical systems and service water-heating systems in buildings where the total mechanical equipment capacity is less than ~~480,000~~ 60,000 Btu/h (140.7 kW) cooling capacity ~~and~~ or ~~600,000~~ 250,000 Btu/h (175.8 kW) combined service water-heating and space-heating capacity.
2. ~~Systems included in Section C403.5 that serve individual *dwelling units* and *sleeping units*.~~
3. ~~Systems in existing buildings where the area of work is less than 10,000 square feet.~~

C408.2.1 Commissioning plan. A commissioning plan shall be developed by a *registered design professional* or *approved agency* and shall include the following items:

1. A narrative description of the activities that will be accomplished during each phase of *commissioning*, including the personnel intended to accomplish each of the activities.
2. A listing of the specific equipment, appliances or systems to be tested and a description of the tests to be performed.
3. Functions to be tested including, but not limited to, calibrations and economizer controls.
4. Conditions under which the test will be performed. Testing shall affirm winter and summer design conditions and full outside air conditions.
5. Measurable criteria for performance.

C408.2.2 Systems adjusting and balancing. HVAC systems shall be balanced in accordance with generally accepted engineering standards. Air and water flow rates shall be measured and adjusted to deliver final flow rates within the tolerances provided in the product specifications. Test and balance activities shall include air system and hydronic system balancing.

C408.2.2.1 Air systems balancing. Each supply air outlet and *zone* terminal device shall be equipped with means for air balancing in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 6 of the *International Mechanical Code*. Discharge dampers used for air-system balancing are prohibited on constant-volume fans and variable volume fans with motors 10 hp (18.6 kW) and larger. Air systems shall be balanced in a manner to first minimize throttling losses then, for fans with system power of greater than 1 hp (0.746 kW), fan speed shall be adjusted to meet design flow conditions.

Exception: Fans with fan motors of 1 hp (0.74 kW) or less are not required to be provided with a means for air balancing.

C408.2.2.2 Hydronic systems balancing. Individual hydronic heating and cooling coils shall be equipped with means for balancing and measuring flow. Hydronic systems shall be proportionately balanced in a manner to first minimize throttling losses, then the pump impeller shall be trimmed or pump speed shall be adjusted to meet design flow conditions. Each hydronic system shall have either the capability to measure pressure across the pump, or test ports at each side of each pump.

Exception: The following equipment is not required to be equipped with a means for balancing or measuring flow:

1. Pumps with pump motors of 5 hp (3.7 kW) or less.
2. Where throttling results in not greater than 5 percent of the nameplate horsepower draw above that required if the impeller were trimmed.

C408.2.3 Functional performance testing. Functional performance testing specified in Sections C408.2.3.1 through C408.2.3.3 shall be conducted.

C408.2.3.1 Equipment. Equipment functional performance testing shall demonstrate the installation and operation of components, systems and system-to- system interfacing relationships in accordance with approved plans and specifications such that operation, function and maintenance serviceability for each of the commissioned systems are confirmed. Testing shall include all modes and *sequence of operation*, including under full-load, part-load and the following emergency conditions:

1. All modes as described in the *sequence* of *operation*.
2. Redundant or *automatic* back-up mode.
3. Performance of alarms.
4. Mode of operation upon a loss of power and restoration of power.

Exception: Unitary or packaged HVAC equipment listed in the tables in Section C403.3.2 that do not require supply air economizers.

C408.2.3.2 Controls. HVAC and service water-heating control systems shall be tested to document that control devices, components, equipment and systems are calibrated and adjusted and operate in accordance with approved plans and specifications. Sequences of operation shall be functionally tested to document they operate in accordance with *approved* plans and specifications.

C408.2.3.3 Economizers. Air economizers shall undergo a functional test to determine that they operate in accordance with manufacturer's specifications.

C408.2.4 Preliminary commissioning report. A preliminary report of *commissioning* test procedures and results shall be completed and certified by the *registered design professional* or *approved agency* and provided to the building owner or owner's authorized agent. The report shall be organized with mechanical and service hot water findings in separate sections to allow independent review. The report shall be identified as "Preliminary Commissioning Report," shall include the completed Commissioning Compliance Checklist, Figure C408.2.4, and shall identify:

1. Itemization of deficiencies found during testing required by this section that have not been corrected at the time of report preparation.
2. Deferred tests that cannot be performed at the time of report preparation because of climatic conditions.
3. Climatic conditions required for performance of the deferred tests.
4. Results of functional performance tests.
5. Functional performance test procedures used during the commissioning process, including measurable criteria for test acceptance.

Project Information: _____ Project Name:_____

Project Address: _____

Commissioning Authority: _____

Commissioning Plan (Section C408.2.1)

☐ Commissioning Plan was used during construction and includes all items required by Section C408.2.1

☐ Systems Adjusting and Balancing has been completed.

☐ HVAC Equipment Functional Testing has been executed. If applicable, deferred and follow-up testing is scheduled to be provided on:_____

☐ HVAC Controls Functional Testing has been executed. If applicable, deferred and follow-up testing is scheduled to be provided on:_____

☐ Economizer Functional Testing has been executed. If applicable, deferred and follow-up testing is scheduled to be provided on:_____

☐ Lighting Controls Functional Testing has been executed. If applicable, deferred and follow-up testing is scheduled to be provided on:_____

☐ Service Water Heating System Functional Testing has been executed. If applicable, deferred and follow-up testing is scheduled to be provided on:_____

☐ Manual, record documents and training have been completed or scheduled

☐ Preliminary Commissioning Report submitted to owner and includes all items required by Section C408.2.4

I hereby certify that the commissioning provider has provided me with evidence of mechanical, service water heating and lighting systems commissioning in accordance with the 2021 IECC.

Signature of Building Owner or Owner's Representative _____ Date_____

FIGURE C408.2.4 COMMISSIONING COMPLIANCE CHECKLIST

C408.2.4.1 Acceptance of report. Buildings, or portions thereof, shall not be considered as acceptable for a final inspection pursuant to Section C105.2.6 until the *code official* has received the Preliminary Commissioning Report from the building owner or owner's authorized agent.

C408.2.4.2 Copy of report. The *code official* shall be permitted to require that a copy of the Preliminary Commissioning Report be made available for review by the *code official*.

C408.2.5 Documentation requirements. The *construction documents* shall specify that the documents described in this section be provided to the building owner or owner's authorized agent within 90 days of the date of receipt of the *certificate of occupancy*.

C408.2.5.1 System balancing report. A written report describing the activities and measurements completed in accordance with Section C408.2.2.

C408.2.5.2 Final commissioning report. A report of test procedures and results identified as "Final Commissioning Report" shall be delivered to the building owner or owner's authorized agent. The report shall be organized with mechanical system and service hot water system findings in separate sections to allow independent review. The report shall include the following:

1. Results of functional performance tests.
2. Disposition of deficiencies found during testing, including details of corrective measures used or proposed.
3. Functional performance test procedures used during the commissioning process including measurable criteria for test acceptance, provided herein for repeatability.

Exception: Deferred tests that cannot be performed at the time of report preparation due to climatic conditions.

C408.3 Functional testing of lighting controls. Automatic lighting controls required by this code shall comply with this section.

C408.3.1 Functional testing. Prior to passing final inspection, the *registered design professional* or *approved agency* shall provide evidence that the lighting control systems have been tested to ensure that control hardware and software are calibrated, adjusted, programmed and in proper working condition in accordance with the *construction documents* and manufacturer's instructions. Functional testing shall be in accordance with Sections C408.3.1.1 through C408.3.1.3 for the applicable control type.

C408.3.1.1 Occupant sensor controls. Where *occupant sensor controls* are provided, the following procedures shall be performed:

1. Certify that the *occupant sensor* has been located and aimed in accordance with manufacturer recommendations.
2. For projects with seven or fewer *occupant sensors*, each sensor shall be tested.
3. For projects with more than seven *occupant sensors*, testing shall be done for each unique combination of sensor type and space geometry. Where multiples of each unique combination of sensor type and space geometry are provided, not less than 10 percent and in no case fewer than one, of each combination shall be tested unless the *code official* or design professional requires a higher percentage to be tested. Where 30 percent or more of the tested controls fail, all remaining identical combinations shall be tested.

   For *occupant sensor controls* to be tested, verify the following:

   3.1. Where *occupant sensor controls* include status indicators, verify correct operation.

   3.2. The controlled lights turn off or down to the permitted level within the required time.

   3.3. For auto-on *occupant sensor controls*, the lights turn on to the permitted level when an occupant enters the space.

   3.4. For manual-on *occupant sensor controls*, the lights turn on only when manually activated.

   3.5. The lights are not incorrectly turned on by movement in adjacent areas or by HVAC operation.

C408.3.1.2 Time-switch controls. Where *time-switch controls* are provided, the following procedures shall be performed:

1. Confirm that the *time-switch control* is programmed with accurate weekday, weekend and holiday schedules.
2. Provide documentation to the owner of *time- switch controls* programming including week- day, weekend, holiday schedules, and set-up and preference program settings.
3. Verify the correct time and date in the time switch.
4. Verify that any battery back-up is installed and energized.
5. Verify that the override time limit is set to not more than 2 hours.
6. Simulate occupied condition. Verify and document the following:

   6.1. All lights can be turned on and off by their respective area control switch.

   6.2. The switch only operates lighting in the enclosed space in which the switch is located.
7. Simulate unoccupied condition. Verify and document the following:

   7.1. Nonexempt lighting turns off.

   7.2. Manual override switch allows only the lights in the enclosed space where the override switch is located to turn on or remain on until the next scheduled shut- off occurs.
8. Additional testing as specified by the *registered design professional.*

C408.3.1.3 Daylight responsive controls. Where *daylight responsive controls* are provided, the following shall be verified:

1. Control devices have been properly located, field calibrated and set for accurate setpoints and threshold light levels.
2. Daylight controlled lighting loads adjust to light level setpoints in response to available daylight.
3. The calibration adjustment equipment is located for *ready access* only by authorized personnel.

C408.3.2 Documentation requirements. The *construction documents* shall specify that the documents described in this section be provided to the building owner or owner's authorized agent within 90 days of the date of receipt of the *certificate of occupancy*.

C408.3.2.1 Drawings. Construction documents shall include the location and catalogue number of each piece of equipment.

C408.3.2.2 Manuals. An operating and maintenance manual shall be provided and include the following:

1. Name and address of not less than one service agency for installed equipment.
2. A narrative of how each system is intended to operate, including recommended setpoints.
3. Submittal data indicating all selected options for each piece of lighting equipment and lighting controls.
4. Operation and maintenance manuals for each piece of lighting equipment. Required routine maintenance actions, cleaning and recommended relamping shall be clearly identified.

5. A schedule for inspecting and recalibrating all lighting controls.

C408.3.2.3 Report. A report of test results shall be provided and include the following:

1. Results of functional performance tests.
2. Disposition of deficiencies found during testing, including details of corrective measures used or proposed.

CHAPTER 5 [CE]
EXISTING BUILDINGS

User note:

About this chapter: *Many buildings are renovated or altered in numerous ways that could affect the energy use of the building as a whole. Chapter 5 requires the application of certain parts of Chapter 4 in order to maintain, if not improve, the conservation of energy by the renovated or altered building.*

SECTION C501
GENERAL

C501.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall control the *alteration*, *repair*, *addition* and *change of occupancy* of existing buildings and structures.

C501.1.1 Existing buildings. Except as specified in this chapter, this code shall not be used to require the removal, *alteration* or abandonment of, nor prevent the continued use and maintenance of, an existing *building* or *building* system lawfully in existence at the time of adoption of this code.

C501.2 Compliance. *Additions*, *alterations*, *repairs*, and changes of occupancy to, or relocation of, existing *buildings* and structures shall comply with Sections C502, C503, C504 and C505 of this code, as applicable, and with the provisions for *alterations*, *repairs*, *additions* and changes of occupancy or relocation, respectively, in the *International Building Code*, *International Existing Building Code*, *International Fire Code*, *International Fuel Gas Code*, *International Mechanical Code*, *International Plumbing Code*, and NFPA 70. Changes where unconditioned space is changed to conditioned space shall comply with Section C502.

Exception: *Additions*, *alterations*, *repairs* or changes of occupancy complying with ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.

C501.3 Maintenance. *Buildings* and structures, and parts thereof, shall be maintained in a safe and sanitary condition. Devices and systems required by this code shall be maintained in conformance to the code edition under which they were installed. The owner or the owner's authorized agent shall be responsible for the maintenance of buildings and structures. The requirements of this chapter shall not provide the basis for removal or abrogation of energy conservation, fire protection and safety systems and devices in existing structures.

C501.4 New and replacement materials. Except as otherwise required or permitted by this code, materials permitted by the applicable code for new construction shall be used. Like materials shall be permitted for repairs, provided that hazards to life, health or property are not created. Hazardous materials shall not be used where the code for new construction would not allow use of these materials in buildings of similar occupancy, purpose and location.

C501.5 Historic buildings. Provisions of this code relating to the construction, *repair*, *alteration*, restoration and movement of structures, and *change of occupancy* shall not be mandatory for *historic buildings* provided that a report has been submitted to the *code official* and signed by a *registered design professional*, or a representative of the State Historic Preservation Office or the historic preservation authority having jurisdiction, demonstrating that compliance with that provision would threaten, degrade or destroy the historic form, fabric or function of the *building*.

SECTION C502
ADDITIONS

C502.1 General. *Additions* to an existing *building*, *building* system or portion thereof shall conform to the provisions of this code as those provisions relate to new construction with- out requiring the unaltered portion of the existing *building* or *building* system to comply with this code. *Additions* shall not create an unsafe or hazardous condition or overload existing building systems. An *addition* shall be deemed to comply with this code if the *addition* alone complies or if the existing building and *addition* comply with this code as a single building.

C502.2 Change in space conditioning. Any nonconditioned or low-energy space that is altered to become *conditioned space* shall be required to comply with Section C502.

Exceptions:

1. Where the component performance alternative in Section C402.1.5 is used to comply with this section, the proposed UA shall be not greater than 110 percent of the target UA.
2. Where the total building performance option in Section C407 is used to comply with this section, the annual energy cost of the proposed design shall be not greater than 110 percent of the annual energy cost otherwise permitted by Section C401.2.2 ~~C407.2.~~

C502.3 Compliance. *Additions* shall comply with Sections C502.3.1 through C502.3.7.

C502.3.1 Vertical fenestration area. Additions shall comply with the following:

1. Where an addition has a new vertical fenestration area that results in a total building fenestration area less than or equal

to that permitted by Section C402.4.1, the addition shall comply with Section C402.1.5, C402.4.3 or C401.2.2 ~~C407.~~

2. Where an addition with vertical fenestration that results in a total building fenestration area greater than Section C402.4.1 or an addition that exceeds the fenestration area greater than that permitted by Section C402.4.1, the fenestration shall comply with Section C402.4.1.1 for the addition only.
3. Where an addition has vertical fenestration that results in a total building vertical fenestration area exceeding that permitted by Section C402.4.1.1, the addition shall comply with Section C402.1.5 or C401.2.2 ~~C407~~.

C502.3.2 Skylight area. Skylights shall comply with the following:

1. Where an addition has new skylight area that results in a total building fenestration area less than or equal to that permitted by Section C402.4.1, the addition shall comply with Section C402.1.5 or C401.2.2 ~~C407~~.
2. Where an addition has new skylight area that results in a total building skylight area greater than permitted by Section C402.4.1 or where additions have skylight area greater than that permitted by Section C402.4.1, the skylight area shall comply with Section C402.4.1.2 for the addition only.
3. Where an addition has skylight area that results in a total building skylight area exceeding that permitted by Section C402.4.1.2, the addition shall comply with Section C402.1.5 or C401.2.2 ~~C407~~.

C502.3.3 Building mechanical systems. New mechanical systems and equipment that are part of the *addition* and serve the building heating, cooling and ventilation needs shall comply with Sections C403 and C408.

C502.3.4 Service water-heating systems. New service water-heating equipment, controls and service water- heating piping shall comply with Section C404.

C502.3.5 Pools and inground permanently installed spas. New pools and inground permanently installed spas shall comply with Section C404.9.

C502.3.6 Electrical power and Lighting systems. New lighting systems that are installed as part of the addition shall comply with Sections C405 and C408.

C502.3.6.1 Interior lighting power. The total interior lighting power for the *addition* shall comply with Section C405.3.2 for the *addition* alone, or the existing building and the *addition* shall comply as a single building.

C502.3.6.2 Exterior lighting power. The total exterior lighting power for the *addition* shall comply with Section C405.5.2 for the *addition* alone, or the existing building and the *addition* shall comply as a single building.

C502.3.6.3 Renewable energy infrastructure. Additions with a new roof shall comply with section C405.15.

Exceptions:

1. Additions where the new roof area is less than less than 600 square feet of roof area oriented between 110 degrees and 270 degrees of true north.
2. Additions that increase the conditioned floor area of the building by less than 10 percent.
3. Additions where an unshaded flat plate collector oriented towards the equator and tilted at an angle from horizontal equal to the latitude receives an annual daily average incident solar radiation less than 3.5 kWh/m²·day (1.1 kBtu/ft²·day).
4. Additions where more than 80 percent of the roof area is covered by any combination of equipment other than for on-site renewable energy systems, planters, vegetated space, skylights, or occupied roof deck.
5. Additions where more than 50 percent of roof area is shaded from direct beam sunlight by natural objects or by structures that are not part of the building for more than 2,500 annual hours between 8:00 AM and 4:00 PM.

C502.3.6.4 Electric vehicle charging infrastructure. New parking facilities and new parking spaces added to existing parking facilities shall comply with Section C405.14 based on the number of new parking spaces.

C502.3.7 Energy Reporting. Additions shall comply with section C405.12.9.

SECTION C503
ALTERATIONS

C503.1 General. *Alterations* to any *building* or structure shall comply with the requirements of Section C503. *Alterations* shall be such that the existing *building* or structure is not less conforming to the provisions of this code than the existing *building* or structure was prior to the *alteration*. *Alterations* to an existing *building*, *building* system or portion thereof shall conform to the provisions of this code as those provisions relate to new construction without requiring the unaltered portions of the existing *building* or *building* system to comply with this code. *Alterations* shall not create an unsafe or hazardous condition or overload existing *building* systems.

Exception: The following *alterations* need not comply with the requirements for new construction, provided that the energy use of the building is not increased:

1. Storm windows installed over existing fenestration.

2. Surface-applied window film installed on existing single-pane *fenestration* assemblies reducing solar heat gain, provided that the code does not require the glazing or *fenestration* to be replaced.
3. *Roof recover*.
4. Roof replacement where roof assembly insulation is integral to or located below the structural roof deck.
5. *Air barriers* shall not be required for *roof recover* and roof replacement where the *alterations* or renovations to the building do not include *alterations*, renovations or *repairs* to the remainder of the building envelope.
6. An existing building undergoing *alterations* that complies with Section C401.2.2 ~~C407~~.

C503.2 Building thermal envelope. Alterations of existing building thermal envelope assemblies shall comply with this section. New building envelope assemblies that are part of the *alteration* shall comply with ~~Sections C402.1 through C402.5~~ section C402. An area-weighted average U-factor for new and altered portions of the building thermal envelope shall be permitted to satisfy the U-factor requirements in Table C402.1.4. The existing R-value of insulation shall not be reduced or the U-factor of a building thermal envelope assembly be increased as part of a building thermal envelope alteration except where complying with Section C407.

Exception: Where the existing building exceeds the fenestration area limitations of Section C402.4.1 prior to alteration, the building is exempt from Section C402.4.1 provided that there is not an increase in fenestration area.

C503.2.1 Roof alterations ~~replacement~~. ~~*Roof replacements* shall comply with Section C402.1.3, C402.1.4, C402.1.5 or C407 where the existing roof assembly is part of the *building thermal envelope* and contains insulation entirely above the roof deck. In no case shall the *R*-value of the roof insulation be reduced or the *U*-factor of the roof assembly be increased as part of the *roof replacement*.~~ Roof alterations shall comply with this section.

C503.2.1.1 Roof insulation. Roof insulation complying with Section C402.1 and Section C402.2.1 or an *approved* design that minimizes deviation from the insulation requirements, shall be provided for the following roof alterations:

1. An alteration to roof-ceiling construction where there is no insulation above conditioned space,
2. Roof replacement for roofs with insulation ~~entirely~~ above deck,
3. Conversion of unconditioned attic space into conditioned space,
4. Replacement of ceiling finishes exposing cavities or surfaces of the roof-ceiling construction to which insulation can be applied.

Roofs not constructed to currently adopted snow loads shall provide a report by a registered design professional or other *approved* source documenting the structure is capable of supporting loads associated with any changes required by this section.

Where compliance with Section C402.1 cannot be met due to limiting conditions on an existing roof, the following shall be permitted to demonstrate compliance with the insulation requirements:

1. Construction documents that include a report by a registered design professional or other approved source documenting details of the limiting conditions affecting compliance with the insulation requirements.
2. Construction documents that include a roof design by a registered design professional or other approved source that minimizes deviation from the insulation requirements.

C503.2.1.2 Roof and gutter deicing controls. *Roof recover* and *roof replacement* alterations with existing or new roof and gutter deicing systems shall have controls complying with C403.13.4 installed.

C503.2.2 Vertical fenestration. The addition of *vertical fenestration* that results in a total building *fenestration* area less than or equal to that specified in Section C402.4.1 shall comply with Section C402.1.5, C402.4.3 or C401.2.2. ~~C407.~~ The addition of *vertical fenestration* that results in a total building *fenestration* area greater than Section C402.4.1 shall comply with Section C402.4.1.1 for the space adjacent to the new fenestration only. *Alterations* that result in a total building *vertical fenestration* area exceeding that specified in Section C402.4.1~~.1~~ shall comply with Section C402.1.5 or C402.2.2 ~~C407~~. Provided that the vertical fenestration area is not changed, using the same vertical fenestration area in the *standard reference design* as the building prior to alteration shall be an alternative to using the vertical fenestration area specified in ~~Table C407.4.1(1)~~ ASHRAE 90.1 Appendix G.

C503.2.2.1 Application to replacement fenestration products. Where some or all of an existing *fenestration* unit is replaced with a new *fenestration* product, including sash and glazing, the replacement *fenestration* unit shall meet the applicable requirements for *U*-factor and *SHGC* in Table C402.4.

Exception: An area-weighted average of the *U*-factor of replacement fenestration products being installed in the building for each fenestration product category listed in Table C402.4 shall be permitted to satisfy the *U*-factor requirements for each fenestration product category listed in Table C402.4. Individual fenestration products from different product categories listed in Table C402.4 shall not be combined in calculating the area-weighted average *U*-factor.

C503.2.3 Skylight area. New *skylight* area that results in a total building *skylight* area less than or equal to that specified in Section C402.4.1 shall comply with Section C402.1.5, C402.4 or C401.2.2 ~~C407~~. The addition of *skylight* area that results in a total building skylight area greater than Section C402.4.1 shall comply with Section C402.4.1.2 for the space adjacent to the new skylights. *Alterations* that result in a total building skylight area exceeding that specified in Section C402.4.1.2 shall comply with Section C402.1.5 or C401.2.2 ~~C407~~. Provided that the skylight area is not changed, using the same skylight area in the *standard reference design* as the building prior to alteration shall be an alternative to using the skylight area specified in Table C407.4.1(1).

C503.2.4 Above-grade wall alterations. Above-grade wall alterations shall comply with the following:

1. Where wall cavities are exposed, the cavity shall be filled with cavity insulation complying with Section C303.1.4. New cavities created shall be insulated in accordance with Section C402.1 or an approved design that minimizes deviation from the insulation requirements.
2. Where exterior wall coverings and fenestration are added or replaced for the full extent of any exterior wall assembly on one or more elevations of the building, insulation shall be provided where required in accordance with one of the following:
    2.1. An R-value of continuous insulation not less than that designated in Table C402.1.3 for the applicable above-grade wall type and existing cavity insulation R-value, if any;
    2.2. An R-value of not less than that required to bring the above-grade wall into compliance with Table C402.1.2; or,
    2.3. An approved design that minimizes deviation from the insulation requirements of Section C402.1.
3. Where Items 1 and 2 apply, the insulation shall be provided in accordance with Section C402.1.

Where any of the above requirements are applicable, the above-grade wall alteration shall comply with Sections 1402.2 and 1404.3 of the *International Building Code*.

C503.2.5 Floor alterations. Where an alteration to a floor or floor overhang exposes cavities or surfaces to which insulation can be applied, and the floor or floor overhang is part of the building thermal envelope, the floor or floor overhang shall be brought into compliance with Section C402.1 or an approved design that minimizes deviation from the insulation requirements. This requirement applies to floor alterations where the floor cavities or surfaces are exposed and unobstructed prior to construction.

C503.2.6 Below-grade wall alterations. Where unconditioned below-grade space is changed to conditioned space, walls enclosing such conditioned space shall be insulated where required in accordance with Section C402.1. Where the below-grade space is conditioned space and where walls enclosing such space are altered, they shall be insulated where required in accordance with Section C402.1.

C503.2.7 Air barrier. Altered building thermal envelope assemblies shall be provided with an air barrier in accordance with Section C402.5.1. Such air barrier ~~need not~~ shall be continuous with unaltered portions of the building thermal envelope to the extent feasible within the scope of work. Testing requirements of Section C402.5.1.2 shall not be required.

C503.3 Heating and cooling systems. New heating, cooling and duct systems that are part of the *alteration* shall comply with Sections C403 and C408.

C503.3.1 Economizers. New cooling systems that are part of *alteration* shall comply with Section C403.5.

C503.3.2 Mechanical system acceptance testing. Where an alteration requires compliance with Section C403 or any of its subsections, mechanical systems that serve the alteration shall comply with Sections C408.2.2, C408.2.3 and C408.2.5.

C503.4 Service hot water systems. New service hot water systems that are part of the *alteration* shall comply with Sections C404 and C408.

C503.4.1 Service hot water system acceptance testing. Where an alteration requires compliance with Section C404 or any of its subsections, service hot water systems that serve the alteration shall comply with Sections C408.2.3 and C408.2.5.

C503.5 Lighting systems. New lighting systems that are part of the *alteration* shall comply with Sections C405 and C408.

Exception: *Alterations* that replace less than 10 percent of the luminaires in a space, provided that such *alterations* do not increase the installed interior lighting power.

C503.6. New parking facilities. New parking facilities and new parking spaces added to existing parking facilities shall comply with Section C405.14 based on the number of new parking spaces.

C503.7 Alterations to parking structure electrical service. Where the electrical service serving a parking garage is replaced, the electrical service shall be sized to provide capacity for the parking garage to meet the requirements of Section C405.14 as a new parking facility.

C503.8 Energy Reporting. Level 3 alterations shall comply with section C405.12.9.

SECTION C504
REPAIRS

C504.1 General. *Buildings* and structures, and parts thereof, shall be repaired in compliance with Section C501.3 and this section. Work on nondamaged components that is necessary for the required *repair* of damaged components shall be considered to be part of the *repair* and shall not be subject to the requirements for *alterations* in this chapter. Routine maintenance required by Section C501.3, ordinary *repairs* exempt from *permit* and abatement of wear due to normal service conditions shall not be subject to the requirements for *repairs* in this section.

Where a building was constructed to comply with ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, repairs shall comply with the standard and need not comply with Sections C402, C403, C404 and C405.

C504.2 Application. For the purposes of this code, the following shall be considered to be repairs:

1. Glass-only replacements in an existing sash and frame.

2. *Roof repairs*.
3. Air barriers shall not be required for *roof repair* where the repairs to the building do not include *alterations*, renovations or *repairs* to the remainder of the building envelope.
4. Replacement of existing doors that separate conditioned space from the exterior shall not require the installation of a vestibule or revolving door, provided that an existing vestibule that separates a conditioned space from the exterior shall not be removed.
5. *Repairs* where only the bulb, the ballast or both within the existing luminaires in a space are replaced, provided that the replacement does not increase the installed interior lighting power.

SECTION C505
CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY OR USE

C505.1 General. Spaces undergoing a change in occupancy that would result in an increase in demand for either fossil fuel or electrical energy shall comply with this code. Where the use in a space changes from one use in Table C405.3.2(1) or C405.3.2(2) to another use in Table C405.3.2(1) or C405.3.2(2), the installed lighting wattage shall comply with Section C405.3. Where the space undergoing a change in occupancy or use is in a building with a fenestration area that exceeds the limitations of Section C402.4.1, the space is exempt from Section C402.4.1 provided that there is not an increase in fenestration area.

Exceptions:

1. Where the component performance alternative in Section C402.1.5 is used to comply with this section, the proposed UA shall not be greater than 110 percent of the target UA.
2. Where the total building performance option in Section C407 is used to comply with this section, the annual energy cost of the proposed design shall not be greater than 110 percent of the annual energy cost otherwise permitted by Section C407.3.

APPENDIX CD:
Renewable Energy Mitigation Program (REMP)

CD101.1 REMP. Buildings and exterior energy uses shall comply with IECC-Residential Provisions Appendix RD Renewable Energy Mitigation Program (REMP) as applicable.

CHAPTER 1 [RE]
SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION

User note:

About this chapter: *Chapter 1 establishes the limits of applicability of this code and describes how the code is to be applied and enforced. Chapter 1 is in two parts: Part 1—Scope and Application (Sections R101–R102) and Part 2—Administration and Enforcement (Sections R103–R110). Section R101 identifies which buildings and structures come under its purview and references other I-Codes as applicable. Standards and codes are scoped to the extent referenced (see Section R108.1).*

This code is intended to be adopted as a legally enforceable document, and it cannot be effective without adequate provisions for its administration and enforcement. The provisions of Chapter 1 establish the authority and duties of the code official appointed by the authority having jurisdiction and also establish the rights and privileges of the design professional, contractor and property owner.

PART 1—SCOPE AND APPLICATION

SECTION R101
SCOPE AND GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

R101.1 Title. This code shall be known as the *Energy Conservation Code* of the City of Aspen, Colorado and shall be cited as such. It is referred to herein as "this code."

R101.2 Scope. This code applies to *residential buildings*, *building sites* and associated systems and equipment.

R101.3 Intent. This code shall regulate the design, ~~and~~ construction, *repair*, *alteration*, change of occupancy, and *additions* of new and existing *buildings* for the ~~effective use and conservation~~ reduction of greenhouse gas emissions and for the efficient production, use and storage of energy over the useful life of each building. This code is intended to provide flexibility to permit the use of innovative approaches and techniques to achieve this objective. This code is not intended to abridge safety, health or environmental requirements contained in other applicable codes or ordinances.

R101.4 Applicability. Where, in any specific case, different sections of this code specify different materials, methods of construction or other requirements, the most restrictive shall govern. Where there is a conflict between a general requirement and a specific requirement, the specific requirement shall govern.

R101.4.1 Mixed residential and commercial buildings. Where a *building* includes both *residential building* and *commercial building* portions, each portion shall be separately considered and meet the applicable provisions of the IECC—Commercial Provisions or IECC—Residential Provisions.

R101.5 Compliance. *Residential buildings* shall meet the provisions of IECC—Residential Provisions. *Commercial buildings* shall meet the provisions of IECC—Commercial Provisions.

R101.5.1 Compliance materials. The *code official* shall be permitted to approve specific computer software, worksheets, compliance manuals and other similar mate- rials that meet the intent of this code.

SECTION R102
ALTERNATIVE MATERIALS, DESIGN AND METHODS OF CONSTRUCTION AND EQUIPMENT

R102.1 General. The provisions of this code are not intended to prevent the installation of any material or to prohibit any design or method of construction not specifically prescribed by this code, provided that any such alternative has been approved. The *code official* shall have the authority to approve an alternative material, design or method of construction upon the written application of the owner or the owner's authorized agent. The code official shall first find that the proposed design is satisfactory and complies with the intent of the provisions of this code, and that the material, method or work offered is, for the purpose intended, not less than the equivalent of that prescribed in this code for strength, effectiveness, fire resistance, durability, energy conservation and safety. The *code official* shall respond to the applicant, in writing, stating the reasons why the alternative was *approved* or was not *approved*.

R102.1.1 Above code programs. The *code official* or other authority having jurisdiction shall be permitted to deem a national, state or local energy-efficiency program to exceed the energy efficiency required by this code. *Buildings approved* in writing by such an energy-efficiency program shall be considered to be in compliance with this code where such buildings also meet the requirements identified in Table R405.2 and the proposed total *building thermal envelope* UA, which is the sum of U-factor times assembly area, shall be less ~~is greater~~ than or equal to the *building thermal envelope* UA using the prescriptive U-factors from Table R402.1.2 multiplied by 1.23. ~~levels of efficiency and solar heat gain coefficients (SHGC) in Tables 402.1.1 and 402.1.3 of the 2009 *International Energy Conservation Code.*~~

PART 2—ADMINISTRATION AND ENFORCEMENT

SECTION R103

CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS

R103.1 General. Construction documents, technical reports and other supporting data shall be submitted in one or more sets, or in a digital format where allowed by the *code official*, with each application for a permit. The construction documents and technical reports shall be prepared by a registered design professional where required by the statutes of the jurisdiction in which the project is to be constructed. Where special conditions exist, the *code official* is authorized to require necessary construction documents to be prepared by a registered design professional.

Exception: The *code official* is authorized to waive the requirements for construction documents or other supporting data if the *code official* determines they are not necessary to confirm compliance with this code.

R103.2 Information on construction documents. Construction documents shall be drawn to scale on suitable material. Electronic media documents are permitted to be submitted where *approved* by the *code official*. Construction documents shall be of sufficient clarity to indicate the location, nature and extent of the work proposed, and show in sufficient detail pertinent data and features of the *building*, systems and equipment as herein governed. Details shall include the following as applicable:

1. Energy compliance path.
2. Insulation materials and their *R*-values.
3. Fenestration *U*-factors and *solar heat gain coefficients* (SHGC).
4. Area-weighted *U*-factor and *solar heat gain coefficients* (SHGC) calculations.
5. Ratio of vertical fenestration area to above grade wall area enclosing conditioned space and ratio of skylight area to gross roof area over conditioned space.
6. Mechanical system design criteria.
7. Mechanical and service water-heating systems and equipment types, sizes and efficiencies.
8. Equipment and system controls.
9. Duct sealing, duct and pipe insulation and location.
10. Air sealing details.
11. Thermal bridges as identified in Section R402.2.13.
12. Location of pathways for routing of raceways or cable from the *solar ready zone* to the electrical distribution equipment.
13. Location reserved for inverters, metering equipment, *ESS*, and a pathway reserved for routing of raceways or conduit from the renewable energy system to the point of interconnection with the electrical service and the *ESS*.
14. Location and layout of a designated area for *ESS*.
15. Rated energy capacity and rated power capacity of the installed or planned *ESS*.
16. Location of and electrical system sizing for designated *EVSE* spaces, *EV Ready* spaces, and/or *EV Capable* parking spaces.

R103.2.1 Building thermal envelope depiction. The *building thermal envelope* shall be represented on the construction documents.

R103.2.2 Solar-ready system. The construction documents shall provide details for dedicated roof area, structural design for roof dead and live load, and routing of conduit or pre-wiring from solar-ready zone to electrical service panel.

R103.2.3 ESS-ready system. The construction documents shall indicate dedicated future ESS area and routing of conduit or pre-wiring from dedicated ESS area to electrical service panel.

R103.2.4 EV infrastructure. The construction documents shall indicate dedicated *EV ready* or *EV capable* parking space and routing of conduit or pre-wiring from parking space to electrical service panel.

R103.2.5 Electric-ready system. The construction documents shall indicate requirement for pre-wiring from cooking appliances and clothes dryers to electrical service panel.

R103.3 Examination of documents. The *code official* shall examine or cause to be examined the accompanying construction documents and shall ascertain whether the construction indicated and described is in accordance with the requirements of this code and other pertinent laws or ordinances. The *code official* is authorized to utilize a registered design professional, or other *approved* entity not affiliated with the building design or construction, in conducting the review of the plans and specifications for compliance with the code.

R103.3.1 Approval of construction documents. When the *code official* issues a permit where construction documents are required, the construction documents shall be endorsed in writing and stamped "Reviewed for Code

Compliance." Such *approved* construction documents shall not be changed, modified or altered without authorization from the *code official*. Work shall be done in accordance with the *approved* construction documents.

One set of construction documents so reviewed shall be retained by the *code official*. The other set shall be returned to the applicant, kept at the site of work and shall be open to inspection by the *code official* or a duly authorized representative.

R103.3.2 Previous approvals. This code shall not require changes in the construction documents, construction or designated occupancy of a structure for which a lawful permit has been heretofore issued or otherwise lawfully authorized, and the construction of which has been pursued in good faith within 180 days after the effective date of this code and has not been abandoned.

R103.3.3 Phased approval. The *code official* shall have the authority to issue a permit for the construction of part of an energy conservation system before the construction documents for the entire system have been submitted or *approved*, provided adequate information and detailed statements have been filed complying with all pertinent requirements of this code. The holders of such permit shall proceed at their own risk without assurance that the permit for the entire energy conservation system will be granted.

R103.4 Amended construction documents. Work shall be installed in accordance with the *approved* construction documents, and any changes made during construction that are not in compliance with the *approved* construction documents shall be resubmitted for approval as an amended set of construction documents.

R103.5 Retention of construction documents. One set of *approved* construction documents shall be retained by the *code official* for a period of not less than 180 days from date of completion of the permitted work, or as required by state or local laws.

SECTION R104
FEES

R104.1 Fees. A permit shall not be issued until the fees prescribed in Section R104.2 have been paid, nor shall an amendment to a permit be released until the additional fee, if any, has been paid.

R104.2 Schedule of permit fees. ~~Where a permit is required, a fee for each permit shall be paid as required, in accordance with the schedule as established by the applicable governing authority.~~ A permit shall not be valid until the fees prescribed by Section 2.12.100 the Aspen Municipal Code are paid in full.

R104.3 Work commencing before permit issuance. Any person who commences any work before obtaining the necessary permits shall be subject to an additional fee established by the *code official* that shall be in addition to the required permit fees.

R104.4 Related fees. The payment of the fee for the construction, *alteration*, removal or demolition of work done in connection to or concurrently with the work or activity authorized by a permit shall not relieve the applicant or holder of the permit from the payment of other fees that are prescribed by law.

R104.5 Refunds. The *code official* is authorized to establish a refund policy.

SECTION R105
INSPECTIONS

R105.1 General. Construction or work for which a permit is required shall be subject to inspection by the *code official* or his or her designated agent, and such construction or work shall remain visible and able to be accessed for inspection purposes until *approved*. It shall be the duty of the permit applicant to cause the work to remain visible and able to be accessed for inspection purposes. Neither the *code official* nor the jurisdiction shall be liable for expense entailed in the removal or replacement of any material, product, system or building component required to allow inspection to validate compliance with this code.

R105.2 Required inspections. The *code official* or his or her designated agent, upon notification, shall make the inspections set forth in Sections R105.2.1 through R105.2.5.

R105.2.1 Footing and foundation inspection. Inspections associated with footings and foundations shall verify compliance with the code as to *R*-value, location, thickness, depth of burial and protection of insulation as required by the code and *approved* plans and specifications.

R105.2.2 Framing and air barrier rough-in inspection. *Air barrier* inspections at framing and rough-in shall be made before application of air permeable insulation ~~interior finish~~ and shall verify compliance with the code as to~~: types of insulation and corresponding *R* values and their correct location and proper installation; fenestration properties such as *U* factor and SHGC and proper installation;~~ air leakage controls as required by the code~~;~~ and *approved* plans and specifications. Air barriers located on the outside of the building may be inspected after cavity insulation is installed.

R105.2.3 Insulation and fenestration rough-in inspection Inspections at insulation and *fenestration* rough-in shall be made before application of interior finish and shall verify compliance with the code as to: types of insulation and corresponding R-values and their correct location and proper installation; fenestration properties such as U-factor and SHGC and proper installation.

R105.2.4 Plumbing rough-in inspection. Inspections at plumbing rough-in shall verify compliance as required by the code and *approved* plans and specifications as to types of insulation and corresponding *R*-values and protection and required controls.

R105.2.5 Mechanical rough-in inspection. Inspections at mechanical rough-in shall verify compliance as required by the code and *approved* plans and specifications as to installed HVAC equipment type and size, required controls, system insulation and corresponding *R*- value, system air leakage control, programmable thermo- stats, dampers, whole-house ventilation, and minimum fan efficiency.

Exception: Systems serving multiple dwelling units shall be inspected in accordance with Section C105.2.4.

R105.2.6 Electrical rough-in inspection. Inspections shall verify lighting system controls, components, meters, and additional electric infrastructure as required by the code, *approved* plans and specifications. Inspections shall verify space availability and pathways to electrical service for future or installed energy storage systems. Inspections shall verify solar-ready zone and conduit or pre-wiring from the solar-ready zone to the electrical panel and proper panel space and capacity necessary for future installation of a solar photovoltaic system.

R105.2.7 Final inspection. The *building* shall have a final inspection and shall not be occupied until *approved*. The final inspection shall include verification of the installation of all required *building* systems, equipment and controls and their proper operation and the required number of high-efficacy lamps and fixtures.

R105.3 Reinspection. A *building* shall be reinspected where determined necessary by the *code official*.

R105.4 Approved inspection agencies. The *code official* is authorized to accept reports of third-party inspection agencies not affiliated with the *building* design or construction, provided that such agencies are *approved* as to qualifications and reliability relevant to the *building* components and systems that they are inspecting.

R105.4.1 Authorization of *approved* third-party inspection agency. When authorized, and at the sole discretion of the authority having jurisdiction, the third-party inspection agency shall represent the jurisdiction and have powers as delegated by of the authority having jurisdiction.

R105.4.1.1 Independence. The *approved* third party shall be objective, competent and independent from the contractor responsible for the work being inspected. The *approved* third party shall disclose to the *building official* and the *registered design professional in responsible charge* possible conflicts of interest so that objectivity can be confirmed.

R105.4.2 Approved third-party inspections scope. When authorized, and at the sole discretion of the authority having jurisdiction, the authority having jurisdiction shall determine and delegate compliance verification measures the third-party inspection agency can perform.

R105.4.3 Approved third-party inspections reporting. The approved agency shall submit inspection reports to the authority having jurisdiction and to the owner's representative in accordance with International Building Code Section 104.4 before the Certificate of Occupancy can be issued.

R105.5 Inspection requests. It shall be the duty of the holder of the permit or their duly authorized agent to notify the *code official* when work is ready for inspection. It shall be the duty of the permit holder to provide access to and means for inspections of such work that are required by this code.

R105.6 Reinspection and testing. Where any work or installation does not pass an initial test or inspection, the necessary corrections shall be made to achieve compliance with this code. The work or installation shall then be resubmitted to the *code official* for inspection and testing.

SECTION R106
NOTICE OF APPROVAL

R106.1 Approval. After the prescribed tests and inspections indicate that the work complies in all respects with this code, a notice of approval shall be issued by the *code official*.

R106.2 Revocation. The *code official* is authorized to, in writing, suspend or revoke a notice of approval issued under the provisions of this code wherever the certificate is issued in error, or on the basis of incorrect information supplied, or where it is determined that the *building* or structure, premise, or portion thereof is in violation of any ordinance or regulation or any of the provisions of this code.

SECTION R107
VALIDITY

R107.1 General. If a portion of this code is held to be illegal or void, such a decision shall not affect the validity of the remainder of this code.

SECTION R108
REFERENCED STANDARDS

R108.1 Referenced codes and standards. The codes and standards referenced in this code shall be those indicated in Chapter 5, and such codes and standards shall be considered as part of the requirements of this code to the prescribed extent of each such reference and as further regulated in Sections R108.1.1 and R108.1.2.

R108.1.1 Conflicts. Where conflicts occur between provisions of this code and referenced codes and standards, the provisions of this code shall apply.

R108.1.2 Provisions in referenced codes and standards. Where the extent of the reference to a referenced code or standard includes subject matter that is within the scope of this code, the provisions of this code, as applicable, shall take precedence over the provisions in the referenced code or standard.

R108.2 Application of references. References to chapter or section numbers, or to provisions not specifically identified by number, shall be construed to refer to such chapter, section or provision of this code.

R108.3 Other laws. The provisions of this code shall not be deemed to nullify any provisions of local, state or federal law.

SECTION R109
STOP WORK ORDER

R109.1 Authority. Where the *code official* finds any work regulated by this code being performed in a manner contrary to the provisions of this code or in a dangerous or unsafe manner, the *code official* is authorized to issue a stop work order.

R109.2 Issuance. The stop work order shall be in writing and shall be given to the owner of the property, the owner's authorized agent or the person performing the work. Upon issuance of a stop work order, the cited work shall immediately cease. The stop work order shall state the reason for the order and the conditions under which the cited work is authorized to resume.

R109.3 Emergencies. Where an emergency exists, the *code official* shall not be required to give a written notice prior to stopping the work.

R109.4 Failure to comply. Any person who shall continue any work after having been served with a stop work order, except such work as that person is directed to perform to remove a violation or unsafe condition, shall be subject to fines established by the authority having jurisdiction.

SECTION R110
MEANS OF APPEALS

R110.1 Appeals shall be in accordance with Chapter 8.08 of the Aspen Municipal Code.

~~**R110.1 General.** In order to hear and decide appeals of orders, decisions or determinations made by the *code official* relative to the application and interpretation of this code, there shall be and is hereby created a board of appeals. The board of appeals shall be appointed by the applicable governing authority and shall hold office at its pleasure. The board shall adopt rules of procedure for conducting its business and shall render all decisions and findings in writing to the appellant with a duplicate copy to the code official.~~

~~**R110.2 Limitations on authority.** An application for appeal shall be based on a claim that the true intent of this code or the rules legally adopted thereunder have been incorrectly interpreted, the provisions of this code do not fully apply or an equivalent or better form of construction is proposed. The board shall not have authority to waive requirements of this code or interpret the administration of this code.~~

~~**R110.3 Qualifications.** The board of appeals shall consist of members who are qualified by experience and training and are not employees of the jurisdiction.~~

~~**R110.4 Administration.** The code official shall take immediate action in accordance with the decision of the board.~~

CHAPTER 2 [RE]
DEFINITIONS

User note:

About this chapter: *Codes, by their very nature, are technical documents. Every word, term and punctuation mark can add to or change the meaning of a technical requirement. It is necessary to maintain a consensus on the specific meaning of each term contained in the code. Chapter 2 performs this function by stating clearly what specific terms mean for the purpose of the code.*

SECTION R201
GENERAL

R201.1 Scope. Unless stated otherwise, the following words and terms in this code shall have the meanings indicated in this chapter.

R201.2 Interchangeability. Words used in the present tense include the future; words in the masculine gender include the feminine and neuter; the singular number includes the plural, and the plural includes the singular.

R201.3 Terms defined in other codes. Terms that are not defined in this code but are defined in the *International Building Code*, *International Fire Code*, *International Fuel Gas Code*, *International Mechanical Code*, or the *International Plumbing Code* ~~or the *International Residential Code*~~ shall have the meanings ascribed to them in those codes.

R201.4 Terms not defined. Terms not defined by this chapter shall have ordinarily accepted meanings such as the context implies.

SECTION R202
GENERAL DEFINITIONS

ABOVE-GRADE WALL. A wall more than 50 percent above grade and enclosing *conditioned space*. This includes between-floor spandrels, peripheral edges of floors, roof and basement knee walls, dormer walls, gable end walls, walls enclosing a mansard roof and *skylight* shafts.

ACCESS (TO). That which enables a device, appliance or equipment to be reached by *ready access* or by a means that first requires the removal or movement of a panel or similar obstruction.

ADDITION. An extension or increase in the *conditioned space* floor area, number of stories or height of a building or structure.

AIR BARRIER. One or more materials joined together in a continuous manner to restrict or prevent the passage of air through the *building thermal envelope* and its assemblies.

ALL-ELECTRIC BUILDING. A building that contains no combustion equipment, or plumbing for *combustion equipment*, installed within the *building* or *building site*.

Exceptions:

1. Backup generators and associated plumbing.
2. Wood burning stoves and fireplaces in accordance with Aspen Municipal Code Title 13.

ALTERATION. Any construction, retrofit or renovation to an existing structure other than *repair* or *addition*. Also, a change in a building, electrical, gas, mechanical or plumbing system that involves an extension, addition or change to the arrangement, type or purpose of the original installation.

APPLIANCE. Any apparatus or device that utilizes a fuel or a raw material as a fuel to produce light, heat, power, refrigeration or air conditioning. Also, an apparatus that compresses fuel gases.

APPROVED. Acceptable to the *code official.*

APPROVED AGENCY. An established and recognized agency that is regularly engaged in conducting tests furnishing inspection services, or furnishing product certification, where such agency has been *approved* by the *code official.*

APPROVED SOURCE. An independent person, firm or corporation, approved by the code official, who is competent and experienced in the application of engineering principles to materials, methods or system analyses.

AUTOMATIC. Self-acting, operating by its own mechanism when actuated by some impersonal influence, as, for example, a change in current strength, pressure, temperature or mechanical configuration (see "*Manual*").

AUTOMATIC SHUT-OFF CONTROL. A device capable of automatically turning loads off without manual intervention. Automatic shut-off controls include devices such as, but not limited to, occupancy sensors, vacancy sensors, door switches, programmable time switches (i.e., timeclocks), or count-down timers.

AUTOMOBILE PARKING SPACE. A space within a building or private or public parking lot, exclusive of driveways, ramps, columns, office and work areas, for the parking of an automobile

BASEMENT WALL. A wall 50 percent or more below grade and enclosing *conditioned space.*

BUILDING. Any structure used or intended for supporting or sheltering any use or occupancy, including any mechanical systems, service water-heating systems and electric power and lighting systems located on the *building site* and supporting the building.

BUILDING SITE. A contiguous area of land that is under the ownership or control of one entity.

BUILDING THERMAL ENVELOPE. The *basement walls*, *exterior walls*, floors, ceiling, roofs and any other *building* element assemblies that enclose *conditioned space* or provide a boundary between *conditioned space* and exempt or unconditioned space.

CAVITY INSULATION. Insulating material located between framing members.

CIRCULATING HOT WATER SYSTEM. A specifically designed water distribution system where one or more pumps are operated in the service hot water piping to circulate heated water from the water-heating equipment to fixtures and back to the water-heating equipment.

CLIMATE ZONE. A geographical region based on climatic criteria as specified in this code.

CODE OFFICIAL. The officer or other designated authority charged with the administration and enforcement of this code or a duly authorized representative.

COMBUSTION EQUIPMENT. Any *equipment* or *appliance* used for space heating, service water heating, cooking, clothes drying and/or lighting that uses *fuel gas* or *fuel oil*.

COMMERCIAL BUILDING. For this code, all buildings that are not included in the definition of "*Residential building.*"

CONDITIONED FLOOR AREA. The horizontal projection of the floors associated with the *conditioned space*.

CONDITIONED SPACE. An area, room or space that is enclosed within the *building thermal envelope* and that is directly or indirectly heated or cooled. Spaces are indirectly heated or cooled where they communicate through openings with conditioned spaces, where they are separated from conditioned spaces by uninsulated walls, floors or ceilings, or where they contain uninsulated ducts, piping or other sources of heating or cooling.

CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS. Written, graphic and pictorial documents prepared or assembled for describing the design, location and physical characteristics of the elements of a project necessary for obtaining a building permit.

CONTINUOUS AIR BARRIER. A combination of materials and assemblies that restrict or prevent the passage of air through the *building thermal envelope*.

CONTINUOUS INSULATION (ci). Insulating material that is continuous across all structural members without thermal bridges other than fasteners and service openings. It is installed on the interior or exterior, or is integral to any opaque surface, of the *building* envelope.

CONTINUOUSLY BURNING PILOT LIGHT. A small gas flame used to ignite gas at a larger burner. Once lit, a continuous pilot light remains in operation until manually interrupted.

CRAWL SPACE WALL. The opaque portion of a wall that encloses a crawl space and is partially or totally below grade.

CURTAIN WALL. Fenestration products used to create an external non load-bearing wall that is designed to separate the exterior and interior environments.

DEMAND RECIRCULATION WATER SYSTEM. A water distribution system where one or more pumps prime the service hot water piping with heated water upon demand for hot water.

DEMAND RESPONSE SIGNAL. A signal that indicates a price or a request to modify electricity consumption for a limited time period.

DEMAND RESPONSIVE CONTROL. A control capable of receiving and automatically responding to a demand response signal.

DIMMER. A control device that is capable of continuously varying the light output and energy use of light sources.

DUCT. A tube or conduit utilized for conveying air. The air passages of self-contained systems are not to be construed as air ducts.

DUCT SYSTEM. A continuous passageway for the trans- mission of air that, in addition to ducts, includes duct fittings, dampers, plenums, fans and accessory air-handling equipment and appliances.

DWELLING UNIT. A single unit providing complete independent living facilities for one or more persons, including permanent provisions for living, sleeping, eating, cooking and sanitation.

DWELLING UNIT ENCLOSURE AREA. The sum of the area of ceiling, floors, and walls separating a *dwelling unit's conditioned space* from the exterior or from adjacent conditioned or unconditioned spaces. Wall height shall be measured from the finished floor of the *dwelling unit* to the underside of the floor above.

ELECTRIC VEHICLE (EV). An automotive-type vehicle for on-road use, such as passenger automobiles, buses, trucks, vans, neighborhood electric vehicles, and electric motorcycles, primarily powered by an electric motor that draws current from a building electrical service, EVSE, a rechargeable storage battery, a fuel cell, a photovoltaic array, or another source of electric current.

ELECTRIC VEHICLE CAPABLE SPACE (EV CAPABLE SPACE). A designated automobile parking space that is provided with electrical infrastructure, such as, but not limited to, raceways, cables, electrical capacity, and panelboard or other electrical distribution equipment space, necessary for the future installation of an EVSE.

ELECTRIC VEHICLE READY SPACE (EV READY SPACE). An automobile parking space that is provided with a branch circuit and a receptacle outlet that will support an installed EVSE.

ELECTRIC VEHICLE SUPPLY EQUIPMENT (EVSE). Equipment for plug-in power transfer including the ungrounded, grounded and equipment grounding conductors, and the electric vehicle connectors, attached plugs, personal protection system and all other fittings, devices, power outlets or apparatus installed specifically for the purpose of transferring energy between the premises wiring and the electric vehicle.

ELECTRIC VEHICLE SUPPLY EQUIPMENT INSTALLED SPACE (EVSE SPACE). An automobile parking space that is provided with a dedicated EVSE connection.

ENERGY ANALYSIS. A method for estimating the annual energy use of the *proposed design* and *standard reference design* based on estimates of energy use.

ENERGY ASSESSMENT REPORT. A report created by a building performance institute (BPI) certified energy analyst or other *approved* third party that analyzes the current condition and energy usage of a building or dwelling unit and provides a list of recommended improvements. The report shall include air leakage testing in accordance with section R402.4.1.2.

ENERGY STORAGE SYSTEM (ESS). One or more devices, assembled together, capable of storing energy in order to supply electrical energy at a future time.

ENERGY COST. The total estimated annual cost for purchased energy for the building functions regulated by this code, including applicable demand charges.

ENERGY SIMULATION TOOL. An *approved* software program or calculation-based methodology that projects the annual energy use of a *building*.

EQUIPMENT. Piping, ducts, vents, control devices and other components of systems other than appliances that are permanently installed and integrated to provide control of environmental conditions for buildings. This definition shall also include other systems specifically regulated in this code.

ERI REFERENCE DESIGN. A version of the *rated design* that meets the minimum requirements of the 2006 *International Energy Conservation Code*.

EXTERIOR WALL. Walls including both *above-grade walls* and *basement walls*.

EXTERIOR WALL ENVELOPE. A system or assembly of exterior wall components, including exterior wall finish materials, that provides protection of the building structural members, including framing and sheathing materials, and conditioned interior space, from the detrimental effects of the exterior environment.

FENESTRATION. Products classified as either *vertical fenestration* or *skylights.*

Skylights. Glass or other transparent or translucent glazing material installed at a slope of less than 60 degrees (1.05 rad) from horizontal including unit skylights, tubular daylighting devices, and glazing materials in solariums, sunrooms, roofs and sloped walls.

Vertical fenestration. Windows that are fixed or operable, opaque doors, glazed doors, glazed block and combination opaque/glazed doors composed of glass or other transparent or translucent glazing materials and installed at a slope of not less than 60 degrees (1.05 rad) from horizontal.

FENESTRATION PRODUCT, SITE-BUILT. A fenestration designed to be made up of field-glazed or field-assembled units using specific factory cut or otherwise factory-formed framing and glazing units. Examples of site- built fenestration include storefront systems, curtain walls and atrium roof systems.

FUEL GAS. A natural gas, manufactured gas, liquified petroleum gas or a mixture of these.

FUEL OIL. Kerosene or any hydrocarbon oil having a flash point not less than 100°F (38°C).

HEATED SLAB. Slab-on-grade construction in which the heating elements, hydronic tubing, or hot air distribution system is in contact with, or placed within or under, the slab.

HEAT PUMP. A refrigeration system or factory-made appliance that utilizes refrigerant to transfer heat into a space or substance.

HIGH-EFFICACY LIGHT SOURCES. Any lamps with an efficacy of not less than 65 lumens per watt, or luminaires

with an efficacy of not less than 45 lumens per watt.

HISTORIC BUILDING. Any building or structure that is one or more of the following:

1. Listed, or certified as eligible for listing by the State Historic Preservation Officer or the Keeper of the National Register of Historic Places, in the National Register of Historic Places.
2. Designated as historic under an applicable state or local law.
3. Certified as a contributing resource within a National Register-listed, state-designated or locally designated historic district.

INFILTRATION. The uncontrolled inward air leakage into a *building* caused by the pressure effects of wind or the effect of differences in the indoor and outdoor air density or both.

INSULATED SIDING. A type of continuous insulation with manufacturer-installed insulating material as an integral part of the cladding product having an *R*-value of not less than R-2.

LABELED. Equipment, materials or products to which have been affixed a label, seal, symbol or other identifying mark of a nationally recognized testing laboratory, *approved* agency or other organization concerned with product evaluation that maintains periodic inspection of the production of such labeled items and whose labeling indicates either that the equipment, material or product meets identified standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose.

LISTED. Equipment, materials, products or services included in a list published by an organization acceptable to the *code official* and concerned with evaluation of products or services that maintains periodic inspection of production of *listed* equipment or materials or periodic evaluation of services and whose listing states either that the equipment, material, product or service meets identified standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose.

LOW-VOLTAGE LIGHTING. Lighting equipment powered through a transformer such as a cable conductor, a rail conductor and track lighting.

MANUAL. Capable of being operated by personal intervention (see "*Automatic*").

OCCUPANT SENSOR CONTROL. An automatic control device that detects the presence or absence of people within an area and causes lighting, equipment or appliances to be regulated accordingly.

ON-SITE RENEWABLE ENERGY. Energy from renew- able energy resources harvested at the building site.

OPAQUE DOOR. A door that is not less than 50-percent opaque in surface area.

PILOT LIGHT, CONTINUOUSLY BURNING. A small gas flame used to ignite gas at a larger burner. Once lit, a continuously burning pilot light remains in operation until manually interrupted. Pilot light ignition systems with the ability to switch between intermittent and continuous mode are considered continuous.

PILOT LIGHT, INTERMITTENT. A pilot which is automatically ignited when an appliance is called on to operate and which remains continuously ignited during each period of main burner operation. The pilot is automatically extinguished when each main burner operating cycle is completed.

PILOT LIGHT, INTERRUPTED. A pilot which is automatically ignited prior to the admission of fuel to the main burner, and which is automatically extinguished after the main flame is established.

PILOT LIGHT, ON-DEMAND. A pilot which, once placed into operation, is intended to remain ignited for a predetermined period of time following an automatic or manual operation of the main burner gas valve.

PROPOSED DESIGN. A description of the proposed *building* used to estimate annual energy use for determining compliance based on ~~total~~ simulated building performance.

RATED DESIGN. A description of the proposed *building* used to determine the energy rating index.

READY ACCESS (TO). That which enables a device, appliance or equipment to be directly reached without requiring the removal or movement of any panel or similar obstruction.

~~**RENEWABLE ENERGY CERTIFICATE (REC).** An instrument that represents the environmental attributes of one megawatt hour of renewable energy; also known as an energy attribute certificate (EAC).~~

RENEWABLE ENERGY RESOURCES. Energy derived from solar radiation, wind, waves, tides, landfill gas, biogas, biomass or extracted from hot fluid or steam heated within the earth.

REPAIR. The reconstruction or renewal of any part of an existing *building* for the purpose of its maintenance or to correct damage.

REROOFING. The process of recovering or replacing an existing roof covering. See "*Roof recover*" and "*Roof replacement*."

RESIDENTIAL BUILDING. For this code, includes detached one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses as well as *Group R*-2, *R*-3 and *R*-4 buildings three stories or less in height above grade plane.

ROOF ASSEMBLY. A system designed to provide weather protection and resistance to design loads. The system

consists of a roof covering and roof deck or a single component serving as both the roof covering and the roof deck. A roof assembly includes the roof covering, underlayment and roof deck and can also include a thermal barrier, an ignition barrier, insulation or a vapor retarder.

ROOF RECOVER. The process of installing an additional roof covering over an existing roof covering without removing the existing roof covering.

ROOF REPAIR. Reconstruction or renewal of any part of an existing roof for the purposes of its maintenance.

ROOF REPLACEMENT. ~~The process of removing the existing roof covering, repairing any damaged substrate and installing a new roof covering.~~ An *alteration* that includes the removal of all existing layers of roof assembly materials down to the roof deck and installing replacement materials above the existing roof deck.

***R*-VALUE (THERMAL RESISTANCE).** The inverse of the time rate of heat flow through a body from one of its bounding surfaces to the other surface for a unit temperature difference between the two surfaces, under steady state conditions, per unit area ($h \times ft^2 \times °F/Btu$) [$(m^2 \times K)/W$].

SERVICE WATER HEATING. Supply of hot water for purposes other than comfort heating.

SOLAR HEAT GAIN COEFFICIENT (SHGC). The ratio of the solar heat gain entering the space through the fenestration assembly to the incident solar radiation. Solar heat gain includes directly transmitted solar heat and absorbed solar radiation that is then reradiated, conducted or convected into the space.

SOLAR-READY ZONE. A section or sections of the roof or building overhang designated and reserved for the future installation of a solar photovoltaic or solar thermal system.

STANDARD REFERENCE DESIGN. A version of the *proposed design* that meets the minimum requirements of this code and is used to determine the maximum annual energy use requirement for compliance based on total building performance.

SUNROOM. A one-story structure attached to a dwelling with a glazing area in excess of 40 percent of the gross area of the structure's *exterior walls* and roof.

THERMAL BRIDGE. An element or interface of elements that has a higher thermal conductivity than the surrounding building thermal envelope, which creates a path of least resistance for heat transfer.

THERMAL DISTRIBUTION EFFICIENCY (TDE). The resistance to changes in air heat as air is conveyed through a distance of air duct. TDE is a heat loss calculation evaluating the difference in the heat of the air between the air duct inlet and outlet caused by differences in temperatures between the air in the duct and the duct material. TDE is expressed as a percent difference between the inlet and outlet heat in the duct.

THERMAL ISOLATION. Physical and space conditioning separation from *conditioned spaces*. The *conditioned spaces* shall be controlled as separate zones for heating and cooling or conditioned by separate equipment.

THERMOSTAT. An automatic control device used to maintain temperature at a fixed or adjustable setpoint.

***U*-FACTOR (THERMAL TRANSMITTANCE).** The coefficient of heat transmission (air to air) through a building component or assembly, equal to the time rate of heat flow per unit area and unit temperature difference between the warm side and cold side air films ($Btu/h \times ft^2 \times °F$) [$W/(m^2 \times K)$].

VENTILATION. The natural or mechanical process of supplying conditioned or unconditioned air to, or removing such air from, any space.

VENTILATION AIR. That portion of supply air that comes from outside (outdoors) plus any recirculated air that has been treated to maintain the desired quality of air within a designated space.

VISIBLE TRANSMITTANCE (VT). The ratio of visible light entering the space through the fenestration product assembly to the incident visible light. Visible Transmittance includes the effects of glazing material and frame and is expressed as a number between 0 and 1.

WHOLE HOUSE MECHANICAL VENTILATION SYSTEM. An exhaust system, supply system, or combination thereof that is designed to mechanically exchange indoor air with outdoor air when operating continuously or through a programmed intermittent schedule to satisfy the whole house ventilation rates.

WORK AREA. That portion or portions of a building consisting of all reconfigured spaces as indicated on the construction documents. Work area excludes other portions of the building where incidental work entailed by the intended work must be performed and portions of the building where work not initially intended by the owner is specifically required by this code.

ZONAL HEATING. A heating system in which each zone or room has a separate heater with a single controller in each zone.

ZONE. A space or group of spaces within a *building* with heating or cooling requirements that are sufficiently similar

so that desired conditions can be maintained throughout using a single controlling device.

CHAPTER 3 [RE]

GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

User note:

About this chapter: *Chapter 3 addresses broadly applicable requirements that would not be at home in other chapters having more specific coverage of subject matter. This chapter establishes climate zone by US counties and territories and includes methodology for determining climate zones elsewhere. It also contains product rating, marking and installation requirements for materials such as insulation, windows, doors and siding.*

SECTION R301
CLIMATE ZONES

Section R301 Climate zones is deleted in its entirety and shall read as follows: The City of Aspen, Colorado, shall use Climate Zone 7.

SECTION R302
DESIGN CONDITIONS

R302.1 Interior design conditions. The interior design temperatures used for heating and cooling load calculations shall be a maximum of 72°F (22°C) for heating and mini- mum of 75°F (24°C) for cooling.

SECTION R303
MATERIALS, SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT

R303.1 Identification. Materials, systems and equipment shall be identified in a manner that will allow a determination of compliance with the applicable provisions of this code.

R303.1.1 Building thermal envelope insulation. An *R*-value identification mark shall be applied by the manufacturer to each piece of *building thermal envelope* insulation that is 12 inches (305 mm) or greater in width. Alternatively, the insulation installers shall provide a certification that indicates the type, manufacturer and *R*-value of insulation installed in each element of the *building thermal envelope*. For blown-in or sprayed fiberglass and cellulose insulation, the initial installed thickness, settled thickness, settled *R*-value, installed density, coverage area and number of bags installed shall be indicated on the certification. For sprayed polyurethane foam (SPF) insulation, the installed thickness of the areas covered, and the *R*-value of the installed thickness shall be indicated on the certification. For insulated siding, the *R*-value shall be on a label on the product's package and shall be indicated on the certification. The insulation installer shall sign, date and post the certification in a conspicuous location on the job site.

Exception: For roof insulation installed above the deck, the *R*-value shall be labeled as required by the material standards specified in Table 1508.2 of the *International Building Code* ~~or Table R906.2 of the *International Residential Code*, as applicable~~.

R303.1.1.1 Blown-in or sprayed roof and ceiling insulation. The thickness of blown-in or sprayed fiberglass and cellulose roof and ceiling insulation shall be written in inches (mm) on markers that are installed at not less than one for every 300 square feet (28 m^2) throughout the attic space. The markers shall be affixed to the trusses or joists and marked with the minimum initial installed thickness with numbers not less than 1 inch (25 mm) in height. Each marker shall face the attic access opening. The thickness and installed *R*-value of sprayed polyurethane foam insulation shall be indicated on the certification provided by the insulation installer.

R303.1.2 Insulation mark installation. Insulating materials shall be installed such that the manufacturer's *R*-value mark is readily observable at inspection. For insulation materials that are installed without an observable manufacturer's *R*-value mark, such as blown or draped products, an insulation certificate complying with Section R303.1.1 shall be left immediately after installation by the installer, in a conspicuous location within the building, to certify the installed *R*-value of the insulation material.

R303.1.3 Fenestration product rating. *U*-factors of fenestration products such as windows, doors and *skylights* shall be determined in accordance with NFRC 100.

Exception: Where required, garage door *U*-factors shall be determined in accordance with either NFRC 100 or ANSI/DASMA 105.

U-factors shall be determined by an accredited, independent laboratory, and labeled and certified by the manufacturer.

Products lacking such a labeled *U*-factor shall be assigned a default *U*-factor from Table R303.1.3(1) or Table R303.1.3(2). The *solar heat gain coefficient* (SHGC) and *visible transmittance* (VT) of glazed fenestration products such as windows, glazed doors and *skylights* shall be determined in accordance with NFRC 200 by an accredited,

independent laboratory, and labeled and certified by the manufacturer. Products lacking such a labeled SHGC or VT shall be assigned a default SHGC or VT from Table R303.1.3(3).

TABLE R303.1.3(1)
DEFAULT GLAZED WINDOW, GLASS DOOR AND SKYLIGHT *U*-FACTORS

FRAME TYPE	WINDOW AND GLASS DOOR		SKYLIGHT	
	Single pane	Double pane	Single	Double
Metal	1.20	0.80	2.00	1.30
Metal with Ther- mal Break	1.10	0.65	1.90	1.10
Nonmetal or Metal Clad	0.95	0.55	1.75	1.05
Glazed Block	0.60			

TABLE R303.1.3(2) DEFAULT OPAQUE DOOR *U*-FACTORS

DOOR TYPE	OPAQUE *U*-FACTOR
Uninsulated Metal	1.20
Insulated Metal	0.60
Wood	0.50
Insulated, nonmetal edge, not exceeding 45% glazing, any glazing double pane	0.35

TABLE R303.1.3(3)
DEFAULT GLAZED FENESTRATION SHGC AND VT

	SINGLE GLAZED		DOUBLE GLAZED		GLAZED BLOCK
	Clear	Tinted	Clear	Tinted	
SHGC	0.8	0.7	0.7	0.6	0.6
VT	0.6	0.3	0.6	0.3	0.6

R303.1.4 Insulation product rating. The thermal resistance, *R*-value, of insulation shall be determined in accordance with Part 460 of US-FTC CFR Title 16 in units of h × ft^2 × °F/Btu at a mean temperature of 75°F (24°C).

R303.1.4.1 Insulated siding. The thermal resistance, *R*-value, of insulated siding shall be determined in accordance with ASTM C1363. Installation for testing shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

R303.1.5 Air-impermeable insulation. Insulation having an air permeability not greater than 0.004 cubic feet per minute per square foot [0.002 L/(s × m^2)] under pressure differential of 0.3 inch water gauge (75 Pa) when tested in accordance with ASTM E2178 shall be deter- mined air-impermeable insulation.

R303.2 Installation. Materials, systems and equipment shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and the *International Building Code* ~~or the *International Residential Code*, as applicable~~. Insulation shall meet the requirements of the Grade I standard in ICC/RESNET 301 Normative Appendix A.

R303.2.1 Protection of exposed foundation insulation. Insulation applied to the exterior of *basement walls*, crawl space walls and the perimeter of slab-on-grade floors shall have a rigid, opaque and weather-resistant protective covering to prevent the degradation of the insulation's thermal performance. The protective covering shall cover the exposed exterior insulation and extend not less than 6 inches (153 mm) below grade.

R303.3 Maintenance information. Maintenance instructions shall be furnished for equipment and systems that require preventive maintenance. Required regular maintenance actions shall be clearly stated and incorporated on a readily visible label. The label shall include the title or publication number for the operation and maintenance manual for that particular model and type of product.

CHAPTER 4 [RE]
RESIDENTIAL ENERGY EFFICIENCY

User note:

About this chapter: *Chapter 4 presents the paths and options for compliance with the energy efficiency provisions. Chapter 4 contains energy efficiency provisions for the building envelope, mechanical and water heating systems, lighting and additional efficiency requirements. A performance alternative, energy rating alternative, and tropical regional alternative are also provided to allow for energy code compliance other than by the prescriptive method.*

SECTION R401
GENERAL

R401.1 Scope. This chapter applies to residential buildings.

R401.2 Application. Residential buildings shall comply with ~~Section R401.2.5 and~~ either Sections R401.2.1, R401.2.2, R401.2.3 or R401.2.4.

Exception: Additions, *alterations*, repairs and changes of occupancy to existing buildings complying with Chapter 5.

R401.2.1 Prescriptive Compliance Option. The Prescriptive Compliance Option requires compliance with Sections R401 through R404.

R401.2.2 Total Building Performance Option. The Total Building Performance Option requires compliance with Section R405.

R401.2.3 Energy Rating Index Option. The Energy Rating Index (ERI) Option requires compliance with Section R406.

~~**R401.2.4 Tropical Climate Region Option.** The Tropical Climate Region Option requires compliance with Section R407.~~

R401.2.5 Additional energy efficiency. This section establishes additional requirements applicable to all compliance approaches to achieve additional energy efficiency.

1. For buildings complying with Section R401.2.1, one of the additional efficiency package options shall be installed according to Section R408.2.
2. For buildings complying with Section R401.2.2, the building shall meet one of the following:
   2.1. One of the additional efficiency package options in Section R408.2 shall be installed without including such measures in the proposed design under Section R405; or
   2.2. The proposed design of the building under Section R405.2 shall have an annual energy cost that is less than or equal to 95 percent of the annual energy cost of the standard reference design.
3. For buildings complying with the Energy Rating Index Alternative Section R401.2.3, the Energy Rating Index value shall be at least 5 percent less than the Energy Rating Index target specified in Table R406.5.

The option selected for compliance shall be identified in the certificate required by Section R401.3.

R401.3 Certificate. A permanent certificate shall be completed by the builder or other *approved* party and posted on a wall in the space where the furnace is located, a utility room or an *approved* location inside the *building*. Where located on an electrical panel, the certificate shall not cover or obstruct the visibility of the circuit directory *label*, service disconnect *label* or other required labels. The certificate shall indicate the following:

1. The predominant *R*-values of insulation installed in or on ceilings, roofs, walls, foundation components such as slabs, *basement walls*, *crawl space walls* and floors and ducts outside *conditioned spaces.*
2. *U*-factors of fenestration and the *solar heat gain coefficient* (SHGC) of fenestration. Where there is more than one value for any component of the building envelope, the certificate shall indicate both the value covering the largest area and the area weighted average value if available.
3. The results from any required duct system and building envelope air leakage testing performed on the building.
4. The types, sizes and efficiencies of heating, cooling and service water-heating equipment. Where a gas- fired unvented room heater, electric furnace or base- board electric heater is installed in the residence, the certificate shall indicate “gas-fired unvented room heater,” “electric furnace” or “baseboard electric heater,” as appropriate. An efficiency shall not be indicated for gas-fired unvented room heaters, electric furnaces and electric baseboard heaters.

5. Where on-site *photovoltaic panel* systems have been installed, the array capacity, inverter efficiency, panel tilt and orientation shall be noted on the certificate.
6. For buildings where an Energy Rating Index score is determined in accordance with Section R406, the Energy Rating Index score, both with and without any on-site generation, shall be listed on the certificate.
7. The code edition under which the structure was permitted, ~~and~~ the compliance path used, and where applicable, the additional efficiency measures selected for compliance with Section R408.
8. Where a solar-ready zone is provided, the certificate shall indicate the location, and dimensions.

SECTION R402
BUILDING THERMAL ENVELOPE

R402.1 General. The *building thermal envelope* shall comply with the requirements of Sections R402.1.1 through R402.1.5.

Exceptions:

1. The following *low-energy buildings*, or portions thereof, separated from the remainder of the building by *building thermal envelope* assemblies complying with this section shall be exempt from the *building thermal envelope* provisions of Section R402.
   1.1. Those with a peak design rate of energy usage less than 3.4 Btu/h × ft^2(10.7 W/m^2) or 1.0 watt/ft^2 of floor area for space- conditioning purposes.
   1.2. Those that do not contain *conditioned space*.

~~2. Log homes designed in accordance with ICC 400.~~

R402.1.1 Vapor retarder. Wall assemblies in the *building thermal envelope* shall comply with the vapor retarder requirements of ~~Section R702.7 of the *International Residential Code* or~~ Section 1404.3 of the *International Building Code*, as applicable.

R402.1.2 Insulation and fenestration criteria. The *building thermal envelope* shall meet the requirements of Table R402.1.2, based on the *climate zone* specified in Chapter 3. Assemblies shall have a *U*-factor equal to or less than that specified in Table R402.1.2. Fenestration shall have a *U*-factor and glazed fenestration SHGC equal to or less than that specified in Table R402.1.2.

R402.1.3 *R*-value alternative. Assemblies with *R*-value of insulation materials equal to or greater than that specified in Table R402.1.3 shall be an alternative to the *U*-factor in Table R402.1.2

R402.1.4 *R*-value computation. Cavity insulation alone shall be used to determine compliance with the cavity insulation *R*-value requirements in Table R402.1.3. Where cavity insulation is installed in multiple layers, the *R*-values of the cavity insulation layers shall be summed to determine compliance with the cavity insulation *R*- value requirements. The manufacturer's settled *R*-value shall be used for blown-in insulation. Continuous insulation (ci) alone shall be used to determine compliance with the continuous insulation *R*-value requirements in Table R402.1.3. Where continuous insulation is installed in multiple layers, the *R*-values of the continuous insulation layers shall be summed to determine compliance with the continuous insulation *R*-value requirements. Cavity insulation *R*-values shall not be used to determine compliance with the continuous insulation *R*-value requirements in Table R402.1.3. Computed *R*-values shall not include an R-value for other building materials or air films. Where insulated siding is used for the purpose of complying with the continuous insulation requirements of Table R402.1.3, the manufacturer's labeled R-value for the insulated siding shall be reduced by R-0.6.

TABLE R402.1.2

MAXIMUM ASSEMBLY *U*-FACTORS[a] AND FENESTRATION REQUIREMENTS

~~CLIMATE ZONE~~ WORK TYPE	FENESTRATION *U*-FACTOR[f]	SKYLIGHT U-FACTOR	GLAZED FENESTRATION SHGC d, e, f	CEILING U-FACTOR	WOOD FRAME WALL U-FACTOR	MASS WALL U-FACTOR b	FLOOR U-FACTOR	BASEMENT WALL U-FACTOR	CRAWL SPACE WALL U-FACTOR
~~7 and 8~~ New Construction & Additions	~~0.30~~ 0.26[h,i]	~~0.55~~ 0.44	~~NR~~ 0.35	~~0.024~~ 0.018[g]	~~0.045~~ 0.027	~~0.057~~ 0.036	~~0.028~~ 0.026	~~0.050~~ 0.034	~~0.055~~ 0.034

Alterations	0.28	0.50	0.35	0.026	0.049	0.057	0.028	0.050	0.055

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. Nonfenestration *U*-factors shall be obtained from measurement, calculation or an approved source.

b. Mass walls shall be in accordance with Section R402.2.5. Where more than half the insulation is on the interior, the mass wall *U*-factors shall not exceed

0.17 in Climate Zones 0 and 1, 0.14 in Climate Zone 2, 0.12 in Climate Zone 3, 0.087 in Climate Zone 4 except Marine, 0.065 in Climate Zone 5 and Marine 4, and 0.057 in Climate Zones 6 through 8.

c. In Warm Humid locations as defined by Figure R301.1 and Table R301.1, the basement wall *U*-factor shall not exceed 0.360.

d. The SHGC column applies to all glazed fenestration.

Exception: In Climate Zones 0 through 3, skylights shall be permitted to be excluded from glazed fenestration SHGC requirements provided that the SHGC for such skylights does not exceed 0.30.

e. There are no SHGC requirements in the Marine Zone.

f.

g. ~~A maximum *U*-factor of 0.32 shall apply in Marine Climate Zone 4 and Climate Zones 5 through 8 to vertical fenestration products installed in buildings located either:~~

~~1. Above 4,000 feet in elevation above sea level, or~~

~~2. In windborne debris regions where protection of openings is required by Section R301.2.1.2 of the *International Residential Code*.~~

h. Ceilings with attics may use an equivalent U-factor of 0.024.

i. Vertical fenestration shall also comply with R402.3.6 and R402.3.7.

j. Doors may have a U-factor of 0.28 or less.

TABLE R402.1.3

INSULATION MINIMUM *R*-VALUES AND FENESTRATION REQUIREMENTS BY COMPONENT[a]

~~CLIMATE ZONE~~ WORK TYPE	FENESTRATION *U*-FACTOR[b, i]	SKYLIGHT[b] *U*-FACTOR	GLAZED FENESTRATION SHGC[b, e]	CEILING *R*-VALUE	WOOD FRAME WALL *R*-VALUE[g]	MASS WALL *R*-VALUE[h]	FLOOR *R*-VALUE	BASEMENT[c,g] WALL *R*-VALUE	SLAB[d] *EDGE R*-VALUE & DEPTH	CRAWL SPACE[c,g] WALL *R*-VALUE
New Construction & Additions	0.26[i,j] ~~0.30[i]~~	0.44 ~~0.55~~	~~NR~~ 0.35	60	~~30 or 20&5ci[h] or 13&10ci[h] or 0&20ci[h]~~ 34+12ci or 20 + 20ci or 13 + 25ci	~~19/21~~ 25ci	38	~~5ci or 19 or 13 + 5ci~~ 20ci or 5 + 15ci or 13 + 10ci	10ci, 4 ft	~~ci or 19 or 13 + 5ci~~ 20ci or + 15ci or 13 + 10ci
Alterations	0.28 ~~0.30[i]~~	0.50 ~~0.55~~	~~NR~~ 0.35	~~60~~ 49	30 or 20+5ci[hg] or 13+10ci[hg] or 0+20ci[hg]	19/21	38	~~15ci or 19 or 13 + 5ci~~ 10ci or 13	10ci, 4 ft	~~ci or 19 or 13 + 5ci~~ 10ci or 13

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm. NR = Not Required.

ci = continuous insulation.

a. *R*-values are minimums. *U*-factors and SHGC are maximums. Where insulation is installed in a cavity that is less than the label or design thickness of the insulation, the installed *R*-value of the insulation shall be not less than the *R*-value specified in the table.

b. The fenestration *U*-factor column excludes skylights. The SHGC column applies to all glazed fenestration.

~~**Exception:** In Climate Zones 0 through 3, skylights shall be permitted to be excluded from glazed fenestration SHGC requirements provided that the SHGC for such skylights does not exceed 0.30.~~

~~c. "5ci or 13" means R-5 continuous insulation (ci) on the interior or exterior surface of the wall or R-13 cavity insulation on the interior side of the wall. "10ci or 13" means R-10 continuous insulation (ci) on the interior or exterior surface of the wall or R-13 cavity insulation on the interior side of the wall. "15ci or 19 or 13 + 5ci" means R-15 continuous insulation (ci) on the interior or exterior surface of the wall; or R-19 cavity insulation on the interior side of the wall; or R-13 cavity insulation on the interior of the wall in addition to R-5 continuous insulation on the interior or exterior surface of the wall.~~

d. ~~R-5~~ R-10 insulation shall be provided under the full slab area of a heated slab in addition to the required slab edge insulation *R*-value for slabs as indicated in the table. The slab-edge insulation for heated slabs shall not be required to extend below the slab.

~~e. There are no SHGC requirements in the Marine Zone.~~

f. Basement wall insulation is not required in Warm Humid locations as defined by Figure R301.1 and Table R301.1.

g. The first value is cavity insulation; the second value is continuous insulation. Therefore, as an example, "13 + 5" means R-13 cavity insulation plus R-5 continuous insulation.

h. Mass walls shall be in accordance with Section R402.2.5. The second *R*-value applies where more than half of the insulation is on the interior of the mass wall.

i. A maximum *U*-factor of 0.32 shall apply in Climate Zones 3 through 8 to vertical fenestration products installed in buildings located either:

1. Above 4,000 feet in elevation, or

2. In windborne debris regions where protection of openings is required by Section R301.2.1.2 of the *International Residential Code*.

k. Vertical fenestration shall also comply with R402.3.6 and R402.3.7.

l. Doors may have a U-factor of 0.28 or less.

R402.1.5 Total UA alternative. Where the total *building thermal envelope* UA, the sum of *U*-factor times assembly area, is less than or equal to the total UA resulting from multiplying the *U*-factors in Table R402.1.2 by the same assembly area as in the proposed *building*, the *building* shall be considered to be in compliance with Table R402.1.2. The UA calculation shall be performed using a method consistent with the ASHRAE *Handbook of Fundamentals* and shall include the thermal bridging effects of framing materials. In addition to UA compliance, the SHGC requirements of Table R402.1.2 and the maximum fenestration *U*-factors of Section R402.5 shall be met.

If using REScheck software to show compliance with this alternative path for the 2021 edition of the code, the proposed design must be a minimum of 23% more efficient than the standard reference design in order to accommodate the amended values.

R402.2 Specific insulation requirements. In addition to the requirements of Section R402.1, insulation shall meet the specific requirements of Sections R402.2.1 through R402.2.13.

R402.2.1 Ceilings with attic spaces. Where Section R402.1.3 requires R-49 insulation in the ceiling or attic, installing R-38 over 100 percent of the ceiling or attic area requiring insulation shall satisfy the requirement for R-49 insulation wherever the full height of uncompressed R-38 insulation extends over the wall top plate at the eaves. Where Section R402.1.3 requires R-60 insulation in the ceiling, installing R-49 over 100 percent of the ceiling area requiring insulation shall satisfy the requirement for R-60 insulation wherever the full height of uncompressed R-49 insulation extends over the wall top plate at the eaves. This reduction shall not apply to the insulation and fenestration criteria in Section R402.1.2 and the Total UA alternative in Section R402.1.5.

R402.2.2 Ceilings without attics. Where Section R402.1.3 requires insulation *R*-values greater than R-30 in the interstitial space above a ceiling and below the structural roof deck, and the design of the roof/ceiling assembly does not allow sufficient space for the required insulation, the minimum required insulation *R*-value for such roof/ceiling assemblies shall be R-30. Insulation shall extend over the top of the wall plate to the outer edge of such plate and shall not be compressed. This reduction of insulation from the requirements of Section R402.1.3 shall be limited to 500 square feet (46 m^2) or 20 percent of the total insulated ceiling area, whichever is less. This reduction shall not apply to the Total UA alternative in Section R402.1.5.

R402.2.3 Eave baffle. For air-permeable insulation in vented attics, a baffle shall be installed adjacent to soffit and eave vents. Baffles shall maintain a net free area opening equal to or greater than the size of the vent. The baffle shall extend over the top of the attic insulation. The baffle shall be permitted to be any solid material. The baffle shall be installed to the outer edge of the *exterior wall* top plate so as to provide maximum space for attic insulation coverage over the top plate. Where soffit venting is not continuous, baffles shall be installed continuously to prevent ventilation air in the eave soffit from bypassing the baffle.

R402.2.4 Access hatches and doors. Access hatches and doors from conditioned to unconditioned spaces such as attics and crawl spaces shall be insulated to the same *R*- value required by Table R402.1.3 for the wall or ceiling in which they are installed.

Exceptions:

1. Vertical doors providing access from conditioned spaces to unconditioned spaces that comply with the fenestration requirements of Table R402.1.3 based on the applicable climate zone specified in Chapter 3.
2. Horizontal pull-down, stair-type access hatches in ceiling assemblies that provide access from conditioned to unconditioned spaces in Climate Zones 0 through 4 shall not be required to comply with the insulation level of the surrounding surfaces provided the hatch meets all of the following:
   2.1. The average *U*-factor of the hatch shall be less than or equal to U-0.10 or have an average insulation *R*-value of R-10 or greater.
   2.2. Not less than 75 percent of the panel area shall have an insulation *R*-value of R-13 or greater.
   2.3. The net area of the framed opening shall be less than or equal to 13.5 square feet (1.25 m^2).

2.4. The perimeter of the hatch edge shall be weatherstripped.

The reduction shall not apply to the total UA alternative in Section R402.1.5.

R402.2.4.1 Access hatches and door insulation installation and retention. Vertical or horizontal access hatches and doors from *conditioned spaces* to *unconditioned spaces* such as attics and crawl spaces shall be weatherstripped. Access that prevents damaging or compressing the insulation shall be provided to all equipment. Where loose-fill insulation is installed, a wood-framed or equivalent baffle, retainer, or dam shall be installed to prevent loose-fill insulation from spilling into living space from higher to lower sections of the attic and from attics covering conditioned spaces to unconditioned spaces. The baffle or retainer shall provide a permanent means of maintaining the installed *R*-value of the loose-fill insulation.

R402.2.5 Mass walls. Mass walls where used as a component of the *building thermal envelope* shall be one of the following:

1. Above-ground walls of concrete block, concrete, insulated concrete form, masonry cavity, brick but not brick veneer, adobe, compressed earth block, rammed earth, solid timber, mass timber or solid logs.
2. Any wall having a heat capacity greater than or equal to 6 Btu/ft^2 × °F (123 kJ/m^2 × K).

R402.2.6 Steel-frame ceilings, walls and floors. Steel- frame ceilings, walls, and floors shall comply with the insulation requirements of Table R402.2.6 or the *U*-factor requirements of Table R402.1.2. The calculation of the *U*-factor for a steel-frame envelope assembly shall use a series-parallel path calculation method.

TABLE R402.2.6

STEEL-FRAME CEILING, WALL AND FLOOR INSULATION *R*-VALUES

WOOD FRAME *R*-VALUE REQUIREMENT	COLD-FORMED STEEL-FRAME EQUIVALENT *R*-VALUE[a]
Steel Truss Ceilings[b]	
~~R-30~~	~~R-38 or R-30 + 3 or R-26 + 5~~
~~R-38~~	~~R-49 or R-38 + 3~~
R-49	R-38 + 5
R-60	R-49 + 10
Steel Joist Ceilings[b]	
~~R-30~~	~~R-38 in 2 × 4 or 2 × 6 or 2 × 8 R-49 in any framing~~
~~R-38~~	~~R-49 in 2 × 4 or 2 × 6 or 2 × 8 or 2 × 10~~
R-49	R-49 + 10
R-60	R-49 + 20
Steel-frame Wall, 16 inches on center	
~~R-13~~	~~R-13 + 4.2 or R-21 + 2.8 or R-0 + 9.3 or R-15 + 3.8 or R-21 + 3.1~~
~~R-13 + 5~~	~~R-0 + 15 or R-13 + 9 or R-15 + 8.5 or R-19 + 8 or R-21 + 7~~
~~R-13 + 10~~	~~R-0 + 20 or R-13 + 15 or R-15 + 14 or R-19 + 13 or R-21 + 13~~
~~R-20~~	~~R-0 + 14.0 or R-13 + 8.9 or R-15 + 8.5 or R-19 + 7.8 or R-21 + 7.5~~
~~R-20 + 5~~	~~R-13 + 12.7 or R-15 + 12.3 or R-19 + 11.6 or R-21 + 11.3 or R-25 + 10.9~~
~~R-21~~	~~R-0 + 14.6 or R-13 + 9.5 or R-15 + 9.1 or R-19 + 8.4 or R-21 + 8.1 or R-25 + 7.7~~
R-32 + 12	R-19 + 25
Steel-frame Wall, 24 inches on center	
~~R-13~~	~~R-0 + 9.3 or R-13 + 3.0 or R-15 + 2.4~~

~~R-13 + 5~~	~~R-0 + 15 or R-13 + 7.5 or R-15 + 7 or R-19 + 6 or R-21 + 6~~
~~R-13 + 10~~	~~R-0 + 20 or R-13 + 13 or R-15 + 12 or R-19 + 11 or R-21 + 11~~
~~R-20~~	~~R-0 + 14.0 or R-13 + 7.7 or R-15 + 7.1 or R-19 + 6.3 or R-21 + 5.9~~
~~R-20 + 5~~	~~R-13 + 11.5 or R-15 + 10.9 or R-19 + 10.1 or R-21 + 9.7 or R-25 + 9.1~~
~~R-21~~	~~R-0 + 14.6 or R-13 + 8.3 or R-15 + 7.7 or R-19 + 6.9 or R-21 + 6.5 or R-25 + 5.9~~
R-32 + 12	R-19 + 18
Steel Joist Floor	
~~R-13~~	~~R-19 in 2 × 6, or R-19 + 6 in 2 × 8 or 2 × 10~~
~~R-19~~	~~R-19 + 6 in 2 × 6, or R-19 + 12 in 2 × 8 or 2 × 10~~
R-38	R-30 + 25

a. The first value is cavity insulation *R*-value; the second value is continuous insulation *R*-value. Therefore, for example, "R-30 + 3" means R-30 cavity insulation plus R-3 continuous insulation.

b. Insulation exceeding the height of the framing shall cover the framing.

R402.2.7 Floors. Floor *cavity insulation* shall comply with one of the following:

1. Installation shall be installed to maintain permanent contact with the underside of the subfloor decking in accordance with manufacturer instructions to maintain required *R*-value or readily fill the available cavity space.
2. Floor framing cavity insulation shall be permitted to be in contact with the top side of sheathing separating the cavity and the unconditioned space below. Insulation shall extend from the bottom to the top of all perimeter floor framing members and the framing members shall be air sealed.
3. A combination of cavity and continuous insulation shall be installed so that the cavity insulation is in contact with the top side of the continuous insulation that is installed on the underside of the floor framing separating the cavity and the unconditioned space below. The combined *R*-value of the cavity and continuous insulation shall equal the required *R*-value for floors. Insulation shall extend from the bottom to the top of all perimeter floor framing members and the framing members shall be air sealed.

R402.2.8 Basement walls. Basement walls shall be insulated in accordance with Table R402.1.3.

Exception: Basement walls associated with unconditioned basements where all of the following requirements are met:

1. The floor overhead, including the underside stairway stringer leading to the basement, is insulated in accordance with Section R402.1.3 and applicable provisions of Sections R402.2 and R402.2.7.
2. There are no uninsulated duct, domestic hot water, or hydronic heating surfaces exposed to the basement.
3. There are no HVAC supply or return diffusers serving the basement.
4. The walls surrounding the stairway and adjacent to conditioned space are insulated in accordance with Section R402.1.3 and applicable provisions of Section R402.2.
5. The door(s) leading to the basement from conditioned spaces are insulated in accordance with Sections R402.1.3 and applicable provisions of Section R402.2, and weatherstripped in accordance with Section R402.4.
6. The building thermal envelope separating the basement from adjacent conditioned spaces complies with Section R402.4.

R402.2.8.1 Basement wall insulation installation. Where *basement walls* are insulated, the insulation shall be installed from the top of the *basement wall* down to 10 feet (3048 mm) below grade or to the basement floor, whichever is less.

R402.2.9 Slab-on-grade floors. Slab-on-grade floors with a floor surface less than 24 ~~12~~ inches (305 mm) below grade shall be insulated in accordance with Table R402.1.3. Heated slab-on-grade floors shall be insulated in accordance with Table R402.1.3 footnote d regardless of depth below grade.

~~**Exception:** Slab-edge insulation is not required in jurisdictions designated by the code official as having a very heavy termite infestation.~~

R402.2.9.1 Slab-on-grade floor insulation installation. Where installed, the insulation shall extend downward from the top of the slab on the outside or inside of the foundation wall. Insulation located below grade shall be extended the distance provided in Table R402.1.3 or the distance of the proposed design, as applicable, by any combination of vertical insulation, insulation extending under the slab or insulation extending out from the building. Insulation extending away from the building shall be protected by pavement or by not less than 10 inches (254 mm) of soil. Thetop edge of the insulation installed between the *exterior wall* and the edge of the interior slab shall be permitted to be cut at a 45-degree (0.79 rad) angle away from the *exterior wall*.

R402.2.10 Crawl space walls. Crawl space walls shall be insulated in accordance with Table R402.1.3.

Exception: Crawl space walls associated with a crawl space that is vented to the outdoors and the floor overhead is insulated in accordance with Table R402.1.3 and Section R402.2.7.

R402.2.10.1 Crawl space wall insulation installations. Where crawl space wall insulation is installed, it shall be permanently fastened to the wall and shall extend downward from the floor to the finished grade elevation and then vertically or horizontally for not less than an additional 24 inches (610 mm). Exposed earth in unvented crawl space foundations shall be covered with a continuous Class I vapor retarder in accordance with the *International Building Code* ~~or *International Residential Code*, as applicable~~. Joints of the vapor retarder shall overlap by 6 inches (153 mm) and be sealed or taped. The edges of the vapor retarder shall extend not less than 6 inches (153 mm) up stem walls and shall be attached to the stem walls.

R402.2.11 Masonry veneer. Insulation shall not be required on the horizontal portion of a foundation that supports a masonry veneer.

R402.2.12 Sunroom and heated garage insulation. *Sunrooms* enclosing *conditioned space* and heated garages shall meet the insulation requirements of this code.

Exception: For *sunrooms* and heated garages provided *thermal isolation*, and enclosed *conditioned space*, the following exceptions to the insulation requirements of this code shall apply:

1. The minimum ceiling insulation *R*-values~~s~~ shall be ~~R-19 in *Climate Zones* 0 through 4 and~~ R-24 ~~in *Climate Zones* 5 through 8~~. Ceilings separating a *sunroom* or heated garage with *thermal isolation* from *conditioned space* shall comply with the *building thermal envelope* requirements of this code.
2. The minimum wall insulation *R*-value shall be R-13~~ in all *climate zones*~~. Walls separating a *sunroom* or heated garage with *thermal isolation* from *conditioned space* shall comply with the *building thermal envelope* requirements of this code.

R402.2.13 Thermal bridges in above-grade walls. Thermal bridges in above-grade walls shall comply with Sections R402.2.13.1 through R402.13.3 or an *approved* design.

Exceptions:

1. Any thermal bridge with a material thermal conductivity not greater than 3.0 Btu/h-ft-°F.
2. Blocking, coping, flashing, and other similar materials for attachment of roof coverings.
3. Thermal bridges accounted for in the U-factor or C-factor for a building thermal envelope.

R402.2.13.1 Balconies and floor decks. Balconies and concrete floor decks shall not penetrate the building thermal envelope. Such assemblies shall be separately supported or shall be supported by *approved* structural attachments or elements that minimize thermal bridging through the building thermal envelope.

Exceptions: Balconies and concrete floor decks shall be permitted to penetrate the building thermal envelope where:

1. an area-weighted U-factor is used for above-grade wall compliance which includes a U-factor of 0.8 Btu/h-°F-ft2 for the area of the above-grade wall penetrated by the concrete floor deck, or
2. an approved thermal break device of not less than R-10 is installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

R402.2.13.2 Cladding supports. Linear elements supporting opaque cladding shall be off-set from the structure with attachments that allow the continuous insulation, where present, to pass behind the cladding support element.

Exceptions:

1. An approved design where the above-grade wall U-factor used for compliance accounts for the cladding support element thermal bridge.
2. Anchoring for curtain wall and window wall systems.

R402.2.13.3 Structural beams and columns. Structural steel and concrete beams and columns that project

through the building thermal envelope shall be covered with not less than R-5 insulation for not less than 2-feet (610 mm) beyond the interior or exterior surface of an insulation component within the building thermal envelope.

Exceptions:

1. Where an approved thermal break device is installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
2. An approved design where the above-grade wall U-factor used to demonstrate compliance accounts for the beam or column thermal bridge.

R402.3 Fenestration. In addition to the requirements of Section R402.1, fenestration shall comply with Sections R402.3.1 through R402.3.~~5~~7.

R402.3.1 *U*-factor. An area-weighted average of fenestration products shall be permitted to satisfy the *U*-factor requirements.

R402.3.2 Glazed fenestration SHGC. An area-weighted average of fenestration products more than 50-percent glazed shall be permitted to satisfy the SHGC requirements.

Dynamic glazing shall be permitted to satisfy the SHGC requirements of Table R402.1.2 provided that the ratio of the higher to lower labeled SHGC is greater than or equal to 2.4, and the *dynamic glazing* is automatically controlled to modulate the amount of solar gain into the space in multiple steps. *Dynamic glazing* shall be considered separately from other fenestration, and area- weighted averaging with other fenestration that is not dynamic glazing shall be prohibited.

Exception: Dynamic glazing shall not be required to comply with this section where both the lower and higher labeled SHGC comply with the requirements of Table R402.1.2.

R402.3.3 Glazed fenestration exemption. Not greater than 15 square feet (1.4 m^2) of glazed fenestration per *dwelling unit* shall be exempt from the *U*-factor and SHGC requirements in Section R402.1.2. This exemption shall not apply to the Total UA alternative in Section R402.1.5.

R402.3.4 Opaque door exemption. One side-hinged or pivot opaque door assembly not greater than ~~24~~ 40 square feet (2.22 m^2) in area shall be exempt from the *U*-factor requirement in Section R402.1.2. This exemption shall not apply to the Total UA alternative in Section R402.1.5.

R402.3.5 Sunroom and heated garage fenestration. *Sunrooms* and heated garages enclosing *conditioned space* shall comply with the fenestration requirements of this code.

Exception: ~~In Climate Zones 2 through 8, for~~ *Sunrooms* and heated garages with *thermal isolation* and enclosing *conditioned space*, the fenestration *U*- factor shall not exceed 0.45 and the skylight *U*-factor shall not exceed 0.70. This fenestration will count toward the maximum area in section R402.3.6.

New fenestration separating a *sunroom* or heated garage with *thermal isolation* from *conditioned space* shall comply with the *building thermal envelope* requirements of this code.

R402.3.6 Maximum area. The vertical fenestration area, not including opaque doors and opaque spandrel panels, shall be not greater than 30 percent of the gross above grade wall area enclosing conditioned space. The skylight area shall be not greater than 3 percent of the gross roof area over conditioned space.

R402.3.7 Panes. Vertical fenestration shall be triple glazed with a minimum of one factory applied low-e coating.

Exceptions:

1. Vertical fenestration that meets the U-factor of table R402.1.3 using air fill.
2. Doors.

R402.4 Air leakage. The *building thermal envelope* shall be constructed to limit air leakage in accordance with the requirements of Sections R402.4.1 through R402.4.5.

R402.4.1 Building thermal envelope. The *building thermal envelope* shall comply with Sections R402.4.1.1 through R402.4.1.3. The sealing methods between dissimilar materials shall allow for differential expansion and contraction.

R402.4.1.1 Installation. The components of the *building thermal envelope* as indicated in Table R402.4.1.1 shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and the criteria indicated in Table R402.4.1.1, as applicable to the method of construction. Where required by the *code official*, an *approved* third party shall inspect all components and verify compliance.

TABLE R402.4.1.1

AIR BARRIER, AIR SEALING AND INSULATION INSTALLATION[a]

COMPONENT	AIR BARRIER CRITERIA	INSULATION INSTALLATION CRITERIA

General requirements	A continuous air barrier shall be installed in the building envelope. Breaks or joints in the air barrier shall be sealed.	Air-permeable insulation shall not be used as a sealing material.
Ceiling/attic	The air barrier in any dropped ceiling or soffit shall be aligned with the insulation and any gaps in the air barrier shall be sealed. Access openings, drop down stairs or knee wall doors to unconditioned attic spaces shall be sealed.	The insulation in any dropped ceiling/soffit shall be aligned with the air barrier.
Walls	The junction of the foundation and sill plate shall be sealed. The junction of the top plate and the top of exterior walls shall be sealed. Knee walls shall be sealed.	Cavities within corners and headers of frame walls shall be insulated by completely filling the cavity with a material having a thermal resistance, *R*-value, of not less than R-3 per inch. Exterior thermal envelope insulation for framed walls shall be installed in substantial contact and continuous alignment with the air barrier.
Windows, skylights and doors	The space between framing and skylights, and the jambs of windows and doors, shall be sealed.	—
Rim joists	Rim joists shall include an exterior air barrier.[b] The junctions of the rim board to the sill plate and the rim board and the subfloor shall be air sealed.	Rim joists shall be insulated so that the insulation maintains permanent contact with the exterior rim joist ~~board~~.[b]
Floors, including cantilevered floors and floors above garages	The air barrier shall be installed at any exposed edge of insulation.	Floor framing cavity insulation shall be installed to maintain permanent contact with the underside of ~~subfloor decking~~ floor sheathing. Alternatively, floor framing cavity insulation shall be in contact with the top side of sheathing, or Continuous insulation installed on the underside of floor framing and extending from the bottom to the top of all perimeter floor framing members.
Basement crawl space and slab foundations	Exposed earth in unvented crawl spaces shall be covered with a Class I vapor retarder/air barrier in accordance with Section R402.2.10. Penetrations through masonry and concrete foundation walls and slabs shall be air sealed. Class 1 vapor retarders shall not be used as an air barrier on below-grade walls and shall be installed in accordance with Section ~~R702.7 of the *International Residential Code*~~. 1404.3 of the *International Building Code*	Crawl space insulation, where provided instead of floor insulation, shall be installed in accordance with Section R402.2.10. Conditioned basement foundation wall insulation shall be installed in accordance with Section R402.2.8.1. Slab-on-grade floor insulation shall be installed in accordance with Section R402.2.9.1
Shafts, penetrations	Duct and flue shafts to exterior or unconditioned space shall be sealed. Utility penetrations of the air barrier shall be caulked, gasketed or otherwise sealed and shall allow for expansion, contraction of materials and mechanical vibration.	Insulation shall be fitted tightly around utilities passing through shafts and penetrations in the building thermal envelope to maintain required *R*-value.
Narrow cavities	Narrow cavities of 1 inch or less that are not able to be insulated shall be air sealed.	Batts to be installed in narrow cavities shall be cut to fit or narrow cavities shall be filled with insulation that on installation readily conforms to the available cavity space.
Garage separation	Air sealing shall be provided between the garage and conditioned spaces.	Insulated portions of the garage separation assembly shall be installed in accordance with Sections R303 and R402.2.7.

a. Inspection of log walls shall be in accordance with the provisions of ICC 400.

b. Air barrier and insulation full enclosure is not required in unconditioned/ventilated attic spaces and at rim joists.

R402.4.1.2 Testing ~~and maximum air leakage rate.~~ The *building* or each *dwelling unit* in the building shall be tested for air leakage. ~~The maximum air leak- age rate for any *building* or *dwelling unit* under any compliance path shall not exceed 4.0 5.0 air changes per hour or 0.22 0.28 cubic feet per minute (CFM) per square foot [0.0079 $m^3/(s \times m^2)$] of dwelling unit enclosure area.~~ Testing shall be conducted in accordance with ANSI/RESNET/ICC 380, ASTM E779 or ASTM E1827 and reported at a pressure of 0.2 inch w.g. (50 Pascals). Where required by the *code official*, testing shall be conducted by an *approved* third party. A written report of the results of the test shall be signed by the party conducting the test and provided to the *code official*. Testing shall be performed at any time after creation of all penetrations of the *building thermal envelope* have

been sealed.

Exception:

1. For heated, attached private garages and heated, detached private garages accessory to one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses not more than three stories above *grade plane* in height, building envelope tightness and insulation installation shall be considered acceptable where the items in Table R402.4.1.1, applicable to the method of construction, are field verified. Where required by the code official, an *approved* third party independent from the installer shall inspect both air barrier and insulation installation criteria. Heated, attached private garage space and heated, detached private garage space shall ~~be thermally isolated~~ have *thermal isolation* from all other habitable, *conditioned spaces* in accordance with Sections R402.2.12 and R402.3.5, as applicable.

During testing:

1. Exterior windows and doors, fireplace and stove doors shall be closed, but not sealed, beyond the intended weatherstripping or other infiltration control measures.
2. Dampers including exhaust, intake, makeup air, backdraft and flue dampers shall be closed, but not sealed beyond intended infiltration control measures.
3. Interior doors, where installed at the time of the test, shall be open.
4. Exterior or interior terminations for continuous ventilation systems shall be sealed.
5. Heating and cooling systems, where installed at the time of the test, shall be turned off.
6. Supply and return registers, where installed at the time of the test, shall be fully open.

~~**Exception:** When testing individual *dwelling units*, an air leakage rate not exceeding0.30 cubic feet per minute per square foot [0.008 $m^3/(s \times m^2)$] of the dwelling unit enclosure area, tested in accordance with ANSI/RESNET/ICC 380, ASTM E779 or ASTM E1827 and reported at a pressure of 0.2 inch w.g. (50 Pa), shall be an accepted alternative permitted in all climate zones for:~~

~~1. Attached single and multiple- family building *dwelling units*.~~

~~2. Buildings or *dwelling units* that are 1,500 square feet (139.4 m^2) or smaller.~~

Mechanical ventilation shall be provided in accordance with ~~Section M1505 of the *International Residential Code* or~~ Section 403.3.2 of the *International Mechanical Code*, as applicable, or with other *approved* means of ventilation.

R402.4.1.3 Maximum air leakage rate. The maximum air leak-age rate for any *building* or *dwelling unit* under any compliance path shall not exceed 5.0 air changes per hour or 0.28 cubic feet per minute (CFM) per square foot [0.0079 $m^3/(s \times m^2)$] of dwelling unit enclosure area.

R402.4.1.4 Prescriptive air leakage rate. When complying with Section R401.2.1, the building or dwelling unit shall have an air leakage rate not exceeding ~~5.0 air changes per hour in Climate Zones 0, 1 and 2, and 3.0~~ 1.5 air changes per hour ~~in Climate Zones 3 through 8~~, when tested in accordance with Section R402.4.1.2.

Exception: When testing individual *dwelling units*, an air leakage rate not exceeding 0.27 ~~0.30~~ cubic feet per minute per square foot of the *dwelling unit* enclosure area, tested in accordance with ANSI/RESNET/ICC 380, ASTM E779 or ASTM E1827 and reported at a pressure of 0.2 inch w.g. (50 Pa), shall be an accepted alternative for:

1.1 Multiple- family building *dwelling units*.

1.2 *Dwelling units* that are 1,500 square feet (139.4 m^2) or smaller.

R402.4.2 Fireplaces. ~~New wood-burning fireplaces shall have tight-fitting flue dampers or doors, and outdoor combustion air. Where using tight-fitting doors on factory-built fireplaces *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 127, the doors shall be tested and *listed* for the fireplace.~~ New wood-burning fireplaces shall comply with Aspen Municipal Code Title 13 and be installed per manufacturer's instructions.

R402.4.3 Fenestration air leakage. Windows, *skylights* and sliding glass doors shall have an air infiltration rate of not greater than 0.3 cfm per square foot (1.5 L/s/m^2), and for swinging doors, not greater than 0.5 cfm per square foot (2.6 L/s/m^2), when tested in accordance with NFRC 400 or AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 by an accredited, independent laboratory and *listed* and *labeled* by the manufacturer.

Exception: Site-built windows, *skylights* and doors.

R402.4.4 Rooms containing fuel-burning appliances. ~~In Climate Zones 3 through 8, where~~ Where open combustion air ducts provide combustion air to open combustion fuel- burning appliances, the appliances and combustion air opening shall be located outside the *building thermal envelope* or enclosed in a room that is isolated

from inside the thermal envelope. Such rooms shall be sealed and insulated in accordance with the envelope requirements of Table R402.1.3, where the walls, floors and ceilings shall meet a minimum of the *basement wall R-*value requirement. The door into the room shall be fully gasketed and any water lines and ducts in the room insulated in accordance with Section R403. The combustion air duct shall be insulated where it passes through *conditioned space* to an *R*-value of not less than R-8.

Exceptions:

1. Direct vent appliances with both intake and exhaust pipes installed continuous to the outside.
2. Wood burning fireplaces and stoves complying with Aspen Municipal Code Title 13 and installed per manufacturer's instructions. ~~Section R402.4.2 and Section R1006 of the *International Residential Code*.~~

R402.4.5 Recessed lighting. Recessed luminaires installed in the *building thermal envelope* shall be sealed to limit air leakage between conditioned and *unconditioned spaces*. Recessed luminaires shall be IC-rated and *labeled* as having an air leakage rate of not greater than 2.0 cfm (0.944 L/s) when tested in accordance with ASTM E283 at a pressure differential of 1.57 psf (75 Pa). Recessed luminaires shall be sealed with a gasket or caulked between the housing and the interior wall or ceiling covering.

R402.4.6 Electrical and communication outlet boxes (air-sealed boxes). Electrical and communication outlet boxes installed in the building thermal envelope shall be sealed to limit air leakage between conditioned and unconditioned spaces. Electrical and communication outlet boxes shall be tested in accordance with NEMA OS 4, *Requirements for Air-Sealed Boxes for Electrical and Communication Applications*, and shall have an air leak- age rate of not greater than 2.0 cubic feet per minute (0.944 L/s) at a pressure differential of 1.57 psf (75 Pa). Electrical and communication outlet boxes shall be marked "NEMA OS 4" or "OS 4" in accordance with NEMA OS 4. Electrical and communication outlet boxes shall be installed per the manufacturer's instructions and with any supplied components required to achieve compliance with NEMA OS 4.

R402.5 Maximum fenestration U-factor and SHGC. The area-weighted average maximum fenestration *U*-factor permitted using tradeoffs from Section R402.1.5 or R405 shall be ~~0.48 in Climate Zones 4 and 5 and~~ 0.40 ~~in Climate Zones 6 through 8~~ for vertical fenestration, and 0.75 ~~in Climate Zones 4 through 8~~ for skylights. ~~The area-weighted average maximum fenestration SHGC permitted using tradeoffs from Section R405 in *Climate Zones* 0 through 3 shall be 0.40.~~

~~**Exception:** The maximum *U* factor and solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC) for fenestration shall not be required in storm shelters complying with ICC 500.~~

SECTION R403
SYSTEMS

R403.1 Controls. Not less than one thermostat shall be provided for each separate heating and cooling system.

R403.1.1 Programmable thermostat. The thermostat controlling the primary heating and cooling system of the *dwelling unit* shall be capable of controlling the heating and cooling system on a daily schedule to maintain different temperature set points at different times of day and different days of the week. This thermostat shall include the capability to set back or temporarily operate the system to maintain *zone* temperatures of not less than 55°F (13°C) to not greater than 85°F (29°C). Thethermostat shall be programmed initially by the manufacturer with a heating temperature setpoint of not greater than 70°F (21°C) and a cooling temperature setpoint of not less than 78°F (26°C).

R403.1.2 Heat pump supplementary heat. Heat pumps having ~~supplementary electric resistance heat~~ combustion equipment or electric resistance equipment for supplementary space heating shall have controls that~~, except during defrost,~~ are configured to prevent supplemental heat operation when the capacity of the heat pump compressor can meet the heating load~~.~~ and limit supplemental heat operation to only those times when one of the following applies:

1. For space heating systems, the vapor compression cycle cannot provide the necessary heating energy to satisfy the thermostat setting.

   Exception: For forced-air systems, the vapor compression cycle cannot provide a supply air temperature of 85°F or greater

2. The heat pump is operating in defrost mode.
3. The vapor compression cycle malfunctions.
4. For space heating systems, the thermostat malfunctions.

R403.1.3 Continuously burning pilot light Gas fireplace systems and heaters are not permitted to be equipped

with a *continuously burning pilot light*.

Exception: Any fireplace or heater equipped with an *on-demand*, *intermittent or interrupted ignition pilot light* (as defined in ANSI Z21.20) is not considered to have a *continuously burning pilot light.*

R403.2 Hot water boiler temperature reset. The manufacturer shall equip each gas, oil and electric boiler (other than a boiler equipped with a tankless domestic water heating coil) with automatic means of adjusting the water temperature supplied by the boiler to ensure incremental change of the inferred heat load will cause an incremental change in the temperature of the water supplied by the boiler. This can be accomplished with outdoor reset, indoor reset or water temperature sensing.

R403.3 Ducts. Ducts and air handlers shall be installed in accordance with Sections R403.3.1 through R403.3.7.

R403.3.1 Ducts located outside conditioned space. Supply and return ducts located outside *conditioned space* shall be insulated to an *R*-value of not less than R-8 for ducts 3 inches (76 mm) in diameter and larger and not less than R-6 for ducts smaller than 3 inches (76 mm) in diameter. Ducts buried beneath a building shall be insulated as required per this section or have an equivalent thermal distribution efficiency. Underground ducts utilizing the thermal distribution efficiency method shall be listed and *labeled* to indicate the *R*-value equivalency.

R403.3.2 Ducts located in conditioned space. For ductwork to be considered inside a *conditioned space*, it shall comply with one of the following:

1. The duct system shall be located completely within the *continuous air barrier* and within the building thermal envelope.
2. Ductwork in ventilated attic spaces shall be buried within ceiling insulation in accordance with Section R403.3.3 and all of the following conditions shall exist:
   2.1. The air handler is located completely within the *continuous air barrier* and within the *building thermal envelope*.
   2.2. The duct leakage, as measured either by a rough-in test of the ducts or a post- construction total system leakage test to outside the *building thermal envelope* in accordance with Section R403.3.6, is less than or equal to 1.5 cubic feet per minute (42.5 L/min) per 100 square feet (9.29 m^2) of *conditioned floor area* served by the duct system.
   2.3. The ceiling insulation *R*-value installed against and above the insulated duct is greater than or equal to the proposed ceiling insulation *R*-value, less the *R*-value of the insulation on the duct.
3. Ductwork in floor cavities located over unconditioned space shall comply with all of the following:
   3.1. A *continuous air barrier* installed between unconditioned space and the duct.
   3.2. Insulation installed in accordance with Section R402.2.7.
   3.3. A minimum R-19 insulation installed in the cavity width separating the duct from unconditioned space.
4. Ductwork located within *exterior walls* of the *building thermal envelope* shall comply with the following:
   4.1. A *continuous air barrier* installed between unconditioned space and the duct.
   4.2. Minimum R-10 insulation installed in the cavity width separating the duct from the outside sheathing or a minimum R5 Continuous insulation on the exterior side of the wall.
   4.3. The remainder of the cavity insulation shall be fully insulated to the drywall side.

R403.3.3 Ducts buried within ceiling insulation. Where supply and return air ducts are partially or completely buried in ceiling insulation, such ducts shall comply with all of the following:

1. The supply and return ducts shall have an insulation *R*-value not less than R-8.
2. At all points along each duct, the sum of the ceiling insulation *R*-value against and above the top of the duct, and against and below the bottom of the duct, shall be not less than R-19, excluding the *R*- value of the duct insulation.
3. ~~In Climate Zones 0A, 1A, 2A and 3A, the supply ducts shall be completely buried within ceiling insulation, insulated to an *R*-value of not less than R-13 and in compliance with the vapor retarder requirements of Section 604.11 of the *International Mechanical Code* or Section M1601.4.6 of the *International Residential Code*, as applicable.~~

Exception: Sections of the supply duct that are less than 3 feet (914 mm) from the supply outlet shall not be required to comply with these requirements.

R403.3.3.1 Effective *R*-value of deeply buried ducts. Where using the Total Building Performance Compliance Option in accordance with Section R401.2.2, sections of ducts that are installed in accordance with Section R403.3.3, located directly on or within 5.5 inches (140 mm) of the ceiling, surrounded with blown-in attic insulation having an *R*-value of R-30 or greater and located such that the top of the duct is not less than 3.5 inches

(89 mm) below the top of the insulation, shall be considered as having an effective duct insulation *R*-value of R-25.

R403.3.4 Sealing. Ducts, air handlers and filter boxes shall be sealed. Joints and seams shall comply with ~~either~~ the *International Mechanical Code* ~~or *International Residential Code*, as applicable.~~

R403.3.4.1 Sealed air handler. Air handlers shall have a manufacturer's designation for an air leakage of not greater than 2 percent of the design airflow rate when tested in accordance with ASHRAE 193.

R403.3.5 Duct testing. Ducts shall be pressure tested in accordance with ANSI/RESNET/ICC 380 or ASTM E1554 to determine air leakage by one of the following methods:

1. Rough-in test: Total leakage shall be measured with a pressure differential of 0.1 inch w.g. (25 Pa) across the system, including the manufacturer's air handler enclosure if installed at the time of the test. Registers shall be taped or otherwise sealed during the test.
2. Postconstruction test: Total leakage shall be measured with a pressure differential of 0.1 inch w.g. (25 Pa) across the entire system, including the manufacturer's air handler enclosure. Registers shall be taped or otherwise sealed during the test.

A written report of the results of the test shall be signed by the party conducting the test and provided to the code official.

Exceptions:

1. A duct air-leakage test shall not be required for ducts serving ventilation systems that are not integrated with ducts serving heating or cooling systems.
2. A duct air-leakage test shall not be required for ducts located entirely within the thermal envelope.

R403.3.6 Duct leakage. The total leakage of the ducts, where measured in accordance with Section R403.3.5, shall be as follows:

1. Rough-in test: The total leakage shall be less than or equal to 4.0 cubic feet per minute (113.3 L/min) per 100 square feet (9.29 m^2) of *conditioned floor area* where the air handler is installed at the time of the test. Where the air handler is not installed at the time of the test, the total leakage shall be less than or equal to 3.0 cubic feet per minute (85 L/min) per 100 square feet (9.29 m^2) of *conditioned floor area*.
2. Postconstruction test: Total leakage shall be less than or equal to 4.0 cubic feet per minute (113.3 L/min) per 100 square feet (9.29 m^2) of *conditioned floor area*.
3. Test for ducts within thermal envelope: Where all ducts and air handlers are located entirely within the *building thermal envelope*, total leakage shall be less than or equal to 8.0 cubic feet per minute (226.6 L/min) per 100 square feet (9.29 m^2) of *conditioned floor area*.

R403.3.7 Building cavities. *Building* framing cavities shall not be used as ducts or plenums.

R403.4 Mechanical system piping insulation. Mechanical system piping capable of carrying fluids greater than 105°F (41°C) or less than 55°F (13°C) shall be insulated to an *R*- value of not less than R-3.

R403.4.1 Protection of piping insulation. Piping insulation exposed to weather shall be protected from damage, including that caused by sunlight, moisture, equipment maintenance and wind. The protection shall provide shielding from solar radiation that can cause degradation of the material. Adhesive tape shall be prohibited.

R403.5 Service hot water systems. Energy conservation measures for service hot water systems shall be in accordance with Sections R403.5.1 through R403.5.3.

R403.5.1 Heated water circulation and temperature maintenance systems. Heated water circulation systems shall be in accordance with Section R403.5.1.1. Heat trace temperature maintenance systems shall be in accordance with Section R403.5.1.2. Automatic controls, temperature sensors and pumps shall be in a location with access. Manual controls shall be in a location with *ready access*.

R403.5.1.1 Circulation systems. Heated water circulation systems shall be provided with a circulation pump. The system return pipe shall be a dedicated return pipe or a cold-water supply pipe. Gravity and thermosyphon circulation systems shall be prohibited. Controls for circulating hot water system pumps shall automatically turn off the pump when the water in the circulation loop is at the desired temperature and when there is no demand for hot water. The controls shall limit the temperature of the water entering the cold-water piping to not greater than 104ºF (40ºC).

R403.5.1.1.1 Demand recirculation water systems. Where installed, *demand recirculation water systems* shall have controls that start the pump upon receiving a signal from the action of a user of a fixture or appliance, sensing the presence of a user of a fixture or sensing the flow of hot or tempered water to a fixture fitting or appliance.

R403.5.1.2 Heat trace systems. Electric heat trace systems shall comply with IEEE 515.1 or UL 515, as well as

the requirements of R403.11. Controls for such systems shall automatically adjust the energy input to the heat tracing to maintain the desired water temperature in the piping in accordance with the times when heated water is used in the occupancy.

R403.5.2 Hot water pipe insulation. Insulation for service hot water piping with a thermal resistance, *R*- value, of not less than R-3 shall be applied to the following:

1. Piping $^{3}/_{4}$ inch (19.1 mm) and larger in nominal diameter located inside the *conditioned space*.
2. Piping serving more than one dwelling unit.
3. Piping located outside the *conditioned space*.
4. Piping from the water heater to a distribution manifold.
5. Piping located under a floor slab.
6. Buried piping.
7. Supply and return piping in circulation and recirculation systems other than cold water pipe return demand recirculation systems.

R403.5.3 Drain water heat recovery units. Where installed, drain water heat recovery units shall comply with CSA B55.2. Drain water heat recovery units shall be tested in accordance with CSA B55.1. Potable water-side pressure loss of drain water heat recovery units shall be less than 3 psi (20.7 kPa) for individual units connected to one or two showers. Potable water-side pressure loss of drain water heat recovery units shall be less than 2 psi (13.8 kPa) for individual units connected to three or more showers.

R403.6 Mechanical ventilation. New *buildings* complying with Section R402.4.1 shall be provided with *ventilation* that complies with the requirements of the ~~*International Residential Code* or~~ *International Mechanical Code*, as applicable, or with other *approved* means of *ventilation*. Outdoor air intakes and exhausts shall have automatic or gravity dampers that close when the *ventilation* system is not operating.

R403.6.1 Heat or energy recovery ventilation. *Dwelling units* shall be provided with a heat recovery (HRV) or energy recovery (ERV) ventilation system ~~in Climate Zones 7 and 8~~. The system shall be a balanced ventilation system with a minimum sensible heat recovery efficiency of 65 percent at 32°F (0°C) at an airflow greater than or equal to the design airflow. The SRE shall be determined from a listed value or from interpolation of listed values.

R403.6.2 Whole-dwelling mechanical ventilation system fan efficacy. Fans used to provide whole-dwelling mechanical ventilation shall meet the efficacy requirements of Table R403.6.2 at one or more rating points. Fans shall be tested in accordance with ~~HVI 916~~ the test procedure referenced by Table R403.6.2 and listed. The airflow shall be reported in the product listing or on the label. Fan efficacy shall be reported in the product listing or shall be derived from the input power and airflow values reported in the product listing or on the label. Fan efficacy for fully ducted HRV, ~~ERC~~ ERV, balanced, and in-line fans shall be determined at a static pressure of not less than 0.2 inch w.c. (49.85 Pa). Fan efficacy for ducted range hoods, bathroom and utility room fans shall be determined at a static pressure of not less than 0.1 inch-w.c. (24.91 Pa).

TABLE R403.6.2

WHOLE-DWELLING MECHANICAL VENTILATION SYSTEM FAN EFFICACY[a]

FAN LOCATION	AIRFLOW RATE MINIMUM (CFM)	MINIMUM EFFICACY (CFM/WATT)	TEST PROCEDURE
HRV, ERV	Any	1.2 ~~cfm/watt~~	CAN/CSA 439
Range hood	Any	2.8	ASHRAE 51 (ANSI/AMCA Standard 210)
In-line supply or exhaust fan	Any	3.8 ~~cfm/watt~~	
Other exhaust fan	< 90	2.8 ~~cfm/watt~~	
	≥ 90 and < 200	3.5 ~~cfm/watt~~	
	≥ 200	4.0	
Air-handler that is integrated to tested and *listed* HVAC equipment	Any	1.2 ~~cfm/watt~~	Outdoor airflow as specified. Air-handler fan power determined in accordance with the HVAC appliance's test method referenced by Section C403.3.2 of the IECC-Commercial Provisions.

~~For SI: 1 cubic foot per minute = 28.3 L/min.~~

a. Design outdoor airflow rate/watts of fan used.

R403.6.3 Testing. Mechanical ventilation systems used to provide the required whole-dwelling mechanical ventilation shall be tested and verified to provide the minimum ventilation flow rates required by Section R403.6, in accordance with ANSI/RESNET/ICC 380. ~~Testing shall be performed according to the ventilation *equipment* manufacturer's instructions, or by using a flow hood or box, flow grid, or other airflow measuring device at the mechanical ventilation fan's inlet terminals or grilles, outlet terminals or grilles, or in the connected ventilation ducts.~~ Where required by the code official, testing shall be conducted by an *approved* third party. A written report of the results of the test shall be signed by the party conducting the test and provided to the code official.

Exception: ~~Kitchen range hoods that are ducted to the outside with 6 inch (152 mm) or larger duct and not more than one 90 degree (1.57 rad) elbow or equivalent in the duct run.~~ A third-party test shall not be required where the ventilation system has an integrated diagnostic tool used for airflow measurement, programmable airflow settings, and a user interface that communicates the installed airflow rate.

~~**R403.7 Equipment sizing and efficiency rating.** Heating and cooling *equipment* shall be sized in accordance with ACCA Manual S based on *building* loads calculated in accordance with ACCA Manual J or other *approved* heating and cooling calculation methodologies. New or replacement heating and cooling *equipment* shall have an efficiency rating equal to or greater than the minimum required by federal law for the geographic location where the *equipment* is installed.~~

R403.7 Packaged and split system cooling equipment. Where forced air systems are provided with split system cooling equipment, that equipment shall be a heat pump sized and configured to provide primary heat for the forced air system.

R403.8 Systems serving multiple dwelling units. Systems serving multiple *dwelling units* shall comply with Sections C403 and C404 of the *International Energy Conservation Code*—Commercial Provisions instead of Section R403.

R403.9 Snow and ice melting systems Snow- and ice-melting systems shall comply with R403.9.1 through R403.9.3.

R403.9.1 Snow melt and ice system controls. Snow- and ice- melting systems~~, supplied through energy service to the building,~~ shall include automatic controls ~~capable of shutting~~ that are configured to shut off the system when the ~~pavement~~ temperature of the snowmelted surface is greater than ~~50~~40°F (10°C) and precipitation is not falling, and an automatic or manual control that will allow shutoff when the outdoor temperature is greater than 40°F (~~4.8~~°C).

Exception: Heat mats that are controlled by a factory installed thermostat configured to energize the mat when the outdoor temperature is less than 35°F maximum and configured to deenergize the mat when the outdoor temperature is greater than 50°F maximum.

R403.9.2 Insulation. R-10 insulation shall be installed under the snow melted surface.

Exceptions:

1. Integrated pedestal system products over conditioned space or on above grade decks with minimum R-4 integral insulation plus minimum R-6 insulation under the air space.
2. Heat mats

R403.9.3 Equipment. Electric resistance and heat pump heaters are permitted. Where condensing boilers are used, the boiler supply water temperature shall be 130°F maximum to allow for efficient boiler operation.

R403.10 Roof and gutter deicing controls. Roof and gutter deicing systems, including but not limited to self-regulating cable, shall include automatic controls configured to shut off the system when the outdoor temperature is above 40°F (4°C). Such controls shall include one of the following:

1. A moisture sensor configured to shut off the system in the absence of moisture, or
2. A daylight sensor or other means configured to shut off the system between sunset and sunrise.

R403.11 Freeze protection system controls. Freeze protection systems, such as heat tracing of outdoor piping and heat exchangers, including self-regulating heat tracing, shall include automatic controls that are configured to shutoff the systems when the outdoor air temperature is greater than 40°F (4°C) or when the conditions of the protected fluid will prevent freezing.

R403.12 Energy consumption of pools and spas. The energy consumption of pools and permanent spas shall be controlled by the requirements in Sections R403.10.1 through R403.10.3.

R403.12.1 Heaters. The electric power to heaters shall be controlled by an on-off switch that is an integral part of the heater mounted on the exterior of the heater in a location with *ready access*, or external to and within 3 feet

(914 mm) of the heater. Operation of such switch shall not change the setting of the heater thermostat. Such switches shall be in addition to a circuit breaker for the power to the heater. Gas-fired heaters shall ~~not be equipped with a continuously burning ignition pilots~~ comply with Section R403.1.3. Electric resistance and heat pump heaters are permitted. Where condensing boilers are used, the boiler supply water temperature shall be a maximum of 130F to allow for efficient boiler operation.

R403.12.2 Time switches. Time switches or other control methods that can automatically turn heaters and pump motors off and on according to a preset schedule shall be installed for heaters and pump motors. Heaters and pump motors that have built-in time switches shall be in compliance with this section.

Exceptions:

1. Where public health standards require 24-hour pump operation.
2. Pumps that operate solar- and waste-heat- recovery pool heating systems.

R403.12.3 Covers. Outdoor heated pools and outdoor permanent spas shall be provided with a vapor-retardant cover with minimum insulation value of R-2.~~or other *approved* vapor retardant means.~~

~~**Exception:** Where more than 75 percent of the energy for heating, computed over an operation season of not fewer than 3 calendar months, is from a heat pump or an on-site renewable energy system, covers or other vapor retardant means shall not be required.~~

R403.13 Portable spas. The energy consumption of electric-powered portable spas shall be controlled by the requirements of APSP 14.

R403.13.1 Covers. Portable spas shall be provided with a cover with a minimum insulation value of R-12.

R403.14 Residential pools and permanent residential spas. Where installed, the energy consumption of residential swimming pools and permanent residential spas shall be controlled in accordance with the requirements of APSP 15. Swimming pools and permanent spas shall have insulation on the sides and bottom surfaces located on the exterior. The type of insulation shall be impermeable and impervious to water logging or saturation and unaffected by water, mold, mildew, and have capability to resist compression. The insulation value shall be a minimum of R-15.

R403.15 Heating outside a building. Systems installed to provide heat outside a building shall be electric systems or gas fireplaces or firepits. Such heating systems shall be controlled by an occupancy sensing device or a timer switch, so that thesystem is automatically de-energized when occupants are not present.

R403.16 Cooling outside a building. Systems to provide cooling outside the building thermal envelope shall not be permitted.

SECTION R404
ELECTRICAL POWER, ~~AND~~ LIGHTING, STORAGE, AND RENEWABLE ENERGY SYSTEMS

R404.1 Lighting equipment. All permanently installed lighting fixtures, excluding kitchen appliance lighting fixtures, shall contain only high-efficacy lighting sources.

R404.1.1 Exterior lighting. Connected exterior lighting for residential buildings shall comply with Section C405.5.

Exceptions:

1. Detached one- and two- family dwellings.
2. Townhouses.
3. Solar-powered lamps not connected to any electrical service.
4. Luminaires controlled by a motion sensor.
5. Lamps and luminaires that comply with Section R404.1.

R404.1.2 Fuel gas lighting equipment. Fuel gas lighting systems shall not be permitted ~~have continuously burning pilot lights~~.

R404.2 Interior lighting controls. All permanently installed ~~lighting fixtures~~ luminaires shall be controlled as required in Sections R404.2.1 and R404.2.2 ~~with either a dimmer, an occupant sensor control or other control that is installed or built into the fixture.~~

Exception: Lighting controls shall not be required for the following:

1. Bathrooms.
2. Hallways.
3. ~~Exterior lighting fixtures.~~

4. Lighting designed for safety or security, including stairway illumination.

R404.2.1 Habitable spaces All permanently installed luminaires in habitable spaces shall be controlled with a dimmer or an automatic shut-off control ~~that~~ capable of automatically ~~turns~~ turning off lights within 20 minutes after all occupants have left the space and shall incorporate a manual control to allow occupants to turn the lights on or off.

R404.2.2 Specific locations All permanently installed luminaires in garages, laundry rooms, utility rooms, storage rooms, crawlspaces, and unfinished spaces in basements and attics shall be controlled by an automatic shut-off control that automatically turns off lights within 20 minutes after all occupants have left the space and shall incorporate a manual control to allow occupants to turn the lights on or off.

R404.3 Exterior lighting controls. Exterior lighting controlled from within individual *dwelling units* shall comply with Section R404.3.1. Controls for all other exterior lighting shall comply with Sections C405.2.7

R404.3.1 Controls for individual dwelling units ~~**Exterior lighting controls.**~~ Where the total permanently installed exterior lighting power is greater than 30 watts, the permanently installed exterior lighting shall comply with the following:

1. Lighting shall be controlled by a manual on and off switch which permits automatic shut-off actions.

   ~~**Exception:** Lighting serving multiple *dwelling units.*~~

2. Lighting shall be automatically shut off when daylight is present and satisfies the lighting needs.
3. Controls that override automatic shut-off actions shall not be allowed unless the override automatically returns automatic control to its normal operation within 24 hours.

R404.4 Electric readiness of systems using fossil fuel: household clothes dryers and conventional cooking tops or conventional ovens shall comply with the requirements of Sections R404.4.1 through R404.4.3.

R404.4.1 Cooking appliances. An individual branch circuit receptacle outlet with a rating not less than ~~250~~ 240-volts, 40-amperes shall be installed, and terminate within three feet of conventional cooking tops, conventional ovens or cooking appliances combining both.

Exception: Cooking appliances not installed in a dwelling unit.

R404.4.2 Household clothes dryers. An individual branch circuit receptacle outlet with a rating not less than 240-volts, 30-amperes shall be installed, and terminate within three feet (304 mm) of each household clothes dryer.

Exception: Clothes dryers that serve more than one dwelling unit and are located outside of a dwelling unit.

R404.4.3 Electrification-ready circuits. The unused conductors required by Sections R404.4.1 through R404.4.2 shall be labeled with the word "spare." Space shall be reserved in the electrical panel in which the branch circuit originates for the installation of an overcurrent device. Capacity for the circuits required by Sections R404.4.1 through R404.4.2 shall be included in the load calculations of the original installation.

R404.5 Renewable energy infrastructure. The building shall comply with the requirements of R404.5.1 or R404.5.2.

R404.5.1 One- and two- family dwellings and townhouses. One- and two-family dwellings and townhouses shall comply with Sections R404.5.1.1 through R404.5.1.4.

Exceptions:

1. A dwelling unit with a permanently installed on-site renewable energy system.
2. A dwelling unit with less than 500 square feet (46m2) of roof area oriented between 110 degrees and 270 degrees of true north.
3. Dwelling units where 50 percent of the solar-ready area is shaded from direct-beam sunlight by natural objects or by structures that are not part of the building for more than 2500 annual hours between 8:00 a.m. and 4:00 p.m.

R404.5.1.1 Solar-ready zone area. The total area of the solar-ready zone shall not be less than 250 square feet (23.2 m2) and shall be composed of areas not less than 5.5 feet (1676 mm) in one direction and not less than 80 square feet (7.4 m2) exclusive of access or set back areas as required by the International Fire Code.

Exception: Dwelling units in townhouses three stories or less in height above grade plane and with a total floor area less than or equal to 2,000 square feet (186m2) per dwelling shall be permitted to have a solar-ready zone area of not less than 150 square feet (14 m2).

R404.5.1.2 Obstructions. Solar-ready zones shall be free from obstructions, including but not limited to vents, chimneys, and roof-mounted equipment.

R404.5.1.3 Electrical service reserved space. The main electrical service panel shall have a reserved space for a dual pole circuit breaker and shall be labeled “For Future Solar Electric.” The reserved space shall be at the opposite (load) end of the busbar from the primary energy source.

R404.5.1.4 Electrical interconnection. An electrical junction box shall be installed within 24 inches (610 mm) of the main electrical service panel and shall be connected to a capped roof penetration sleeve or a location in the attic that is within 3 feet (914 mm) of the solar-ready zone by a minimum 1 inch (25 mm) nonflexible metallic conduit or permanently installed wire as approved by the code official. Where the interconnection terminates in the attic, location shall be no less than 12 inches (35 mm) above ceiling insulation. Both ends of the interconnection shall be labeled “For Future Solar Electric”.

R404.5.2 Other Group R occupancies. Other Group R occupancies shall comply with Section C405.14.

R404.6 Electric Vehicle Power Transfer Infrastructure. New automobile parking spaces for one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses shall be provided in accordance with Sections R404.6.1 through R404.6.5. New automobile parking spaces for R-2 occupancies shall comply with Section C405.13.

R404.6.1 Quantity. New one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses with a designated attached or detached garage or other onsite private parking provided adjacent to the dwelling unit shall be provided with one EV-capable, EV-ready, or EVSE installed space per dwelling unit.

R404.6.2 EV Capable Spaces. Each EV capable space used to meet the requirements of Section R404.6.1 shall comply with all of the following:

1. A continuous raceway or cable assembly shall be installed between an enclosure or outlet located within 3 feet (914 mm) of the EV capable space and a suitable panelboard or other onsite electrical distribution equipment.
2. Installed raceway or cable assembly shall be sized and rated to supply a minimum circuit capacity in accordance with R404.7.4
3. The electrical distribution equipment to which the raceway or cable assembly connects shall have sufficient dedicated space and spare electrical capacity for a 2-pole circuit breaker or set of fuses.
4. The electrical enclosure or outlet and the electrical distribution equipment directory shall be marked: "For future electric vehicle supply equipment (EVSE)."

R404.6.3 EV Ready Spaces. Each branch circuit serving EV ready spaces shall comply with all of the following:

1. Terminate at a receptacle outlet, located within 3 feet (914 mm) of each EV ready space it serves.
2. Have a minimum circuit capacity in accordance with R404.6.4.
3. The panelboard or other electrical distribution equipment directory shall designate the branch circuit as "For electric vehicle supply equipment (EVSE)" and the outlet or enclosure shall be marked "For electric vehicle supply equipment (EVSE)."

R404.6.4 Circuit Capacity. For one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses, the capacity of electrical infrastructure serving each EV capable space, EV ready space and EVSE space shall have a rated capacity not less than 8.3 kVA (or 40A at 208/240V) for each EV capable space, EV ready space or EVSE space it serves. Where a circuit is shared or managed it shall be in accordance with NFPA 70.

R404.6.5 EVSE installation. For one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses, EVSE shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 70 and shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 2202 or UL 2594.

R404.6.5.1 EVSE minimum charging rate. Each installed EVSE shall comply with one of the following:

1. Be capable of charging at a rate of not less than 6.2 kVA (or 30A at 208/240V).
2. Where serving EVSE spaces allowed to have a circuit capacity of not less than 2.7 kVA in accordance with R404.7.4.1 and controlled by an energy management system providing load management, be capable of simultaneously charging each EVSE space at a rate of not less than 2.1 kVA.

R404.7 Electrical energy storage system ready. One- and two-family dwellings and townhouses shall be energy storage ready in accordance with Sections R404.7.1 through R404.7.4. Other Group R occupancies shall comply with Section C405.15.

Exception: One- and two-family dwellings and townhouses with an installed *Energy Storage System (ESS)* with a minimum rated energy capacity of 5 kWh with a minimum of four *ESS* supplied branch circuits complying with RD103.3.4.

R404.7.1 Energy storage system space. Interior or exterior space with dimensions and locations in accordance

with Section 1207 of the *International Fire Code* and Section 110.26 of NFPA 70 shall be reserved to allow for the future installation of an energy storage system.

R404.7.2 System Isolation Equipment Space. Space shall be reserved to allow for the future installation of a transfer switch within 3 feet (305mm) of the main panelboard. Raceways shall be installed between the panelboard and the transfer switch location to allow the connection of an ESS.

R404.7.3 Panelboard with backed-up load circuits. A dedicated raceway from the main service to a panelboard that supplies the branch circuits served by the ESS. All branch circuits are permitted to be supplied by the main service panel prior to the installation of an ESS. The trade size of the raceway shall be not less than one inch. The panelboard that supplies the branch circuits shall be labeled "Subpanel reserved for future battery energy storage system to supply essential loads."

R404.7.4 Branch circuits served by ESS. A minimum of four branch circuits shall be identified and have their source of supply collocated at a single panelboard supplied by the ESS. The following end uses shall be served by the branch circuits:

1. A refrigerator.
2. One lighting circuit near the primary egress.
3. A ~~sleeping room~~ receptacle outlet.

R404.8 Inverters. Direct-current-to-alternating-current inverters serving on-site renewable energy systems or on-site electrical energy storage systems shall be compliant with IEEE 1547-2018a and UL 1741-2021.

SECTION R405
TOTAL BUILDING PERFORMANCE

R405.1 Scope. This section establishes criteria for compliance using total building performance analysis. Such analysis shall include heating, cooling, mechanical ventilation and service water-heating energy only.

R405.2 Performance-based compliance. Compliance based on total building performance requires that a *proposed design* meets all of the following:

1. The requirements of the sections indicated within Table R405.2.
2. The proposed total building thermal envelope UA, which is the sum of the U-factor times assembly area, shall be ~~greater~~ less than or equal to the building thermal envelope UA using the prescriptive U-factors from Table R402.1.2 multiplied by 1.23. ~~levels of efficiency and solar heat gain coefficients in Table R402.1.1 or R402.1.3 of the 2009 *International Energy Conservation Code*.~~
3. An annual energy cost of the proposed design that is less than or equal to 77 percent of the annual energy cost of the *standard reference design*. Energy prices shall be taken from a source *approved* by the *code official*, such as the Department of Energy, Energy Information Administration's State Energy Data System Prices and Expenditures reports. Code officials shall be permitted to require time-of- use pricing in energy cost calculations.

Exceptions:

~~1.~~ The energy use based on source energy expressed in Btu or Btu per square foot of conditioned floor area shall be permitted to be substituted for the energy cost. The source energy multiplier for electricity shall be 3.16. The source energy multiplier for fuels other than electricity shall be 1.1.

R405.3 Documentation. Documentation of the software used for the ~~performance~~ proposed design and the parameters for the baseline *building* shall be in accordance with Sections R405.3.1 through R405.3.2.2.

R405.3.1 Compliance software tools. Documentation verifying that the methods and accuracy of the compliance software tools conform to the provisions of this section shall be provided to the *code official.*

R405.3.2 Compliance report. Compliance software tools shall generate a report that documents that the *proposed design* complies with Section R405.2. A compliance report on the *proposed design* shall be submitted with the application for the building permit. Upon completion of the building, a confirmed compliance report based on the confirmed condition of the building shall be submitted to the *code official* before a certificate of occupancy is issued.

Compliance reports shall include information in accordance with Sections R405.3.2.1 and R405.3.2.2.

TABLE R405.2

REQUIREMENTS FOR TOTAL BUILDING PERFORMANCE

SECTION[a]	TITLE
General	

R401.2.5	Additional energy efficiency
R401.3	Certificate
Building Thermal Envelope	
R402.1.1	Vapor retarder
R402.2.3	Eave baffle
R402.2.4.1	Access hatches and door insulation installation and retention
R402.2.10.1	Crawl space wall insulation installations
R402.4.1.1	Installation
R402.4.1.2	Testing
R402.5	Maximum fenestration *U*-factor and SHGC
Mechanical	
R403.1	Controls
R403.3, including R403.3.1, except Sections R403.3.2, R403.3.3 and R403.3.6	Ducts
R403.4	Mechanical system piping insulation
R403.5.1	Heated water circulation and temperature maintenance systems
R403.5.3	Drain water heat recovery units
R403.6	Mechanical ventilation
R403.7	~~Equipment sizing and efficiency rating~~ Packaged and split system cooling equipment
R403.8	Systems serving multiple dwelling units
R403.9	Snow melt and ice systems
R403.10	Roof and gutter deicing controls
R403.11	Freeze protection system controls
R403.12	Energy consumption of pools and spas
R403.13	Portable spas
R403.14	Residential pools and permanent residential spas
R403.15	Heating outside a building
R403.16	Cooling outside a building
~~Electrical Power and Lighting Systems~~	
~~R404.1~~	~~Lighting equipment~~
~~R404.2~~	~~Interior lighting controls~~
R404	Electrical power, lighting, storage, and renewable energy systems
R407	Maintenance information and system commissioning
R409	Energy reporting and metering

a. Reference to a code section includes all the relative subsections except as indicated in the table.

R405.3.2.1 Compliance report for permit application. A compliance report submitted with the application for building permit shall include the following:

1. Building street address, or other *building site* identification.
2. The name of the individual performing the analysis and generating the compliance report.
3. The name and version of the compliance soft- ware tool.
4. Documentation of all inputs entered into the software used to produce the results for the reference design and/or the rated home.
5. A certificate indicating that the proposed design complies with Section R405.2. The certificate shall document the building components' energy specifications that are included in the calculation including: component-level insulation *R*-values or *U*-factors; duct system and building envelope air leakage testing assumptions; and the type and rated efficiencies of proposed heating, cooling, mechanical ventilation and service water-heating equipment to be installed. If on-site renewable energy systems will be installed, the certificate shall report the type and production size of the proposed system.
6. Where a site-specific report is not generated, the proposed design shall be based on the worst-case orientation and configuration of the rated home.

R405.3.2.2 Compliance report for certificate of occupancy. A compliance report submitted for obtaining the certificate of occupancy shall include the following:

1. Building street address, or other building site identification.
2. Declaration of the ~~total~~ simulated building performance path on the title page of the energy report and the title page of the building plans.
3. A statement, bearing the name of the individual performing the analysis and generating the report, indicating that the as-built building complies with Section R405.2.
4. The name and version of the compliance software tool.
5. A site-specific energy analysis report that is in compliance with Section R405.2.
6. A final confirmed certificate indicating compliance based on inspection, and a statement indicating that the confirmed rated design of the built home complies with Section R405.2. The certificate shall report the energy features that were confirmed to be in the home, including component-level insulation *R*-values or *U*-factors; results from any required duct system and building envelope air leakage testing; and the type and rated efficiencies of the heating, cooling, mechanical ventilation and service water-heating equipment installed.
7. When on-site renewable energy systems have been installed, the certificate shall report the type and production size of the installed system.

R405.4 Calculation procedure. Calculations of the ~~performance~~ proposed design shall be in accordance with Sections R405.4.1 and R405.4.2.

R405.4.1 General. Except as specified by this section, the *standard reference design* and *proposed design* shall be configured and analyzed using identical methods and techniques.

R405.4.2 Residence specifications. The *standard reference design* and *proposed design* shall be configured and analyzed as specified by Table R405.4.2(1). Table R405.4.2(1) shall include, by reference, all notes contained in Table R402.1.3.

TABLE R405.4.2(1)

SPECIFICATIONS FOR THE STANDARD REFERENCE AND PROPOSED DESIGNS

BUILDING COMPONENT	STANDARD REFERENCE DESIGN	PROPOSED DESIGN
Above-grade walls	Type: mass where the proposed wall is a mass wall; otherwise, wood frame.	As proposed
	Gross area: same as proposed.	As proposed
	U-factor: as specified in Table R402.1.2.	As proposed
	Solar absorptance = 0.75.	As proposed
	Emittance = 0.90.	As proposed
Basement and crawl space	Type: same as proposed.	As proposed
	Gross area: same as proposed.	As proposed

walls	*U*-factor: as specified in Table R402.1.2, with the insulation layer on the interior side of the walls.	As proposed
Above-grade floors	Type: wood frame.	As proposed
	Gross area: same as proposed.	As proposed
	U-factor: as specified in Table R402.1.2.	As proposed
Ceilings	Type: wood frame.	As proposed
	Gross area: same as proposed.	As proposed
	U-factor: as specified in Table R402.1.2.	As proposed
Roofs	Type: composition shingle on wood sheathing.	As proposed
	Gross area: same as proposed.	As proposed
	Solar absorptance = 0.75.	As proposed
	Emittance = 0.90.	As proposed
Attics	Type: vented with an aperture of 1 ft^2 per 300 ft^2 of ceiling area.	As proposed
Foundations	Type: same as proposed.	As proposed
	Foundation wall area above and below grade and soil characteristics: same as proposed.	As proposed
Opaque doors	Area: 40 ft^2.	As proposed
	Orientation: North.	As proposed
	U-factor: same as fenestration as specified in Table R402.1.2.	As proposed
Vertical fenestration other than opaque doors	Total area[h] = The proposed glazing area, where the proposed glazing area is less than 15 percent of the conditioned floor area. 15 percent of the conditioned floor area, where the proposed glazing area is 15 percent or more of the conditioned floor area.	As proposed
	Orientation: equally distributed to four cardinal compass orientations (N, E, S & W).	As proposed
	U-factor: as specified in Table R402.1.2.	As proposed
	SHGC: as specified in Table R402.1.2 except for climate zones without an SHGC requirement, the SHGC shall be equal to 0.40.	As proposed
	Interior shade fraction: 0.92 – (0.21 × SHGC for the standard reference design).	Interior shade fraction: 0.92 – (0.21 × SHGC as proposed)
	External shading: none	As proposed

(continued)

TABLE R405.4.2(1)—continued

SPECIFICATIONS FOR THE STANDARD REFERENCE AND PROPOSED DESIGNS

BUILDING COMPONENT	STANDARD REFERENCE DESIGN	PROPOSED DESIGN
Skylights	None	As proposed
Thermally isolated sunrooms	None	As proposed
	The air leakage rate at a pressure of 0.2 inch w.g. (50 Pa) shall be Climate Zones 0 through 2: 5.0 air changes per hour. Climate Zones 3 through 8: 3.0 air changes per hour.	The measured air exchange rate.[a]

Air exchange rate	The mechanical ventilation rate shall be in addition to the air leakage rate and shall be the same as in the proposed design, but not greater than $0.01 \times CFA + 7.5 \times (N_{br} + 1)$ where: CFA = conditioned floor area, ft^2. N_{br} = number of bedrooms. The mechanical ventilation system type shall be the same as in the proposed design. Energy recovery shall not be assumed for mechanical ventilation.	The mechanical ventilation rate[b] shall be in addition to the air leakage rate and shall be as proposed.
Mechanical ventilation	Where mechanical ventilation is not specified in the proposed design: None Where mechanical ventilation is specified in the proposed design, the annual vent fan energy use, in units of kWh/yr, shall equal $(1/e_f) \times [0.0876 \times CFA + 65.7 \times (N_{br} + 1)]$ where: e_f = the minimum fan efficacy, as specified in Table 403.6.2, corresponding to the system type at a flow rate of $0.01 \times CFA + 7.5 \times (N_{br} + 1)$ CFA = conditioned floor area, ft^2. N_{br} = number of bedrooms.	As proposed
Internal gains	IGain, in units of Btu/day per dwelling unit, shall equal $17{,}900 + 23.8 \times CFA + 4{,}104 \times N_{br}$ where: CFA = conditioned floor area, ft^2. N_{br} = number of bedrooms.	Same as standard reference design.
Internal mass	Internal mass for furniture and contents: 8 pounds per square foot of floor area.	Same as standard reference design, plus any additional mass specifically designed as a thermal storage element[c] but not integral to the building envelope or structure.
Structural mass	For masonry floor slabs: 80 percent of floor area covered by R-2 carpet and pad, and 20 percent of floor directly exposed to room air.	As proposed
	For masonry basement walls: as proposed, but with insulation as specified in Table R402.1.3, located on the interior side of the walls.	As proposed
	For other walls, ceilings, floors, and interior walls: wood frame construction.	As proposed
Heating systems[d, e]	For other than electric heating without a heat pump: as proposed. Where the proposed design utilizes electric heating without a heat pump, the standard reference design shall be an air source heat pump meeting the requirements of Section C403 of the IECC—Commercial Provisions. Capacity: sized in accordance with Section R403.7.	As proposed
Cooling systems[d, f]	As proposed. Capacity: sized in accordance with Section R403.7.	As proposed

(continued)

TABLE R405.4.2(1)—continued

SPECIFICATIONS FOR THE STANDARD REFERENCE AND PROPOSED DESIGNS

BUILDING COMPONENT	STANDARD REFERENCE DESIGN	PROPOSED DESIGN

<table>
<tr><td rowspan="7">Service water heating[d, g]</td><td rowspan="7">As proposed.
Use, in units of gal/day = 25.5 + (8.5 × N_{br}) where:
N_{br} = number of bedrooms.</td><td colspan="3">As proposed
Use, in units of gal/day = 25.5 + (8.5 × N_{br}) × (1 – HWDS)
where:
N_{br} = number of bedrooms.
HWDS = factor for the compactness of the hot water distribution system.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Compactness ratio[i] factor</td><td>HWDS</td></tr>
<tr><td>1 story</td><td>2 or more stories</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>> 60%</td><td>> 30%</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>> 30% to ≤ 60%</td><td>> 15% to ≤ 30%</td><td>0.05</td></tr>
<tr><td>> 15% to ≤ 30%</td><td>> 7.5% to ≤ 15%</td><td>0.10</td></tr>
<tr><td>< 15%</td><td>< 7.5%</td><td>0.15</td></tr>
<tr><td>Thermal distribution systems</td><td>Duct insulation: in accordance with Section R403.3.1.
A thermal distribution system efficiency (DSE) of 0.88 shall be applied to both the heating and cooling system efficiencies for all systems other than tested duct systems.
Duct location: same as proposed design.
Exception: For nonducted heating and cooling systems that do not have a fan, the standard reference design ther- mal distribution system efficiency (DSE) shall be 1. For tested duct systems, the leakage rate shall be 4 cfm (113.3 L/min) per 100 ft^2 (9.29 m^2) of conditioned floor area at a pressure of differential of 0.1 inch w.g. (25 Pa).</td><td colspan="3">Duct location: as proposed
Duct insulation: as proposed.
As tested or, where not tested, as specified in Table R405.4.2(2).</td></tr>
<tr><td>Thermostat</td><td>Type: Manual, cooling temperature setpoint = 75°F;
Heating temperature setpoint = 72°F.</td><td colspan="3">Same as standard reference design.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Dehumidistat</td><td>Where a mechanical ventilation system with latent heat recov- ery is not specified in the proposed design:
None.
Where the proposed design utilizes a mechanical ventilation system with latent heat recovery:
Dehumidistat type: manual, setpoint = 60% relative humidity.
Dehumidifier: whole-dwelling with integrated energy factor = 1.77 liters/kWh.</td><td colspan="3">Same as standard reference design.</td></tr>
</table>

For SI: 1 square foot = 0.93 m^2, 1 British thermal unit = 1055 J, 1 pound per square foot = 4.88 kg/m^2, 1 gallon (US) = 3.785 L, °C = (°F-32)/1.8, 1 degree =

0.79 rad.

a. Where required by the code official, testing shall be conducted by an approved party. Hourly calculations as specified in the ASHRAE *Handbook of Funda- mentals*, or the equivalent, shall be used to determine the energy loads resulting from infiltration.

b. The combined air exchange rate for infiltration and mechanical ventilation shall be determined in accordance with Equation 43 of 2001 ASHRAE *Hand- book of Fundamentals*, page 26.24 and the "Whole-house Ventilation" provisions of 2001 ASHRAE *Handbook of Fundamentals*, page 26.19 for intermittent mechanical ventilation.

c. Thermal storage element shall mean a component that is not part of the floors, walls or ceilings that is part of a passive solar system, and that provides ther- mal storage such as enclosed water columns, rock beds, or phase-change containers. A thermal storage element shall be in the same room as fenestration that faces within 15 degrees (0.26 rad) of true south, or shall be connected to such a room with pipes or ducts that allow the element to be actively charged.

d. For a proposed design with multiple heating, cooling or water heating systems using different fuel types, the applicable standard reference design system capacities and fuel types shall be weighted in accordance with their respective loads as calculated by accepted engineering practice for each equipment and fuel type present.

e. For a proposed design without a proposed heating system, a heating system having the prevailing federal minimum efficiency shall be assumed for both the standard reference design and proposed design.

f. For a proposed design home without a proposed cooling system, an electric air conditioner having the prevailing federal minimum efficiency shall be assumed for both the standard reference design and the proposed design.

g. For a proposed design with a nonstorage-type water heater, a 40-gallon storage-type water heater having the prevailing federal minimum energy factor for the same fuel as the predominant heating fuel type shall be assumed. For a proposed design without a proposed water heater, a 40-gallon

storage-type water heater having the prevailing federal minimum efficiency for the same fuel as the predominant heating fuel type shall be assumed for both the proposed design and standard reference design.

(continued)

TABLE R405.4.2(1)—continued

SPECIFICATIONS FOR THE STANDARD REFERENCE AND PROPOSED DESIGNS

h. For residences with conditioned basements, R-2 and R-4 residences, and for townhouses, the following formula shall be used to determine glazing area:

$AF = A_s \times FA \times F$

where:

AF = Total glazing area.

A_s = Standard reference design total glazing area.

FA = (Above-grade thermal boundary gross wall area)/(above-grade boundary wall area + 0.5 × below-grade boundary wall area).

F = (above-grade thermal boundary wall area)/(above-grade thermal boundary wall area + common wall area) or 0.56, whichever is greater. and where:

Thermal boundary wall is any wall that separates conditioned space from unconditioned space or ambient conditions. Above-grade thermal boundary wall is any thermal boundary wall component not in contact with soil.

Below-grade boundary wall is any thermal boundary wall in soil contact. Common wall area is the area of walls shared with an adjoining dwelling unit.

i. The factor for the compactness of the hot water distribution system is the ratio of the area of the rectangle that bounds the source of hot water and the fixtures that it serves (the “hot water rectangle”) divided by the floor area of the dwelling.

1. Sources of hot water include water heaters, or in multiple-family buildings with central water heating systems, circulation loops or electric heat traced pipes.
2. The hot water rectangle shall include the source of hot water and the points of termination of all hot water fixture supply piping.
3. The hot water rectangle shall be shown on the floor plans and the area shall be computed to the nearest square foot.
4. Where there is more than one water heater and each water heater serves different plumbing fixtures and appliances, it is permissible to establish a separate hot water rectangle for each hot water distribution system and add the area of these rectangles together to determine the compactness ratio.
5. The basement or attic shall be counted as a story when it contains the water heater.
6. Compliance shall be demonstrated by providing a drawing on the plans that shows the hot water distribution system rectangle(s), comparing the area of the rectangle(s) to the area of the dwelling and identifying the appropriate compactness ratio and *HWDS* factor.

TABLE R405.4.2(2)

DEFAULT DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM EFFICIENCIES FOR PROPOSED DESIGNS[a]

DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM CONFIGURATION AND CONDITION	FORCED AIR SYSTEMS	HYDRONIC SYSTEMS[b]
Distribution system components located in unconditioned space	—	0.95
Untested distribution systems entirely located in conditioned space[c]	0.88	1
“Ductless” systems[d]	1	—

a. Default values in this table are for untested distribution systems, which must still meet minimum requirements for duct system insulation.

b. Hydronic systems shall mean those systems that distribute heating and cooling energy directly to individual spaces using liquids pumped through closed-loop piping and that do not depend on ducted, forced airflow to maintain space temperatures.

c. Entire system in conditioned space shall mean that no component of the distribution system, including the air-handler unit, is located outside of the conditioned space.

d. Ductless systems shall be allowed to have forced airflow across a coil but shall not have any ducted airflow external to the manufacturer’s air- handler enclosure.

R405.5 Calculation software tools. Calculation software, where used, shall be in accordance with Sections R405.5.1 through R405.5.3.

R405.5.1 Minimum capabilities. Calculation procedures used to comply with this section shall be software tools capable of calculating the annual energy consumption of all building elements that differ between the *standard reference design* and the *proposed design* and shall include the following capabilities:

1. Computer generation of the *standard reference design* using only the input for the *proposed design*. The calculation procedure shall not allow the user to directly modify the building component characteristics of the *standard reference design.*
2. Calculation of whole-building (as a single *zone*) sizing for the heating and cooling equipment in the *standard reference design* residence in accordance with Section R403.7.
3. Calculations that account for the effects of indoor and outdoor temperatures and part-load ratios on the performance of heating, ventilating and air- conditioning equipment based on climate and equipment sizing.
4. Printed *code official* inspection checklist listing each of the *proposed design* component characteristics from Table R405.4.2(1) determined by the analysis to provide compliance, along with their respective performance ratings such as *R*-value, *U*-factor, SHGC, HSPF, AFUE, SEER and EF.

R405.5.2 Specific approval. Performance analysis tools meeting the applicable provisions of Section R405 shall be permitted to be *approved*. Tools are permitted to be *approved* based on meeting a specified threshold for a jurisdiction. The *code official* shall be permitted to approve such tools for a specified application or limited scope.

R405.5.3 Input values. When calculations require input values not specified by Sections R402, R403, R404 and R405, those input values shall be taken from an *approved* source.

SECTION R406
ENERGY RATING INDEX COMPLIANCE ALTERNATIVE

R406.1 Scope. This section establishes criteria for compliance using an Energy Rating Index (ERI) analysis.

R406.2 ERI compliance. Compliance based on the ERI requires that the rated design meets all of the following:

1. The requirements of the sections indicated within Table R406.2.
2. Maximum ERI of Table R406.5.

TABLE R406.2 REQUIREMENTS FOR ENERGY RATING INDEX

SECTION[a]	TITLE
General	
R401.2.5	Additional efficiency packages
R401.3	Certificate
Building Thermal Envelope	
R402.1.1	Vapor retarder
R402.2.3	Eave baffle
R402.2.4.1	Access hatches and door insulation installation and retention
R402.2.10.1	Crawl space wall insulation installation
R402.4.1.1	Installation
R402.4.1.2	Testing
Mechanical	
R403.1	Controls
R403.3 except Sections R403.3.2, R403.3.3 and R403.3.6	Ducts
R403.4	Mechanical system piping insulation
R403.5.1	Heated water calculation and temperature maintenance systems
R403.5.3	Drain water heat recovery units

R403.6	Mechanical ventilation
R403.7	~~Equipment sizing and efficiency rating~~ Packaged and split system cooling equipment
R403.8	Systems serving multiple dwelling units
R403.9	Snow melt and ice systems
R403.10	Roof and gutter deicing controls
R403.11	Freeze protection system controls
R403.12	Energy consumption of pools and spas
R403.13	Portable spas
R403.14	Residential pools and permanent residential spas
R403.15	Heating outside a building
R403.16	Cooling outside a building
~~Electrical Power and Lighting Systems~~	
~~R404.1~~	~~Lighting equipment~~
~~R404.2~~	~~Interior lighting controls~~
R404	Electrical power, lighting, storage, and renewable energy systems
R406.3	Building thermal envelope
R407	Maintenance information and system commissioning
R409	Energy reporting and metering

a. Reference to a code section includes all of the relative subsections except as indicated in the table.

R406.3 Building thermal envelope. Building and portions thereof shall comply with Section R406.3.1 or R406.3.2.

R406.3.1 On-site renewables are not included. ~~Where on-site renewable energy is not included for compliance~~ Using the ERI analysis of Section R406.4, the proposed total building thermal envelope UA, which is sum of *U*-factor times assembly area, shall be less than or equal to the building thermal envelope UA using the prescriptive *U*-factors from Table R402.1.2 multiplied by 1.15 in accordance with Equation 4-1. The area-weighted maxi- mum fenestration SHGC permitted in Climate Zones 0 through 3 shall be 0.30. On-site renewables shall not be included in the ERI analysis.

$$UA_{\text{Proposed design}} <= 1.15 \times UA_{\text{Prescriptive reference design}}$$

(Equation 4-1)

~~**R406.3.2 On-site renewables are included.** Where on- site renewable energy is included for compliance using the ERI analysis of Section R406.4, the building thermal envelope shall be greater than or equal to the levels of efficiency and SHGC in Table R402.1.2 or Table R402.1.4 of the 2018 *International Energy Conservation Code*.~~

R406.4 Energy Rating Index. The Energy Rating Index (ERI) shall be determined in accordance with RESNET/ICC 301 ~~except for buildings covered by the *International Residential Code*,~~ the ERI reference design ventilation rate shall be in accordance with the *International Mechanical Code* Equation 4-2.

Ventilation rate, CFM = (0.01 × total square foot area of house) + [7.5 × (number of bedrooms + 1)]

(Equation 4-2)

Energy used to recharge or refuel a vehicle used for transportation on roads that are not on the building site shall not be included in the *ERI reference design* or the *rated design*. For compliance purposes, any reduction in energy use of the rated design associated with on-site renewable energy shall not exceed 5 percent of the total energy use.

R406.5 ERI-based compliance. Compliance based on an ERI analysis requires that the *rated proposed design* and confirmed built dwelling be shown to have an ERI less than or equal to 53 without taking credit for any on-site renewables ~~the appropriate value indicated in Table R406.5~~ when compared to the *ERI reference design*.

~~**TABLE R406.5 MAXIMUM ENERGY RATING INDEX**~~

~~CLIMATE ZONE~~	~~ENERGY RATING INDEX~~

~~7~~	~~53~~

R406.6 Verification by approved agency. Verification of compliance with Section R406 as outlined in Sections R406.4 and R406.6 shall be completed by an *approved* third party. Verification of compliance with Section R406.2 shall be completed by the authority having jurisdiction or an *approved* third-party inspection agency in accordance with Section R105.4.

R406.7 Documentation. Documentation of the software used to determine the ERI and the parameters for the *residential building* shall be in accordance with Sections R406.7.1 through R406.7.4.

R406.7.1 Compliance software tools. Software tools used for determining ERI shall be *Approved* Software Rating Tools in accordance with RESNET/ICC 301.

R406.7.2 Compliance report. Compliance software tools shall generate a report that documents that the home and the ERI score of the *rated design* complies with Sections R406.2, R406.3 and R406.4. Compliance documentation shall be created for the proposed design and shall be submitted with the application for the building permit. Confirmed compliance documents of the built *dwelling unit* shall be created and submitted to the code official for review before a certificate of occupancy is issued. Compliance reports shall include information in accordance with Sections R406.7.2.1 and R406.7.2.2.

R406.7.2.1 Proposed compliance report for permit application. Compliance reports submitted with the application for a building permit shall include the following:

1. Building street address, or other building site identification.
2. Declare ERI on title page and building plans.
3. The name of the individual performing the analysis and generating the compliance report.
4. The name and version of the compliance software tool.
5. Documentation of all inputs entered into the software used to produce the results for the reference design and/or the rated home.
6. A certificate indicating that the proposed design has an ERI less than or equal to the appropriate score indicated in Table R406.5 when compared to the ERI reference design. The certificate shall document the building component energy specifications that are included in the calculation, including: component level insulation R-values or U-factors; assumed duct system and building envelope air leakage testing results; and the type and rated efficiencies of proposed heating, cooling, mechanical ventilation, and service water-heating equipment to be installed. If on-site renewable energy systems will be installed, the certificate shall report the type and production size of the proposed system.
7. When a site-specific report is not generated, the proposed design shall be based on the worst-case orientation and configuration of the rated home.

R406.7.2.2 Confirmed compliance report for a certificate of occupancy. A confirmed compliance report submitted for obtaining the certificate of occupancy shall be made site and address specific and include the following:

1. Building street address or other building site identification.
2. Declaration of ERI on title page and on building plans.
3. The name of the individual performing the analysis and generating the report.
4. The name and version of the compliance software tool.
5. Documentation of all inputs entered into the software used to produce the results for the reference design and/or the rated home.
6. A final confirmed certificate indicating that the confirmed rated design of the built home complies with Sections R406.2 and R406.4. The certificate shall report the energy features that were confirmed to be in the home, including: component-level insulation R-values or U-factors; results from any required duct system and building envelope air leakage testing; and the type and rated efficiencies of the heating, cooling, mechanical ventilation, and service water-heating equipment installed. Where on-site renewable energy systems have been installed on or in the home, the certificate shall report the type and production size of the installed system.

~~**R406.7.3 Renewable energy certificate (REC) documentation.** Where on-site renewable energy is included in the calculation of an ERI, one of the following forms of documentation shall be provided to the code official:~~

~~1. Substantiation that the RECs associated with the on-site renewable energy are owned by, or retired on behalf of, the homeowner.~~

2. A contract that conveys to the homeowner the RECs associated with the on-site renewable energy, or conveys to the homeowner an equivalent quantity of RECs associated with other renewable energy.

R406.7.4 Additional documentation. The *code official* shall be permitted to require the following documents:

1. Documentation of the building component characteristics of the ERI reference design.
2. A certification signed by the builder providing the building component characteristics of the rated design.
3. Documentation of the actual values used in the software calculations for the rated design.

R406.7.5 Specific approval. Performance analysis tools meeting the applicable subsections of Section R406 shall be *approved*. Documentation demonstrating the approval of performance analysis tools in accordance with Section R406.7.1 shall be provided.

R406.7.6 Input values. Where calculations require input values not specified by Sections R402, R403, R404 and R405, those input values shall be taken from RESNET/ICC 301.

SECTION R407
MAINTENANCE INFORMATION AND SYSTEM COMMISSIONING

R407.1 Maintenance information and system commissioning. Buildings shall comply with the IECC- Commercial Provisions, Section C408.

~~TROPICAL CLIMATE REGION COMPLIANCE PATH~~

~~**R407.1 Scope.** This section establishes alternative criteria for residential buildings in the tropical region at elevations less than 2,400 feet (731.5 m) above sea level.~~

~~**R407.2 Tropical climate region.** Compliance with this section requires the following:~~

~~1. Not more than one-half of the *occupied* space is air conditioned.~~

~~2. The *occupied* space is not heated.~~

~~3. Solar, wind or other renewable energy source supplies not less than 80 percent of the energy for service water heating.~~

~~4. Glazing in *conditioned spaces* has a *solar heat gain coefficient* (SHGC) of less than or equal to 0.40, or has an overhang with a projection factor equal to or greater than 0.30.~~

~~5. Permanently installed lighting is in accordance with Section R404.~~

~~6. The exterior roof surface complies with one of the options in Table C402.3 of the *International Energy Conservation Code* Commercial Provisions or the roof or ceiling has insulation with an *R* value of R-15 or greater. Where attics are present, attics above the insulation are vented and attics below the insulation are unvented.~~

~~7. Roof surfaces have a slope of not less than $^{1}/_{4}$ unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (21-percent slope). The finished roof does not have water accumulation areas.~~

~~8. Operable fenestration provides a ventilation area of not less than 14 percent of the floor area in each room. Alternatively, equivalent ventilation is provided by a ventilation fan.~~

~~9. Bedrooms with *exterior walls* facing two different directions have operable fenestration on exterior walls facing two directions.~~

~~10. Interior doors to bedrooms are capable of being secured in the open position.~~

~~11. A ceiling fan or ceiling fan rough-in is provided for bedrooms and the largest space that is not used as a bedroom.~~

SECTION R408
ADDITIONAL EFFICIENCY PACKAGE OPTIONS

R408.1 Scope. This section establishes additional efficiency package options to achieve additional energy efficiency in accordance with Section R401.2.5.

R408.2 Additional efficiency package options. Additional efficiency package options for compliance with Section R401.2.1 are set forth in Sections R408.2.1 through R408.2.~~5~~4.

R408.2.1 Enhanced envelope option. The total *building thermal envelope* UA, the sum of *U*-factor times assembly area, shall be less than or equal to 95 percent of the total UA resulting from multiplying the *U*-factors in Table R402.1.2 by the same assembly area as in the proposed building. The UA calculation shall be performed in accordance with Section R402.1.5. The area-weighted average SHGC of all glazed fenestration shall be less than or equal to 95 percent of the maximum glazed fenestration SHGC in Table R402.1.2.

R408.2.3 More efficient HVAC equipment performance option. Heating and cooling *equipment* shall meet one of the following efficiencies:

~~Greater than or equal to 95 AFUE natural gas furnace and 16 SEER air conditioner.~~

1. Greater than or equal to 96 AFUE natural gas furnace or boiler(s).
2. Greater than or equal to 8.5 HSPF2/16.0 SEER2 air source heat pump(s).
3. Greater than or equal to 9 HSPF (7.6 HSPF2) /16 SEER (15.2 SEER2) air source heat pump(s).
4. Greater than or equal to 10 HSPF (8.5 HSPF2) /16 SEER (15.2 SEER2) air source heat pump(s).
5. Greater than or equal to 3.5 COP ground source heat pump.

Ductless Systems:

6. Single Zone: 8.5 HSPF2/16.9 SEER2 variable speed air source heat pump(s).
7. Multi Zone: 8.5 HSPF2/16.9 SEER2 variable speed air source heat pump(s) (Non-Ducted Indoor Units).
8. Multi Zone: 8.5 HSPF2/15.2 SEER2 variable speed air source heat pump(s) (Ducted or Mixed Indoor Units)

R408.2.4 Reduced energy use in service water-heating options. ~~The hot water system shall meet one of the following efficiencies:~~ The hot water system shall meet one of the Uniform Energy Factors (UEF) or Solar Uniform Energy Factors (SUEF): in Table R408.2.3.

~~1. Greater than or equal to 82 EF fossil fuel service water-heating system.~~

~~2. Greater than or equal to 2.0 EF electric service water-heating system.~~

~~3. Greater than or equal to 0.4 solar fraction solar water-heating system.~~

TABLE R408.2.3

Service water-heating efficiencies

Measure Number	Water Heater	Size and Draw Pattern	Type	Efficiency
R408.2.3(1)	Gas-fired storage water heaters	≤ 55 gallons, Medium		UEF ≥0.81
		≤ 55 gallons, High		UEF ≥0.86
		>55 gallons, Medium or High		UEF ≥0.86
R408.2.3(2)	Gas-fired instantaneous water heaters	Medium or High		UEF ≥0.95
R408.2.3(3)	Electric water heaters	Low, Medium, or High	Integrated HPWH	UEF ≥ 3.30
R408.2.3(4)			Integrated HPWH, 120 Volt/15 Amp Circuit	UEF ≥ 2.20
R408.2.3(5)	Solar water heaters		Electric backup	SUEF ≥ 3.00
			Gas backup	SUEF ≥ 1.80

R408.2.5 More efficient duct thermal distribution system option. The thermal distribution system shall meet one of the following efficiencies:

1. 100 percent of ducts and air handlers located entirely within the *building thermal envelope*.
2. 100 percent of ductless thermal distribution system or hydronic thermal distribution system located completely inside the *building thermal envelope*.
3. 100 percent of duct thermal distribution system located in *conditioned space* as defined by Section R403.3.2.

~~**R408.2.5 Improved air sealing and efficient ventilation system option.** The measured air leakage rate shall be less than or equal to 3.0 ACH50, with either an Energy Recovery Ventilator (ERV) or Heat Recovery Ventilator (HRV) installed. Minimum HRV and ERV requirements, measured at the lowest tested net supply airflow, shall be greater than or equal to 75 percent Sensible Recovery Efficiency (SRE), less than or equal to 1.1 cubic feet per minute per watt (0.03 m^3/min/watt) and shall not use recirculation as a defrost strategy. In addition, the ERV shall be greater~~

~~than or equal to 50 percent Latent Recovery/Moisture Transfer (LRMT).~~

SECTION R409
ENERGY REPORTING AND METERING

R409.1 Energy Reporting Requirements: Dwellings shall be subject to Section 8.60 – Building IQ of the Aspen Municipal Code and shall follow the requirements for a "Non-City Covered Property." Buildings shall comply with the requirements of the Multi-Family Residential structures over 15,000 square feet. This requirement shall supersede the applicability statements in Section 8.60.030 and the exceptions listed in Section 8.60.020~~.M~~, as amended.

R409.2 Energy Metering. Each dwelling unit shall have separate electric and water meters. Where gas is installed to the building, each dwelling unit shall have a separate gas meter.

CHAPTER 5 [RE]

EXISTING BUILDINGS

User note:

About this chapter: *Many buildings are renovated or altered in numerous ways that could affect the energy use of the building as a whole. Chapter 5 requires the application of certain parts of Chapter 4 in order to maintain, if not improve, the conservation of energy by the renovated or altered building.*

SECTION R501 GENERAL

R501.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall control the *alteration*, *repair*, *addition* and change of occupancy of existing *buildings* and structures.

R501.1.1 General. Except as specified in this chapter, this code shall not be used to require the removal, *alteration* or abandonment of, nor prevent the continued use and maintenance of, an existing *building* or *building* system lawfully in existence at the time of adoption of this code. Unaltered portions of the existing *building* or *building* supply system shall not be required to comply with this code.

R501.2 Compliance. *Additions*, *alterations*, *repairs* or changes of occupancy to, or relocation of, an existing *building*, *building* system or portion thereof shall comply with Section R502, R503, R504 or R505, respectively, in this code. Changes where unconditioned space is changed to *conditioned space* shall comply with Section ~~R502~~R501.7.

R501.3 Maintenance. *Buildings* and structures, and parts thereof, shall be maintained in a safe and sanitary condition. Devices and systems that are required by this code shall be maintained in conformance to the code edition under which installed. The owner or the owner's authorized agent shall be responsible for the maintenance of *buildings* and structures. The requirements of this chapter shall not provide the basis for removal or abrogation of energy conservation, fire protection and safety systems and devices in existing structures.

R501.4 Compliance. *Alterations*, *repairs*, *additions* and changes of occupancy to, or relocation of, existing buildings and structures shall comply with the provisions for *alterations*, *repairs*, *additions* and changes of occupancy or relocation, respectively, in this code and the ~~*International Residential Code*~~, *International Building Code*, *International Existing Building Code*, *International Fire Code*, *International Fuel Gas Code*, *International Mechanical Code*, *International Plumbing Code*, ~~*International Property Maintenance Code, International Private Sewage Disposal Code*~~ and NFPA 70.

R501.5 New and replacement materials. Except as otherwise required or permitted by this code, materials permitted by the applicable code for new construction shall be used. Like materials shall be permitted for *repairs*, provided that hazards to life, health or property are not created. Hazardous materials shall not be used where the code for new construction would not allow their use in *buildings* of similar occupancy, purpose and location.

R501.6 Historic buildings. Provisions of this code relating to the construction, *repair*, *alteration*, restoration and movement of structures, and *change of occupancy* shall not be mandatory for *historic buildings* provided that a report has been submitted to the code official and signed by the owner, a *registered design professional*, or a representative of the State Historic Preservation Office or the historic preservation authority having jurisdiction, demonstrating that compliance with that provision would threaten, degrade or destroy the historic form, fabric or function of the *building*.

R501.7 Change in space conditioning. Any unconditioned or low-energy space that is altered to become *conditioned space* shall be required to be brought into full compliance with this code.

Exception: Where the simulated performance option in Section R405 is used to comply with this section, the annual energy cost of the proposed design is permitted to be 110 percent of the annual energy cost otherwise allowed by Section R405.2.

R501.8 Energy Assessment. When required by R502.3.6 or R503.1.6, existing buildings shall submit an *Energy Assessment Report* at permit submittal. The energy assessment recommendations and/or conclusions may inform but are not required to affect the scope of the work submitted for permit.

Exception: For *additions* and *alterations* where the *Energy Assessment Report* indicates the air infiltration rate in a dwelling unit is less than 5 air changes per hour, ventilation shall be provided in accordance with Section R503.1.1.6.1.

SECTION R502 ADDITIONS

R502.1 General. *Additions* to an existing *building*, *building* system or portion thereof shall conform to the provisions of this code as those provisions relate to new construction~~without requiring the unaltered portion of the existing *building* or *building* system to comply with this code~~. *Additions* shall not create an unsafe or hazardous condition or overload existing *building* systems. ~~An *addition* shall be deemed to comply with this code where the *addition* alone complies, where the existing *building* and *addition* comply with this code as a single building, or where the *building* with the *addition* does not use more energy than the existing *building*. *Additions* shall be in accordance with Section R502.2 or~~

~~R502.3.~~

~~R502.2 Change in space conditioning.~~ ~~Any unconditioned or low-energy space that is altered to become *conditioned space* shall be required to be brought into full compliance with this code.~~

~~Exceptions:~~

1. ~~Where the simulated performance option in Section R405 is used to comply with this section, the annual energy cost of the *proposed design* is permitted to be 110 percent of the annual energy cost otherwise allowed by Section R405.2.~~
2. ~~Where the Total UA, as determined in Section R402.1.5, of the existing *building* and the *addition*, and any *alterations* that are part of the project, is less than or equal to the Total UA generated for the existing *building*.~~
3. ~~Where complying in accordance with Section R405 and the annual energy cost or energy use of the *addition* and the existing *building*, and any *alterations* that are part of the project, is less than or equal to the annual energy cost of the existing *building*. The *addition* and any *alterations* that are part of the project shall comply with Section R405 in its entirety.~~

R502.3 Prescriptive compliance. *Additions* shall comply with Sections R502.3.1 through ~~R502.3.4.~~ R502.3.6.

R502.3.1 Building envelope. New *building* envelope assemblies that are part of the *addition* shall comply with Sections R402.1, R402.2, R402.3.1 through R402.3.5, and R402.4.

Exception: New envelope assemblies are exempt from the air leakage requirements of Sections R402.4.1.~~2~~3 and R402.4.1.4 but must comply with Section R503.1.1.6.1 Testing and Ventilation.

R502.3.2 Heating and cooling systems. HVAC ducts newly installed as part of an *addition* shall comply with Section R403.

Exception: Where ducts from an existing heating and cooling system are extended into an *addition* Section R403.3.5 and Section R403.3.6 shall not be required.

R502.3.3 Service hot water systems. New service hot water systems that are part of the *addition* shall comply with Section R403.5.

R502.3.4 Lighting and power. *Additions* shall comply with this section. New lighting and power systems that are part of the *addition* shall comply with Section R404.~~1~~

R502.3.4.1 Renewable energy infrastructure. Additions shall comply with the requirements of Section R404.5.

Exception: Additions where the new roof area is less than less than 500 square feet of roof area oriented between 110 degrees and 270 degrees of true north.

R502.3.4.2 Electric vehicle charging infrastructure. New parking facilities, new parking spaces added to existing parking facilities and new attached and detached garages shall comply with Section R404.6.

R502.3.4.3 Energy storage infrastructure. Additions with new attached or detached garages shall comply with Section R404.7.

R502.3.5 Energy Assessment. Additions shall comply with section R501.8.

R502.3.6 Energy Reporting. Additions shall comply with section R409.1.

SECTION R503 ALTERATIONS

R503.1 General. *Alterations* to any building or structure shall comply with the requirements of the code for new construction, without requiring the unaltered portions of the existing building or building system to comply with this code. *Alterations* shall be such that the existing building or structure is not less conforming to the provisions of this code than the existing *building* or structure was prior to the *alteration*.

Alterations shall not create an unsafe or hazardous condition or overload *existing* building systems. *Alterations* shall be such that the existing *building* or structure does not use more energy than the existing building or structure prior to the *alteration*. *Alterations* to existing *buildings* shall comply with Sections R503.1.1 through ~~R503.1.4~~ R503.1.6.

Level 4 *alterations* apply where the *work area* exceeds 50 percent of the *dwelling unit building area*.

R503.1.1 Building thermal envelope. Alterations of existing building thermal envelope assemblies shall comply with this section. New building thermal envelope assemblies that are part of the *alteration* shall comply with Section R402. ~~R402.1.2 or R402.1.4, Sections R402.2.1 through R402.2.12, R402.3.1, R402.3.2, R402.4.3 and R402.4.5.~~ An area-weighted average U-factor for new and altered portions of the building thermal envelope shall be permitted to satisfy the U-factor requirements in Table R402.1.2. In no case shall the R-value of insulation be reduced, or the U-factor of a building thermal envelope assembly be increased as part of a building thermal envelope alteration.

Exception: The following alterations shall not be required to comply with the requirements for new construction provided that the energy use of the building is not increased:

1. Storm windows installed over existing fenestration.
2. ~~Existing ceiling, wall or floor cavities exposed during construction provided that these cavities are filled with insulation.~~
3. ~~Construction where the existing roof, wall or floor cavity is not exposed.~~
4. *Roof recover*
5. ~~Roofs without insulation in the cavity and where the sheathing or insulation is exposed during reroofing shall be insulated either above or below the sheathing.~~
6. Surface-applied window film installed on existing single pane fenestration assemblies to reduce solar heat gain provided that the code does not require the glazing or fenestration assembly to be replaced.
7. An existing building undergoing alterations that is demonstrated to be in compliance with Section R405 or Section R406

R503.1.1.1 ~~Replacement~~ Fenestration alterations. Where new fenestration area is added to an existing building, the new fenestration shall comply with Section R402.3. Where some or all of an existing fenestration unit is replaced with a new fenestration product, including sash and glazing, the replacement fenestration unit shall meet the applicable requirements for *U*-factor and SHGC as specified in Table R402.1.3. Where more than one replacement fenestration unit is to be installed, an area-weighted average of the *U*-factor, SHGC or both of all replacement fenestration units shall be an alternative that can be used to show compliance.

Exception: Where the existing building exceeds the fenestration area limitations of Section R402.3.6 prior to alteration, the building is exempt from Section R402.3.6 provided that there is not an increase in fenestration area.

R503.1.1.2 Roof alterations. Roof alterations shall comply with this section.

R503.1.1.2.1 Roof insulation. Roof insulation complying with Section R402.1 or an *approved* design that minimizes deviation from the insulation requirements, shall be provided for the following roof alterations:

1. An alteration to roof-ceiling construction where there is no insulation above conditioned space,
2. Roof replacement for roofs with insulation ~~entirely~~ above deck,
3. Conversion of unconditioned attic space into conditioned space,
4. Replacement of ceiling finishes exposing cavities or surfaces of the roof-ceiling construction to which insulation can be applied.

Roofs not constructed to currently adopted snow loads shall provide a report by a registered design professional or other *approved* source documenting the structure is capable of supporting loads associated with any changes required by this section.

Where compliance with Section R402.1 cannot be met due to limiting conditions on an existing roof, the following shall be permitted to demonstrate compliance with the insulation requirements:

1. Construction documents that include a report by a registered design professional or other approved source documenting details of the limiting conditions affecting compliance with the insulation requirements.
2. Construction documents that include a roof design by a registered design professional or other approved source that minimizes deviation from the insulation requirements.

R503.1.1.2.2 Roof and gutter deicing controls. *Roof recover* and *roof replacement* alterations with existing or new roof and gutter deicing systems shall have controls installed complying with R403.10.

R503.1.3 Above-grade wall alterations. Above-grade wall alterations shall comply with the following requirements as applicable:

1. Where wall cavities are exposed, the cavity shall be filled with cavity insulation complying with Section R303.1.4 and Section R303.2. New cavities created shall be insulated in accordance with Section R402.1 or an approved design that minimizes deviation from the insulation requirements.
2. Where wall cavities are exposed in Level 4 alterations, the cavity shall be insulated in accordance with Section R402.1 or an approved design that minimizes deviation from the insulation requirements.
3. Where exterior wall coverings and fenestration are added or replaced for the full extent of any exterior wall assembly on one or more elevations of the building, insulation shall be provided where required in accordance with one of the following:

3.1. An R-value of continuous insulation not less than that designated in Table R402.1.3 for the applicable above-grade wall type and existing cavity insulation R-value, if any;

3.2 An R-value of not less than that required to bring the above-grade wall into compliance with Table R402.1.3; or,

3.3 An approved design that minimizes deviation from the insulation requirements of Section R402.1.

4. Where Items 1 and 2 apply, ~~the~~ insulation shall be provided in accordance with Section R402.1 using the values for new construction from Table R402.1.3 or an approved design that minimizes deviation from the insulation requirements.

5. Where new interior finishes or exterior wall coverings are applied to the full extent of any exterior wall assembly of mass construction, insulation shall be provided where required in accordance with Section R402.1 or an approved design that minimizes deviation from the insulation requirements.

Where any of the above requirements are applicable, the above-grade wall alteration shall comply with Sections 1402.2 and 1404.3 of the *International Building Code*.

R503.1.1.4 Floor alterations. Where an alteration to a floor or floor overhang exposes cavities or surfaces to which insulation can be applied, and the floor or floor overhang is part of the building thermal envelope, the floor or floor overhang shall be brought into compliance with Section R402.1 or an approved design that minimizes deviation from the insulation requirements. This requirement applies to floor alterations where the floor cavities or surfaces are exposed and accessible prior to construction.

R503.1.1.5 Below-grade wall alterations. Where unconditioned below-grade space is changed to conditioned space, walls enclosing such conditioned space shall be insulated where required in accordance with Section R402.1. Where the below-grade space is conditioned space and where walls enclosing such space are altered by removing or adding interior finishes, they shall be insulated where required in accordance with Section R402.1.

R503.1.1.6 Air barrier. Building thermal envelope assemblies altered in accordance with Section R503.1.1 shall be provided with an air barrier in accordance with Section R402.4.1.1. The air barrier shall ~~not be required to~~ be made continuous with unaltered portions of the building thermal envelope to the extent feasible within the scope of work. ~~Testing requirements of Section R402.5.1.2 shall not be required.~~ Level 4 alterations shall comply with Section R503.1.1.6.1.

R503.1.1.6.1 Testing and ventilation. The dwelling unit shall be tested in accordance with Section R402.4.1.2. Where the air infiltration rate is less than 5 air changes per hour, the dwelling unit shall be provided with mechanical ventilation in accordance with Section 403.3.2 of the *International Mechanical Code* or with other *approved* means of ventilation and shall be tested in accordance with Section R403.6.3.

Exception: An outdoor air ventilation system consisting of a mechanical exhaust system, supply system or combination thereof shall be permitted. Local exhaust or supply systems, including outdoor air ducts connected to the return side of an air handler, are permitted to serve as such a system. Ventilation rate shall be in accordance with Section 403.3.2 of the *International Mechanical Code.* System shall be tested in accordance with Section R403.6.3.

R503.1.2 Heating and cooling systems. ~~HVAC ducts newly installed as part of an *alteration* shall comply with Section R403~~. New heating and cooling and duct systems that are part of the alteration shall comply with Section R403 and this section. Alterations to heating, cooling and duct systems shall comply with this section.

Exception: Where ducts from an existing heating and cooling system are extended to an *addition*.

R503.1.2.1 Controls New heating and cooling equipment that are part of the alteration shall comply with Section R403.1.

R503.1.2.2 Mechanical system acceptance testing. Where an alteration requires compliance with Section R403 or any of its subsections, mechanical systems that serve the alteration shall comply with IECC- Commercial Provisions, Section C408.2.

Exception: Heating and cooling equipment that serve multiple dwelling units when alterations are made to a single dwelling unit.

R503.1.3 Service hot water systems. New service hot water systems that are part of the *alteration* shall comply with Section R403.5 and this section.

R503.1.3.1 Service hot water system acceptance testing. Where an alteration requires compliance with Section R403.5 or any of its subsections, service hot water systems that serve the alteration shall comply with IECC – Commercial Provisions, Section C408.2.

Exception: Where alterations are made to a single dwelling unit where the service water heating equipment

serves multiple dwelling units.

R503.1.4 Lighting and Power. New lighting and power systems that are part of the *alteration* shall comply with Section R404.1 and this section.

~~**Exception:** *Alterations* that replace less than 10 percent of the luminaires in a space, provided that such alterations do not increase the installed interior lighting power.~~

R503.1.4.1 Electrical Service replacement. Where a building electrical service is replaced, the new electrical service shall include electrical capacity sized in accordance with the NEC (NFPA 70) for the following future branch circuits:

1. Replacement of all currently installed combustion equipment used for cooking with electric cooking appliances in accordance with Section R404.4.1.
2. Replacement of all currently installed combustion equipment used for clothes drying with electric clothes dryers in accordance with Section R404.4.2.
3. Renewable energy infrastructure in accordance with Section R404.5.
4. Electric vehicle charging infrastructure in accordance with Section R404.6.
5. Energy storage infrastructure in accordance with Section R404.7.
6. Replacement of all currently installed combustion lighting with electric lighting.

Exception: Where there is not adequate transformer capacity or other infeasibility exists and approved by the Code Official.

R503.1.4.2 Electric vehicle charging infrastructure. Alterations shall be provided with electric vehicle charging infrastructure in accordance with this section.

R503.1.4.2.1 One- and two-family dwellings and townhouses. An alteration of a one- and two-family dwelling or townhouse shall meet the requirements of Section R404.6 where alteration work in a garage or adjacent to an on-site parking space includes the installation of a new branch circuit.

R503.1.4.2.2 R-2 occupancies. Alterations to existing parking facilities in R-2 occupancies shall comply IECC Commercial Provisions, Section C503.5.3.

R503.1.5 Energy Assessment. Level 4 *alterations* shall comply with section R501.8.

R503.1.6 Energy Reporting. Level 4 *alterations* shall comply with section R409.1.

SECTION R504 REPAIRS

R504.1 General. *Buildings*, structures and parts thereof shall be repaired in compliance with Section R501.3 and this section. Work on nondamaged components necessary for the required *repair* of damaged components shall be considered to be part of the *repair* and shall not be subject to the requirements for *alterations* in this chapter. Routine maintenance required by Section R501.3, ordinary repairs exempt from *permit*, and abatement of wear due to normal service conditions shall not be subject to the requirements for *repairs* in this section.

R504.2 Application. For the purposes of this code, the following shall be considered to be *repairs*:

1. Glass-only replacements in an existing sash and frame.
2. Roof *repairs*.
3. *Repairs* where only the bulb, ballast or both within the existing luminaires in a space are replaced provided that the replacement does not increase the installed interior lighting power.

SECTION R505
CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY OR USE

R505.1 General. Any space that is converted to a dwelling unit or portion thereof from another use or occupancy shall comply with this code.

Exception: Where the simulated performance option in Section R405 is used to comply with this section, the annual energy cost of the *proposed design* is permitted to be 110 percent of the annual energy cost allowed by Section R405.2.

R505.1.1 Unconditioned space. Any unconditioned or low-energy space that is altered to become a *conditioned space* shall comply with Section R502.

APPENDIX RD:
Renewable Energy Mitigation Program (REMP)

User note:

About this appendix: *Appendix RD is intended to reduce amenity energy use and offset it through the installation of on-site renewable energy systems.*

RD101 Scope. These provisions shall be applicable to specific exterior and interior energy uses and on-site energy production and energy efficient technologies used to offset those energy uses. Compliance with this section will be documented via the free Public Domain tool "City of Aspen REMP Calculation Sheet" in the most current version at the time of permit application. This tool is available at www.aspen.gov. Projected energy use associated energy offset required, requirements for those uses and offsets, fees, and credits are defined within this tool.

RD102 Exterior Energy Uses. Residential and Commercial exterior energy uses (per list below) may be installed only if they meet the requirements of this appendix and the requirements in sections R403 and C403 as applicable. This applies to all installations for which an application for a permit or renewal of an existing permit is filed or is by law required to be filed with or without an associated Building Permit.

1. Snowmelt (ie: driveways, patios, walkways, etc.), including electric heat mats and hydronic roof and gutter deicing systems

   Exception: Areas critical for access and emergency egress as approved by the building official and including:

   a. A nine square foot portion of emergency escape and rescue window wells.

   b. Accessible routes as defined by IBC section 1104.1 and 1104.2 and limited to 48" in width.

   c. Sidewalks serving buildings or portions of buildings that are not *residential buildings* in the City Right of Way limited to 48" in width

2. Exterior pools
3. Exterior permanent and portable spas

   Exception: A maximum of (1) portable spa per property with a water surface area of not more than 64 square feet is exempt.

4. Electric heat tape including roof and gutter deicing systems and exterior piping.

   Exception: 1000 watts are exempt.

5. Exterior heaters
6. Exterior gas fireplaces and firepits

RD102.1 Residential Exterior Energy Use ~~Cap~~ Budget. The total aggregate annual energy use of all exterior energy uses listed in Section RD102 shall be limited to 200,000,000 btu per *building site*. This energy use may be distributed among the types of regulated energy uses at the discretion of the applicant.

Exceptions:

1. Energy uses exempted by Section RD102
2. Energy uses serving buildings or portions of buildings that are not *residential buildings.*

RD103 Interior Energy Uses. Residential and Commercial interior energy uses (per list below) may be installed only if the supplemental energy meets the requirements of this appendix and the requirements in sections R403 and C403 as applicable. This applies to all installations for which an application for a permit or renewal of an existing permit is filed or is by law required to be filed with or without an associated Building Permit.

1. Interior gas fireplaces

RD106 REMP Payment Option. The RREMP payment option is the difference in energy use and on-site renewable credits calculated by the "City of Aspen REMP Calculation Sheet" and shall be paid at the time of issuance of the building permit. No refund of payment shall be made to an applicant for installation of renewable energy production that exceeds the on-site renewable credits required pursuant to Appendix A. All monies collected pursuant to this section shall be recorded in a separate fund by the City Finance Director and shall be spent in accordance with a joint resolution by the Aspen City Council and Pitkin County Board of County Commissioners.

RD102 Credits for on-site renewable energy. This REMP payment option is voluntary. Applicants interested in exterior energy use systems can alternatively choose to produce on-site renewable energy or use energy efficient technologies to offset energy uses regulated by this appendix in accordance with Section RD105 and as calculated by

the "City of Aspen REMP Calculation Sheet".

RD103 Pre-Existing Systems. Pre-existing systems, for which a prior REMP fee was paid, regulated by the scope of this section sought to be replaced by an Applicant, shall receive a pro-rated credit calculated as a fraction of the number of years since prior REMP payment for the system divided by 20 years. For example, a REMP payment made for a system permitted 10 years prior to the current replacement permit submittal would receive credit for ½ of the prior REMP payment and that amount shall be deducted from REMP payment owed for replacement system. For renewable systems installed on site, full credit will be given for up to 20 years after the date of installation. Credits will only be applied to properly permitted and functioning systems within the scope of the adopted Energy Code and applicable Mechanical and Electrical Codes. Systems installed prior to 20 years before the date of permit application are not eligible for pro-ration of system credits.

Upgrades to existing mechanical equipment (boilers, heat pumps, HVAC equipment, etc.) or renewables energy systems will not require a re-submittal to the application program. However, additions to or replacement of exterior or interior energy uses (as listed above in Section RD102) will require re-submittal of the appropriate REMP compliance documents. Additions to or replacement of exterior energy uses will be subject to the exterior energy use ~~cap~~ budget (Section RD102.1) which will apply to all existing exterior energy uses in aggregate. Previously permitted existing exterior energy use systems exceeding the exterior energy use ~~cap~~ budget may remain in existence provided there is no alteration or addition to exterior energy use.

RD104 Repairs. Repairs to building components, systems, or equipment which do not increase their pre-existing energy consumption need not comply with REMP.

RD105 Onsite Renewable Credit Options. On-site renewable energy and energy efficient technologies available for credit are listed in Sections RD105.1 through RD105.5 and shall comply with those sections as applicable.

RD105.1 Solar Photovoltaic System. System designer/installer must be certified by COSEIA (Colorado Solar Energy Industries Association) or NABCEP, (North American Board of Certified Energy Practitioners), or a licensed Professional Engineer in the State of Colorado.

RD105.2 Solar Hot Water. The size of solar hot water systems is limited to 500 square feet of collector area absent approval by the Building Official. Systems larger than this limit will be considered but will require documentation showing year-round utilization of this larger system.

RD105.3 Ground Source Heat Pump (GSHP). Each ground source heat pump system shall be tested and balanced and commissioned in accordance with R407. The design engineer shall certify in writing that it meets or exceeds the design coefficient of performance (COP) as specified in the "City of Aspen REMP Calculation Sheet."

The ground loop system must be designed by a CGD (Certified GeoExchange Designer certified by the Association of Energy Engineers) or a Professional Engineer licensed in the State of Colorado or an IGSHPA (International Ground Source Heat Pump Association) certified designer. The mechanical system must be installed by a certified IGSHPA contractor.

RD105.4 Air Source Heat Pump (ASHP). Each air source heat pump system shall be tested and balanced and commissioned in accordance with R407. The design engineer shall certify in writing that it meets or exceeds the design coefficient of performance (COP) as specified in the "City of Aspen REMP Calculation Sheet."

RD105.5 Alternative Energy Source. *Approved* alternative energy sources designed and installed in accordance with generally accepted engineering practice by an *approved third party*.

RD106 Energy Consumption Reporting. *Residential buildings* shall comply with Section R409.1. All other buildings shall comply with Section C405.12.9.